Legal Notice

This documentation is distributed under an open source license. You may review the terms of this license at: http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/database/berkeleydb/downloads/oslicense-093458.html

Oracle, Berkeley DB, and Sleepycat are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle. All rights to these marks are reserved. No third-party use is permitted without the express prior written consent of Oracle.

Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

To obtain a copy of this document's original source code, please submit a request to the Oracle Technology Network forum at: https://forums.oracle.com/forums/forum.jspa?forumID=271

Published 4/13/2017
# Table of Contents

Preface ......................................................................................................... xiv
Conventions Used in this Book ................................................................. xv
For More Information ............................................................................ xvi

1. Introduction to Berkeley DB APIs ...................................................... 1

2. The DB Handle .................................................................................... 2
   Database and Related Methods .......................................................... 3
   DB->associate() ................................................................................. 6
   DB->associate_foreign() ................................................................. 10
   DB->close() ..................................................................................... 13
   DB->compact() ................................................................................. 16
   db_copy ......................................................................................... 20
   db_create ...................................................................................... 21
   DB->del() ...................................................................................... 23
   DB->err() ...................................................................................... 26
   DB->exists() .................................................................................. 28
   DB->fd() ....................................................................................... 30
   DB->get() ..................................................................................... 31
   DB->get_bt_minkey() ..................................................................... 36
   DB->get_byteswapped() ............................................................... 37
   DB->get_cachesize() ..................................................................... 38
   DB->get_create_dir() .................................................................... 39
   DB->get_dbname() ......................................................................... 40
   DB->get_encrypt_flags() ............................................................. 41
   DB->get_errfile() .......................................................................... 42
   DB->get_errpfx() .......................................................................... 43
   DB->get_flags() ............................................................................ 44
   DB->get_h_ffactor() ...................................................................... 45
   DB->get_h_nelem() ....................................................................... 46
   DB->get_heapsize() ....................................................................... 47
   DB->get_heap_regionsize() ......................................................... 48
   DB->get_lk_exclusive() ............................................................... 49
   DB->get_lorder() .......................................................................... 50
   DB->get_msgfile() ........................................................................ 51
   DB->get_msgpfx() ......................................................................... 52
   DB->get_multiple() ....................................................................... 53
   DB->get_open_flags() ................................................................... 54
   DB->get_partition_callback() ..................................................... 55
   DB->get_partition_dirs() ............................................................ 56
   DB->get_partition_keys() ............................................................ 57
   DB->get_pagesize() ....................................................................... 58
   DB->get_priority() ....................................................................... 59
   DB->get_q_extentsize() ............................................................... 60
   DB->get_re_delim() ...................................................................... 61
   DB->get_re_len() .......................................................................... 62
   DB->get_re_pad() .......................................................................... 63
   DB->get_re_source() ..................................................................... 64
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;get_slices()</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;get_type()</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;join()</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;key_range()</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;msg()</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;open()</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;put()</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;remove()</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;rename()</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_alloc()</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_append_recno()</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_bt_compare()</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_bt_compress()</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_bt_minkey()</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_bt_prefix()</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_cachesize()</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_create_dir()</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_dup_compare()</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_encrypt()</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_errcall()</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_errfile()</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_errpfx()</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_feedback()</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_flags()</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_h_compare()</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_h_ffactor()</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_h_hash()</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_h_nelem()</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_heapsize()</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_heap_regionsize()</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_lk_exclusive()</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_lorder()</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_msgcall()</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_msgfile()</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_msgpfx()</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_pagesize()</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_partition()</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_partition_dirs()</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_priority()</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_q_extentsize()</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_re_delim()</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_re_len()</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_re_pad()</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_re_source()</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_slice_callback()</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;slice_lookup()</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;sort_multiple()</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;stat()</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;stat_print()</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. The DBCursor Handle
Company Cursors and Related Methods
DB->cursor() ................................. 171
DBCursor->close() ........................... 173
DBCursor->cmp() ............................. 174
DBCursor->count() ........................... 175
DBCursor->del() ............................... 176
DBCursor->dup() .............................. 178
DBCursor->get() .............................. 180
DBCursor->get_priority() ............... 188
DBCursor->put() .............................. 189
DBCursor->set_priority() ................. 193

4. The DBT Handle
DBT and Bulk Operations
DB_MULTIPLE_INIT ......................... 199
DB_MULTIPLE_NEXT ......................... 200
DB_MULTIPLE_KEY_NEXT ..................... 201
DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_NEXT .................. 203
DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_INIT .................. 204
DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_NEXT .................. 205
DB_MULTIPLE_RESERVE_NEXT ............... 206
DB_MULTIPLE_KEY_WRITE_NEXT ............ 207
DB_MULTIPLE_KEY_RESERVE_NEXT ........... 208
DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_INIT .......... 209
DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_NEXT .......... 210
DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_RESERVE_NEXT ........ 211

5. The DB_ENV Handle
Database Environments and Related Methods
DB_ENV->add_data_dir() .................... 216
DB_ENV->backup() ............................ 218
db_env_create ................................. 221
db_env_create ................................. 223
DB_ENV->dbbackup() ......................... 224
DB_ENV->dbremove() ......................... 226
DB_ENV->dbrename() ......................... 228
DB_ENV->err() ................................. 230
DB_ENV->failchk() ............................ 232
db_env->fileid_reset() ...................... 234
db_full_version ............................... 236
DB_ENV->get_create_dir() .................. 237
DB_ENV->get_data_dirs() .................... 238
DB_ENV->get_data_len() ..................... 239
DB_ENV->get_encrypt_flags() ............... 240
DB->get_env() ............................... 241
DB_ENV->get_errfile() ................................................................. 242
DB_ENV->get_errpfx() ................................................................. 243
DB_ENV->get_backup_callbacks() ................................................. 244
DB_ENV->get_backup_config() ...................................................... 245
DB_ENV->get_flags() ................................................................. 246
DB_ENV->get_home() ................................................................. 247
DB_ENV->get_intermediate_dir_mode() ....................................... 248
DB_ENV->get_memory_init() ....................................................... 249
DB_ENV->get_memory_max() ....................................................... 251
DB_ENV->get_metadata_dir() ...................................................... 252
DB_ENV->get_msgfile() ............................................................. 253
DB_ENV->get_msgpfx() .............................................................. 254
DB_ENV->get_open_flags() ......................................................... 255
DB_ENV->get_shm_key() ............................................................ 256
DB_ENV->get_slices() ............................................................... 257
DB_ENV->get_slice_count() ....................................................... 258
DB_ENV->get_thread_count() ..................................................... 259
DB_ENV->get_timeout() ............................................................. 260
DB_ENV->get_tmp_dir() ............................................................. 261
DB_ENV->msg() .................................................................... 269
DB_ENV->open() ................................................................... 271
DB_ENV->remove() ................................................................. 277
DB_ENV->set_alloc() ............................................................... 279
DB_ENV->set_app_dispatch() ..................................................... 281
DB_ENV->set_backup_callbacks() .............................................. 283
DB_ENV->set_backup_config() ................................................... 286
DB_ENV->set_data_dir() ........................................................... 288
DB_ENV->set_data_len() ........................................................... 290
DB_ENV->set_create_dir() ......................................................... 291
DB_ENV->set_encrypt() ............................................................ 293
DB_ENV->set_event_notify() ....................................................... 295
DB_ENV->set_errcall() ............................................................ 301
DB_ENV->set_errfile() ............................................................. 303
DB_ENV->set_errpfx() .............................................................. 305
DB_ENV->set_feedback() .......................................................... 306
DB_ENV->set_flags() ............................................................... 308
DB_ENV->set_intermediate_dir_mode() ....................................... 315
DB_ENV->set_isalive() ............................................................ 317
DB_ENV->set_memory_init() ....................................................... 319
DB_ENV->set_memory_max() ....................................................... 321
DB_ENV->set_metadata_dir() ..................................................... 323
DB_ENV->set_msgcall() ............................................................ 324
DB_ENV->set_msgfile() ............................................................ 326
DB_ENV->set_msgpfx() ............................................................. 327
DB_ENV->set_shm_key() ............................................................ 328
DB_ENV->set_thread_count() ..................................................... 330
6. The DB_LOCK Handle ........................................................................... 347

   Locking Subsystem and Related Methods ..................................................... 348
   DB_ENV->get_lk_conflicts() ............................................................................. 349
   DB_ENV->get_lk_detect() ............................................................................. 350
   DB_ENV->get_lk_max_lockers() ....................................................................... 351
   DB_ENV->get_lk_max_locks() .......................................................................... 352
   DB_ENV->get_lk_max_objects() ...................................................................... 353
   DB_ENV->get_lk_partitions() ......................................................................... 354
   DB_ENV->get_lk_priority() ........................................................................... 355
   DB_ENV->get_lk_tablesize() ......................................................................... 356
   DB_ENV->set_lk_conflicts() ......................................................................... 357
   DB_ENV->set_lk_detect() ............................................................................. 359
   DB_ENV->set_lk_max_lockers() ....................................................................... 361
   DB_ENV->set_lk_max_locks() .......................................................................... 363
   DB_ENV->set_lk_max_objects() ...................................................................... 365
   DB_ENV->set_lk_partitions() ......................................................................... 367
   DB_ENV->set_lk_priority() ........................................................................... 369
   DB_ENV->set_lk_tablesize() ......................................................................... 370
   DB_ENV->lock_detect() ................................................................................. 372
   DB_ENV->lock_get() ..................................................................................... 374
   DB_ENV->lock_id() ....................................................................................... 377
   DB_ENV->lock_id_free() .............................................................................. 378
   DB_ENV->lock_put() ..................................................................................... 379
   DB_ENV->lock_stat() ................................................................................... 380
   DB_ENV->lock_stat_print() ........................................................................... 386
   DB_ENV->lock_vec() .................................................................................... 388

7. The DB_LSN Handle ............................................................................... 392

   Logging Subsystem and Related Methods ..................................................... 393
   DB_ENV->get_lg_bsize() ............................................................................. 394
   DB_ENV->get_lg_dir() .................................................................................. 395
   DB_ENV->get_lg_filemode() ......................................................................... 396
   DB_ENV->get_lg_max() ................................................................................ 397
   DB_ENV->get_lg_regionmax() ....................................................................... 398
   DB_ENV->log_archive() ............................................................................... 399
   DB_ENV->log_cursor() ............................................................................... 402
   DB_ENV->log_file() ..................................................................................... 403
   DB_ENV->log_flush() .................................................................................. 404
   DB_ENV->log_get_config() .......................................................................... 405
   DB_ENV->log_printf() ............................................................................... 407
   DB_ENV->log_put() ..................................................................................... 408
   DB_ENV->log_set_config() .......................................................................... 410
8. The DB_MPOOLFILE Handle ................................................................. 433
Memory Pools and Related Methods ......................................................... 434
DB->get_mpf() ............................................................................................ 436
DB_ENV->get_cache_max() .......................................................................... 437
DB_ENV->get_cachesize() .......................................................................... 438
DB_ENV->get_mp_max_openfd() ................................................................. 439
DB_ENV->get_mp_max_write() ..................................................................... 440
DB_ENV->get_mp_mmapsize() ..................................................................... 441
DB_ENV->get_mp_mtxcount() ..................................................................... 442
DB_ENV->get_mp_pagesize() ...................................................................... 443
DB_ENV->get_mp_tablesize() ..................................................................... 444
DB_ENV->memp_fcreate() .......................................................................... 445
DB_ENV->memp_register() ........................................................................ 446
DB_ENV->memp_stat() ................................................................................ 448
DB_ENV->memp_stat_print() ...................................................................... 449
DB_ENV->memp_sync() ................................................................................ 450
DB_ENV->memp_trickle() ........................................................................... 451
DB_ENV->set_cache_max() ......................................................................... 452
DB_ENV->set_cachesize() .......................................................................... 453
DB_ENV->set_mp_max_openfd() .................................................................. 454
DB_ENV->set_mp_max_write() .................................................................... 455
DB_ENV->set_mp_mmapsize() ..................................................................... 456
DB_ENV->set_mp_mtxcount() ..................................................................... 457
DB_ENV->set_mp_pagesize() ...................................................................... 458
DB_ENV->set_mp_tablesize() ..................................................................... 459
DB_ENV->set_region_dir() ........................................................................ 460
DB_MPOOLFILE->close() ........................................................................... 461
DB_MPOOLFILE->get() ................................................................................. 462
DB_MPOOLFILE->open() ............................................................................. 463
DB_MPOOLFILE->put() ................................................................................ 464
DB_MPOOLFILE->sync() ............................................................................. 465
DB_MPOOLFILE->get_clear_len() .............................................................. 466
DB_MPOOLFILE->get_fileid() ..................................................................... 467
DB_MPOOLFILE->get_flags() ....................................................................... 468
DB_MPOOLFILE->get_ftype() ..................................................................... 469
DB_MPOOLFILE->get_lsn_offset() ............................................................... 470
DB_MPOOLFILE->get_maxsize() ................................................................. 471
DB_MPOOLFILE->get_pgcookie() .............................................................. 472
log_compare .............................................................................................. 473
9. Mutex Methods ................................................................. 500
   Mutex Methods ................................................................... 501
   DB_ENV->mutex_alloc() ................................................... 502
   DB_ENV->mutex_free() ...................................................... 504
   DB_ENV->mutex_get_align() ............................................. 505
   DB_ENV->mutex_get_increment() ....................................... 506
   DB_ENV->mutex_get_init() ................................................ 507
   DB_ENV->mutex_get_max() ................................................ 508
   DB_ENV->mutex_get_tas_spins() ......................................... 509
   DB_ENV->mutex_lock() ..................................................... 510
   DB_ENV->mutex_set_align() ............................................. 511
   DB_ENV->mutex_set_increment() ....................................... 512
   DB_ENV->mutex_set_init() ................................................ 514
   DB_ENV->mutex_set_max() ................................................ 515
   DB_ENV->mutex_set_tas_spins() ......................................... 517
   DB_ENV->mutex_stat() ..................................................... 518
   DB_ENV->mutex_stat_print() ............................................ 520
   DB_ENV->mutex_unlock() ................................................ 521

10. Replication Methods ......................................................... 522
    Replication and Related Methods ..................................... 523
    The DB_SITE Handle ....................................................... 525
    The DB_CHANNEL Handle ................................................. 526
    DB_CHANNEL->close() .................................................... 527
    DB_CHANNEL->send_msg() .............................................. 528
    DB_CHANNEL->send_request() ......................................... 530
    DB_CHANNEL->set_timeout() ........................................... 532
    DB_SITE->get_config() ................................................... 533
    DB_SITE->get_address() ................................................ 534
    DB_SITE->get_eid() ....................................................... 535
    DB_SITE->remove() ....................................................... 536
    DB_SITE->set_config() ................................................... 537
    DB_ENV->rep_elect() ....................................................... 539
    DB_ENV->rep_get_clockskew() ......................................... 542
    DB_ENV->rep_get_config() .............................................. 543
    DB_ENV->rep_get_limit() ................................................ 544
    DB_ENV->rep_get_nsites() .............................................. 545
    DB_ENV->rep_get_priority() ........................................... 546
    DB_ENV->rep_get_request() ............................................ 547
    DB_ENV->rep_get_timeout() ............................................ 548

DB_MPOOLFILE->get_priority() .................................................. 487
DB_ENV->get_region_dir() ..................................................... 488
DB_MPOOLFILE->set_clear_len() ............................................. 489
DB_MPOOLFILE->set_fileid() .................................................. 490
DB_MPOOLFILE->set_flags() ................................................... 492
DB_MPOOLFILE->set_ftype() ................................................... 494
DB_MPOOLFILE->set_lsn_offset() ........................................... 495
DB_MPOOLFILE->set_maxsize() .............................................. 496
DB_MPOOLFILE->set_pgcookie() ............................................. 497
DB_MPOOLFILE->set_priority() .............................................. 498
11. The DB_SEQUENCE Handle

Sequences and Related Methods

db_sequence_create

DB_SEQUENCE->get()

DB_SEQUENCE->get_cachesizer()

DB_SEQUENCE->get_dbp()

DB_SEQUENCE->get_key()

DB_SEQUENCE->get_range()

DB_SEQUENCE->get_initial_value()

DB_SEQUENCE->get_commit_token()

DB_SEQUENCE->open()

DB_SEQUENCE->remove()

DB_SEQUENCE->set_cachesizer()

DB_SEQUENCE->set_flags()

DB_SEQUENCE->set_range()

DB_SEQUENCE->stat()

DB_SEQUENCE->stat_print()
12. The DB_TXN Handle ............................................................................... 637
Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods .......................................... 638
DB->get_transactional() .......................................................................... 639
DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin() ...................................................................... 640
DB_ENV->get_tx_max() ........................................................................... 641
DB_ENV->get_tx_timestamp() ................................................................... 642
DB_ENV->set_tx_max() ........................................................................... 643
DB_ENV->set_tx_timestamp() ................................................................... 645
DB_ENV->txn_recover() .......................................................................... 646
DB_ENV->txn_begin() ............................................................................. 648
DB_ENV->txn_checkpoint() ...................................................................... 652
DB_ENV->txn_stat() ............................................................................... 654
DB_ENV->txn_stat_print() ........................................................................ 658
DB_TXN->abort() .................................................................................. 659
DB_TXN->commit() ................................................................................ 660
DB_TXN->discard() ................................................................................ 662
DB_TXN->get_name() ............................................................................. 664
DB_TXN->get_priority() ........................................................................... 665
DB_TXN->id() ....................................................................................... 666
DB_TXN->prepare() ............................................................................... 667
DB_TXN->set_name() ............................................................................. 669
DB_TXN->set_priority() ........................................................................... 670
DB_TXN->set_timeout() .......................................................................... 671

13. External Files ...................................................................................... 673
External Files and Related Methods ........................................................... 674
DB->get_ext_file_dir() ............................................................................ 675
DB->get_ext_file_threshold() .................................................................... 676
DB->set_ext_file_dir() ............................................................................ 677
DB->set_ext_file_threshold() .................................................................... 678
DBC->db_stream() ................................................................................. 680
DB_STREAM->close() .............................................................................. 682
DB_STREAM->read() ............................................................................... 683
DB_STREAM->size() ................................................................................ 685
DB_STREAM->write() .............................................................................. 686
DB_ENV->get_ext_file_dir() ..................................................................... 688
DB_ENV->get_ext_file_threshold() ............................................................. 689
DB_ENV->set_ext_file_dir() ...................................................................... 690
DB_ENV->set_ext_file_threshold() .............................................................. 691

A. Berkeley DB Command Line Utilities ............................................................ 693
Utilities ............................................................................................. 694
db_archive .......................................................................................... 695
db_checkpoint ..................................................................................... 697
db_convert ........................................................................................... 699
db_deadlock ......................................................................................... 701
db_dump .............................................................................................. 703
db_hotbackup ....................................................................................... 707
db_load ............................................................................................... 711
db_log_verify ....................................................................................... 716
db_printlog .......................................................................................... 719
db_recover ........................................................................................................ 721
db_replicate .................................................................................................. 724
db_sql_codegen ........................................................................................... 726
dbsql .............................................................................................................. 732
db_stat ............................................................................................................ 734
db_tuner ......................................................................................................... 738
db_upgrade ..................................................................................................... 739
db_verify ......................................................................................................... 741
sqlite3 .............................................................................................................. 743

B. Historic Interfaces ...................................................................................... 744
Historic Interfaces .......................................................................................... 745
dbm/ndbm ....................................................................................................... 746
hsearch .......................................................................................................... 750

C. Berkeley DB Application Space Static Functions ........................................ 752
Static Functions ............................................................................................. 753
db_env_set_func_close .................................................................................. 754
db_env_set_func_dirfree ............................................................................... 755
db_env_set_func_dirlist ................................................................................ 756
db_env_set_func_exists ............................................................................... 757
db_env_set_func_file_map .......................................................................... 758
db_env_set_func_free ................................................................................... 760
db_env_set_func_fsync ............................................................................... 761
db_env_set_func_ftruncate ........................................................................... 762
db_env_set_func_joinfo ................................................................................ 763
db_env_set_func_malloc .............................................................................. 764
db_env_set_func_open ................................................................................... 765
db_env_set_func_pread ............................................................................... 766
db_env_set_func_pwrite ............................................................................... 767
db_env_set_func_read ................................................................................... 768
db_env_set_func_realloc ............................................................................... 769
db_env_set_func_region_map ...................................................................... 770
db_env_set_func_rename ............................................................................... 772
db_env_set_func_seek ................................................................................... 773
db_env_set_func_unlink ............................................................................... 774
db_env_set_func_write .................................................................................. 775
db_env_set_func_yield .................................................................................. 776

D. DB_CONFIG Parameter Reference ............................................................... 777
DB_CONFIG Parameters ................................................................................ 778
add_data_dir ................................................................................................. 780
home_dir ........................................................................................................ 781
mutex_set_align ............................................................................................ 782
mutex_set_increment ................................................................................... 783
mutex_set_max ............................................................................................... 784
mutex_set_tas_spins .................................................................................... 785
rep_set_clockskew ...................................................................................... 786
rep_set_config .............................................................................................. 787
rep_set_limit ................................................................................................. 788
rep_set_n sites ............................................................................................. 789
rep_set_priority ............................................................................................ 790
rep_set_request  .................................................................  791
rep_set_timeout ..............................................................  792
repmgr_set_ack_policy ....................................................  793
repmgr_set_incoming_queue_max .......................................  794
repmgr_site ......................................................................  795
set_cachesize .................................................................  796
set_cache_max .................................................................  797
set_create_dir ..................................................................  798
set_data_len ....................................................................  799
set_flags ..........................................................................  800
set_intermediate_dir_mode ..............................................  802
set_lg_bsize .....................................................................  803
set_lg_dir .........................................................................  804
set_lg_filemode ...............................................................  805
set_lg_max .......................................................................  806
set_lg_regionmax ............................................................  807
set_lk_detect ....................................................................  808
set_lk_max_lockers ..........................................................  809
set_lk_max_locks ...............................................................  810
set_lk_max_objects ...........................................................  811
set_lk_partitions ..............................................................  812
set_slice_count ...............................................................  813
slice ...............................................................................  814
log_set_config .................................................................  815
set_mp_max_openfd ............................................................  816
set_mp_max_write .............................................................  817
set_mp_mmapsize ..............................................................  818
set_open_flags .................................................................  819
set_region_dir .................................................................  820
set_shm_key .....................................................................  821
set_thread_count .............................................................  822
set_timeout ......................................................................  823
set_tmp_dir .......................................................................  824
set_tx_max .......................................................................  825
setVerbose .......................................................................  826
Preface

Welcome to Berkeley DB 12c Release 1 (DB). This document describes the C API for DB library version 12.1.6.2. It is intended to describe the DB API, including all classes, methods, and functions. As such, this document is intended for C developers who are actively writing or maintaining applications that make use of DB databases.
Conventions Used in this Book

The following typographical conventions are used within this manual:

Structure names are represented in monospaced font, as are method names. For example: "DB->open() is a method on a DB handle."

Variable or non-literal text is presented in italics. For example: "Go to your DB_INSTALL directory."

Program examples are displayed in a monospaced font on a shaded background. For example:

```c
/* File: gettingstarted_common.h */
typedef struct stock_dbs {
    DB *inventory_dbp; /* Database containing inventory information */
    DB *vendor_dbp;   /* Database containing vendor information */
    char *db_home_dir;       /* Directory containing the database files */
    char *inventory_db_name; /* Name of the inventory database */
    char *vendor_db_name;    /* Name of the vendor database */
} STOCK_DBS;
```

Note

Finally, notes of interest are represented using a note block such as this.
For More Information

Beyond this manual, you may also find the following sources of information useful when building a DB application:

- Getting Started with Berkeley DB for C
- Getting Started with Transaction Processing for C
- Berkeley DB Getting Started with Replicated Applications for C
- Berkeley DB C++ API Reference Guide
- Berkeley DB STL API Reference Guide
- Berkeley DB TCL API Reference Guide
- Berkeley DB Installation and Build Guide
- Berkeley DB Programmer’s Reference Guide
- Berkeley DB Getting Started with the SQL APIs

To download the latest Berkeley DB documentation along with white papers and other collateral, visit http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/indexes/documentation/index.html.


Contact Us


For sales or support information, email to: berkeleydb-info_us@oracle.com You can subscribe to a low-volume email announcement list for the Berkeley DB product family by sending email to: bdb-join@oss.oracle.com
Chapter 1. Introduction to Berkeley DB APIs

Welcome to the Berkeley DB API Reference Manual for C.

DB is a general-purpose embedded database engine that is capable of providing a wealth of data management services. It is designed from the ground up for high-throughput applications requiring in-process, bullet-proof management of mission-critical data. DB can gracefully scale from managing a few bytes to terabytes of data. For the most part, DB is limited only by your system's available physical resources.

This manual describes the various APIs and command line utilities available for use in the DB library.

For a general description of using DB beyond the reference material available in this manual, see the Getting Started Guides which are identified in this manual's preface.

This manual is broken into chapters, each one of which describes a series of APIs designed to work with one particular aspect of the DB library. In many cases, each such chapter is organized around a "handle", or class, which provides an interface to DB structures such as databases, environments or locks. However, in some cases, methods for multiple handles are combined together when they are used to control or interface with some isolated DB functionality. See, for example, the The DB_LSN Handle (page 392) chapter.

Within each chapter, methods, functions and command line utilities are organized alphabetically.
Chapter 2. The DB Handle

The DB is the handle for a single Berkeley DB database. A Berkeley DB database provides a mechanism for organizing key-data pairs of information. From the perspective of some database systems, a Berkeley DB database could be thought of as a single table within a larger database.

You create a DB handle using the `db_create` (page 21) function. For most database activities, you must then open the handle using the `DB->open()` (page 74) method. When you are done with them, handles must be closed using the `DB->close()` (page 13) method.

Alternatively, you can create a DB and then rename, remove or verify the database without performing an open. See `DB->rename()` (page 85), `DB->remove()` (page 83) or `DB->verify()` (page 165) for information on these activities.

It is possible to create databases such that they are organized within a database environment. Environments are optional for simple Berkeley DB applications that do not use transactions, recovery, replication or any other advanced features. For simple Berkeley DB applications, environments still offer some advantages. For example, they provide some organizational benefits on-disk (all databases are located on disk relative to the environment). Also, if you are using multiple databases, then environments allow your databases to share a common in-memory cache, which makes for more efficient usage of your hardware's resources.

See `DB_ENV` for information on using database environments.

You specify the underlying organization of the data in the database (e.g. BTree, Hash, Queue, and Recno) when you open the database. When you create a database, you are free to specify any of the available database types. On subsequent opens, you must either specify the access method used when you first opened the database, or you can specify DB_UNKNOWN in order to have this information retrieved for you. See the `DB->open()` (page 74) method for information on specifying database types.
## Database and Related Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Database Operations</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;associate()</td>
<td>Associate a secondary index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;associate_foreign()</td>
<td>Associate a foreign index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;close()</td>
<td>Close a database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;compact()</td>
<td>Compact a database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_create</td>
<td>Create a database handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;del()</td>
<td>Delete items from a database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;err()</td>
<td>Error message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;exists()</td>
<td>Return if an item appears in a database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;fd()</td>
<td>Return a file descriptor from a database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;get()</td>
<td>Get items from a database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;get_byteswapped()</td>
<td>Return if the underlying database is in host order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;get_dbname()</td>
<td>Return the file and database name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;get_multiple()</td>
<td>Return if the database handle references multiple databases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;get_open_flags()</td>
<td>Returns the flags specified to DB-&gt;open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;get_slices()</td>
<td>Returns an array of slice databases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;get_type()</td>
<td>Return the database type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;join()</td>
<td>Perform a database join on cursors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;key_range()</td>
<td>Return estimate of key location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;msg()</td>
<td>Informational message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;open()</td>
<td>Open a database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;put()</td>
<td>Store items into a database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;remove()</td>
<td>Remove a database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;rename()</td>
<td>Rename a database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_priority(), DB-&gt;get_priority()</td>
<td>Set/get cache page priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;slice_lookup()</td>
<td>Return the slice database that contains the key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;stat()</td>
<td>Database statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;stat_print()</td>
<td>Display database statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;sync()</td>
<td>Flush a database to stable storage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;truncate()</td>
<td>Empty a database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;upgrade()</td>
<td>Upgrade a database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;verify()</td>
<td>Verify/salvage a database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database Operations</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;cursor()</code></td>
<td>Create a cursor handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Database Configuration</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;get_partition_callback()</code></td>
<td>Return the database partition callback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;get_partition_keys()</code></td>
<td>Returns the array of keys used for the database partition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_alloc()</code></td>
<td>Set local space allocation functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_cachesize()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_cachesize()</code></td>
<td>Set/get the database cache size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_create_dir()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_create_dir()</code></td>
<td>Set/get the directory in which a database is placed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_dup_compare()</code></td>
<td>Set a duplicate comparison function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_encrypt()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_encrypt_flags()</code></td>
<td>Set/get the database cryptographic key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_errcall()</code></td>
<td>Set error message callback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_errfile()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_errfile()</code></td>
<td>Set/get error message FILE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_errpfx()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_errpfx()</code></td>
<td>Set/get error message prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_feedback()</code></td>
<td>Set feedback callback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_flags()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_flags()</code></td>
<td>Set/get general database configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_lk_exclusive()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_lk_exclusive()</code></td>
<td>Set/get exclusive database locking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_lorder()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_lorder()</code></td>
<td>Set/get the database byte order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_msgcall()</code></td>
<td>Set informational message callback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_msgfile()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_msgfile()</code></td>
<td>Set/get informational message FILE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_msgpfx()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_msgpfx()</code></td>
<td>Set/get informational message prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_pagesize()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_pagesize()</code></td>
<td>Set/get the underlying database page size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_partition()</code></td>
<td>Set database partitioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_partition_dirs()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_partition_dirs()</code></td>
<td>Set/get the directories used for database partitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_slice_callback()</code></td>
<td>Set the callback used to identify slices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Btree/Recno Configuration</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_append_recno()</code></td>
<td>Set record append callback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_bt_compare()</code></td>
<td>Set a Btree comparison function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_bt_compress()</code></td>
<td>Set Btree compression functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_bt_minkey()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_bt_minkey()</code></td>
<td>Set/get the minimum number of keys per Btree page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_bt_prefix()</code></td>
<td>Set a Btree prefix comparison function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_re_delim()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_re_delim()</code></td>
<td>Set/get the variable-length record delimiter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_re_len()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_re_len()</code></td>
<td>Set/get the fixed-length record length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database Operations</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_re_pad()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_re_pad()</code></td>
<td>Set/get the fixed-length record pad byte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_re_source()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_re_source()</code></td>
<td>Set/get the backing Recno text file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hash Configuration</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_h_compare()</code></td>
<td>Set a Hash comparison function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_h_ffactor()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_h_ffactor()</code></td>
<td>Set/get the Hash table density</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_h_hash()</code></td>
<td>Set a hashing function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_h_nelem()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_h_nelem()</code></td>
<td>Set/get the Hash table size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Queue Configuration</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_q_extentsize()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_q_extentsize()</code></td>
<td>Set/get Queue database extent size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Heap</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_heapsize()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_heapsize()</code></td>
<td>Set/get the database heap size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB-&gt;set_heap_regionsize()</code>, <code>DB-&gt;get_heap_regionsize()</code></td>
<td>Set/get the database region size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DB_HEAP_RID</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Database Utilities</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_copy</code></td>
<td>Copy a named database to a target directory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The `DB->associate()` function is used to declare one database a secondary index for a primary database. The `DB` handle that you call the `associate()` method from is the primary database.

After a secondary database has been "associated" with a primary database, all updates to the primary will be automatically reflected in the secondary and all reads from the secondary will return corresponding data from the primary. Note that as primary keys must be unique for secondary indices to work, the primary database must be configured without support for duplicate data items. See Secondary Indices in the *Berkeley DB Programmer’s Reference Guide* for more information.

When called on a database that has been opened with sliced support, the `DB->associate()` method is automatically called on each supporting slice database.

The `DB->associate()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**primary**

The `primary` parameter should be a database handle for the primary database that is to be indexed.

**txnid**

If the operation is part of an application-specified transaction, the `txnid` parameter is a transaction handle returned from `DB_ENV->txn_begin()` (page 648); if the operation is part of a Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store group, the `txnid` parameter is a handle returned from `DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin()` (page 640); otherwise NULL. If no transaction handle is specified, but the operation occurs in a transactional database, the operation will be implicitly transaction protected.

**secondary**

The `secondary` parameter should be an open database handle of either a newly created and empty database that is to be used to store a secondary index, or of a database that was previously associated with the same primary and contains a secondary index. Note that it is not safe to associate as a secondary database a handle that is in use by another thread of control or has open cursors. If the handle was opened with the `DB_THREAD` flag it is safe to use it in multiple threads of control after the `DB->associate()` method has returned. Note also that either secondary keys must be unique or the secondary database must be configured with support for duplicate data items.
The `callback` parameter is a callback function that creates the set of secondary keys corresponding to a given primary key and data pair.

The callback parameter may be NULL if both the primary and secondary database handles were opened with the `DB_RDONLY` flag.

The callback takes four arguments:

- **secondary**
  
The `secondary` parameter is the database handle for the secondary.

- **key**
  
The `key` parameter is a `DBT` referencing the primary key.

- **data**
  
The `data` parameter is a `DBT` referencing the primary data item.

- **result**
  
The `result` parameter is a zeroed `DBT` in which the callback function should fill in `data` and `size` fields that describe the secondary key or keys.

**Note**

Berkeley DB is not re-entrant. Callback functions should not attempt to make library calls (for example, to release locks or close open handles). Re-entering Berkeley DB is not guaranteed to work correctly, and the results are undefined.

The result `DBT` can have the following flags set in its `flags` field:

- **DB_DBT_APPMALLOC**
  
  If the callback function needs to allocate memory for the `result` data field (rather than simply pointing into the primary key or datum), `DB_DBT_APPMALLOC` should be set in the `flags` field of the `result` `DBT`, which indicates that Berkeley DB should free the memory when it is done with it.

- **DB_DBT_MULTIPLE**
  
  To return multiple secondary keys, `DB_DBT_MULTIPLE` should be set in the `flags` field of the `result` `DBT`, which indicates Berkeley DB should treat the `size` field as the number of secondary keys (zero or more), and the `data` field as a pointer to an array of that number of `DBTs` describing the set of secondary keys.

**When multiple secondary keys are returned, keys may not be repeated.** In other words, there must be no repeated record numbers in the array for Recno and Queue databases, and keys must not compare equally using the secondary database’s comparison function for
Btree and Hash databases. If keys are repeated, operations may fail and the secondary may become inconsistent with the primary.

The DB_DBT_APPMALLOC flag may be set for any DBT in the array of returned DBT's to indicate that Berkeley DB should free the memory referenced by that particular DBT's data field when it is done with it.

The DB_DBT_APPMALLOC flag may be combined with DB_DBT_MULTIPLE in the result DBT's flag field to indicate that Berkeley DB should free the array once it is done with all of the returned keys.

In addition, the callback can optionally return the following special value:

- **DB_DONOTINDEX**

  If any key/data pair in the primary yields a null secondary key and should be left out of the secondary index, the callback function may optionally return DB_DONOTINDEX. Otherwise, the callback function should return 0 in case of success or an error outside of the Berkeley DB name space in case of failure; the error code will be returned from the Berkeley DB call that initiated the callback.

  If the callback function returns DB_DONOTINDEX for any key/data pairs in the primary database, the secondary index will not contain any reference to those key/data pairs, and such operations as cursor iterations and range queries will reflect only the corresponding subset of the database. If this is not desirable, the application should ensure that the callback function is well-defined for all possible values and never returns DB_DONOTINDEX.

  Returning DB_DONOTINDEX is equivalent to setting DB_DBT_MULTIPLE on the result DBT and setting the size field to zero.

**flags**

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

- **DB_CREATE**

  If the secondary database is empty, walk through the primary and create an index to it in the empty secondary. This operation is potentially very expensive.

  If the secondary database has been opened in an environment configured with transactions, the entire secondary index creation is performed in the context of a single transaction.

  Care should be taken not to use a newly-populated secondary database in another thread of control until the DB->associate() call has returned successfully in the first thread.

  If transactions are not being used, care should be taken not to modify a primary database being used to populate a secondary database in another thread of control, until the DB->associate() call has returned successfully in the first thread. If transactions are being used, Berkeley DB will perform appropriate locking and the application need not do any special operation ordering.
• DB_IMMUTABLE_KEY

Specifies the secondary key is immutable.

This flag can be used to optimize updates when the secondary key in a primary record will never be changed after the primary record is inserted. For immutable secondary keys, a best effort is made to avoid calling the secondary callback function when primary records are updated. This optimization may reduce the overhead of update operations significantly if the callback function is expensive.

Be sure to specify this flag only if the secondary key in the primary record is never changed. If this rule is violated, the secondary index will become corrupted, that is, it will become out of sync with the primary.

Errors

The DB->associate() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD

When a client synchronizes with the master, it is possible for committed transactions to be rolled back. This invalidates all the database and cursor handles opened in the replication environment. Once this occurs, an attempt to use such a handle will return DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD. The application will need to discard the handle and open a new one in order to continue processing.

DB_REP_LOCKOUT

The operation was blocked by client/master synchronization.

EINVAL

If the secondary database handle has already been associated with this or another database handle; the secondary database handle is not open; the primary database has been configured to allow duplicates; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
The `DB->associate_foreign()` function is used to declare one database a foreign constraint for a secondary database. The `DB` handle that you call the `associate_foreign()` method from is the foreign database.

After a foreign database has been "associated" with a secondary database, all keys inserted into the secondary must exist in the foreign database. Attempting to add a record with a foreign key that does not exist in the foreign database will cause the put method to fail and return `DB_FOREIGN_CONFLICT`.

Deletions in the foreign database affect the secondary in a manner defined by the flags parameter. See Foreign Indices in the *Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide* for more information.

The `DB->associate_foreign()` method can not be used with a sliced database.

The `DB->associate_foreign()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**foreign**

The `foreign` parameter should be a database handle for the foreign database.

**secondary**

The `secondary` parameter should be an open database handle of a database that contains a secondary index who's keys also exist in the `foreign` database.

**callback**

The `callback` parameter is a callback function that nullifies the foreign key portion of a data `DBT`.

The callback parameter must be NULL if either `DB_FOREIGN_ABORT` or `DB_FOREIGN_CASCADE` is set.

The callback takes four arguments:

- **secondary**
  
  The `secondary` parameter is the database handle for the secondary.
• key

  The **key** parameter is a DBT referencing the primary key.

• data

  The **data** parameter is a DBT referencing the primary data item to be updated.

• foreignkey

  The **foreignkey** parameter is a DBT referencing the foreign key which is being deleted.

• changed

  The **changed** parameter is a pointer to a boolean value, indicated whether **data** has changed.

**Note**

Berkeley DB is not re-entrant. Callback functions should not attempt to make library calls (for example, to release locks or close open handles). Re-entering Berkeley DB is not guaranteed to work correctly, and the results are undefined.

**flags**

The **flags** parameter must be set to one of the following values:

• DB_FOREIGN_ABORT

  Abort the deletion of a key in the foreign database and return DB_FOREIGN_CONFLICT if that key exists in the secondary database. The deletion should be protected by a transaction to ensure database integrity after the aborted delete.

• DB_FOREIGN CASCADE

  The deletion of a key in the foreign database will also delete that key from the secondary database (and the corresponding entry in the secondary's primary database.)

• DB_FOREIGN_NULLIFY

  The deletion of a key in the foreign database will call the nullification function passed to `associate_foreign` and update the secondary database with the changed data.

**Errors**

The `DB->associate_foreign()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD**

  When a client synchronizes with the master, it is possible for committed transactions to be rolled back. This invalidates all the database and cursor handles opened in the
replication environment. Once this occurs, an attempt to use such a handle will return
DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD. The application will need to discard the handle and open a new one in
order to continue processing.

**DB_REP_LOCKOUT**

The operation was blocked by client/master synchronization.

**EINVAL**

If the foreign database handle is a secondary index; the foreign database handle has been
configured to allow duplicates; the foreign database handle is a renumbering recno database;
callback is configured and DB_FOREIGN_NULLIFY is not; DB_FOREIGN_NULLIFY is configured
and callback is not; if this method is called on a sliced database.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
**DB->close()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->close(DB *db, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB->close()` method flushes cached database information to disk, closes any open cursors, frees allocated resources, and closes underlying files. When the close operation for a cursor fails, the method returns a non-zero error value for the first instance of such an error, and continues to close the rest of the cursors and database handles.

Although closing a database handle will close any open cursors, it is recommended that applications explicitly close all their `DBCursor` handles before closing the database. The reason why is that when the cursor is explicitly closed, the memory allocated for it is reclaimed; however, this will not happen if you close a database while cursors are still opened.

The same rule, for the same reasons, hold true for `DB_TXN` handles. Simply make sure you close all your transaction handles before closing your database handle.

Because key/data pairs are cached in memory, applications should make a point to always either close database handles or sync their data to disk (using the `DB->sync()` method) before exiting, to ensure that any data cached in main memory are reflected in the underlying file system.

When called on a database that is the primary database for a secondary index, the primary database should be closed only after all secondary indices referencing it have been closed.

When called on a database that has been opened with sliced support, the `DB->close()` method is automatically called on each supporting slice database.

When multiple threads are using the `DB` concurrently, only a single thread may call the `DB->close()` method.

The `DB` handle may not be accessed again after `DB->close()` is called, regardless of its return.

If you do not close the `DB` handle explicitly, it will be closed when the environment handle that owns the `DB` handle is closed.

The `DB->close()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success. The error values that `DB->close()` method returns include the error values of `DBcursor->close()` and the following:

**DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**

A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.

**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**

A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.
You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See `DB->set_lk_exclusive()` (page 126) for more information.

**EINVAL**

If the cursor is already closed; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Parameters**

*flags*

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or be set to the following value:

- `DB_NOSYNC`

  Do not flush cached information to disk. This flag is a dangerous option. It should be set only if the application is doing logging (with transactions) so that the database is recoverable after a system or application crash, or if the database is always generated from scratch after any system or application crash.

  It is important to understand that flushing cached information to disk only minimizes the window of opportunity for corrupted data. Although unlikely, it is possible for database corruption to happen if a system or application crash occurs while writing data to the database. To ensure that database corruption never occurs, applications must either: use transactions and logging with automatic recovery; use logging and application-specific recovery; or edit a copy of the database, and once all applications using the database have successfully called `DB->close()`, atomically replace the original database with the updated copy.

  Note that this flag only works when the database has been opened using an environment.

**Errors**

The `DB->close()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

The error messages returned for the first error encountered when `DB->close()` method closes any open cursors include:

**DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**

A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.

**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**

A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.
You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See DB->set_lk_exclusive() (page 126) for more information.

EINVAL

If the cursor is already closed; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->compact()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB->compact(DB *db, DB_TXN *txnid,
            DBT *start, DBT *stop, DB_COMPACT *c_data, u_int32_t flags, DBT *end);
```

The `DB->compact()` method compacts Btree, Hash, and Recno access method databases, and optionally returns unused Btree, Hash or Recno database pages to the underlying filesystem.

The `DB->compact()` method is non-atomic when used on a sliced database. If the operation fails, it is possible for a subset of the supporting sliced databases to be compacted.

The `DB->compact()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**txnid**

If the operation is part of an application-specified transaction, the `txnid` parameter is a transaction handle returned from `DB_ENV->txn_begin()` (page 648); if the operation is part of a Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store group, the `txnid` parameter is a handle returned from `DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin()` (page 640); otherwise NULL.

If a transaction handle is supplied to this method, then the operation is performed using that transaction. In this event, large sections of the tree may be locked during the course of the transaction.

If no transaction handle is specified, but the operation occurs in a transactional database, the operation will be implicitly transaction protected using multiple transactions. These transactions will be periodically committed to avoid locking large sections of the tree. Any deadlocks encountered cause the compaction operation to be retried from the point of the last transaction commit.

**start**

If non-NULL, the `start` parameter is the starting point for compaction. For a Btree or Recno database, compaction will start at the smallest key greater than or equal to the specified key. For a Hash database, the compaction will start in the bucket specified by the integer stored in the key. If NULL, compaction will start at the beginning of the database.

**stop**

If non-NULL, the `stop` parameter is the stopping point for compaction. For a Btree or Recno database, compaction will stop at the page with the smallest key greater than the specified key. For a Hash database, compaction will stop in the bucket specified by the integer stored in the key. If NULL, compaction will stop at the end of the database.

**c_data**

If non-NULL, the `c_data` parameter contains additional compaction configuration parameters, and returns compaction operation statistics, in a structure of type `DB_COMPACT`.
The following input configuration fields are available from the DB_COMPACT structure:

- int compact_fillpercent;
  
  If non-zero, this provides the goal for filling pages, specified as a percentage between 1 and 100. Any page in the database not at or above this percentage full will be considered for compaction. The default behavior is to consider every page for compaction, regardless of its page fill percentage.

- int compact_pages;
  
  If non-zero, the call will return after the specified number of pages have been freed, or no more pages can be freed. The implementation does not guarantee an exact match to the number of pages requested.

- db_timeout_t compact_timeout;
  
  If non-zero, and no txnid parameter was specified, this parameter identifies the lock timeout used for implicit transactions, in microseconds.

The following output statistics fields are available from the DB_COMPACT structure:

- u_int32_t compact_deadlock;
  
  An output statistics parameter: if no txnid parameter was specified, the number of deadlocks which occurred.

- u_int32_t compact_pages_examine;
  
  An output statistics parameter: the number of database pages reviewed during the compaction phase.

- u_int32_t compact_empty_buckets;
  
  An output statistics parameter: the number of empty hash buckets that were found the compaction phase.

- u_int32_t compact_pages_free;
  
  An output statistics parameter: the number of database pages freed during the compaction phase.

- u_int32_t compact_levels;
  
  An output statistics parameter: the number of levels removed from the Btree or Recno database during the compaction phase.

- u_int32_t compact_pages_truncated;
  
  An output statistics parameter: the number of database pages returned to the filesystem.

**flags**

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or one of the following values:
• **DB_FREELIST_ONLY**

  Do no page compaction, only returning pages to the filesystem that are already free and at the end of the file.

• **DB_FREE_SPACE**

  Return pages to the filesystem when possible. If this flag is not specified, pages emptied as a result of compaction will be placed on the free list for re-use, but never returned to the filesystem.

  Note that only pages at the end of a file can be returned to the filesystem. Because of the one-pass nature of the compaction algorithm, any unemptied page near the end of the file inhibits returning pages to the file system. A repeated call to the DB->compact() method with a low `compact_fillpercent` may be used to return pages in this case.

  **end**

  If non-NULL, the `end` parameter will be filled with the database key marking the end of the compaction operation in a Btree or Recno database. This is generally the first key of the page where the operation stopped. For a Hash database, this will hold the integer value representing which bucket the compaction stopped in.

**Errors**

The DB->compact() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**

A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.

**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**

A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.

You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See DB->set_lk_exclusive() (page 126) for more information.

**DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD**

When a client synchronizes with the master, it is possible for committed transactions to be rolled back. This invalidates all the database and cursor handles opened in the replication environment. Once this occurs, an attempt to use such a handle will return DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD. The application will need to discard the handle and open a new one in order to continue processing.

**DB_REP_LOCKOUT**

The operation was blocked by client/master synchronization.
EACCES
An attempt was made to modify a read-only database.

EINVAL
An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class
DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
The DB Handle

**db_copy**

```c
#include <db.h>

int
db_copy(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char *dbfile, const char *target,
        const char *password);
```

The `db_copy()` routine copies the named database file to the target directory. An optional password can be specified for encrypted database files. This routine can be used on operating systems that do not support atomic file system reads to create a hot backup of a database file. If the specified database file is for a QUEUE database with extents, all extent files for that database will be copied as well.

**Parameters**

**dbenv**

An open environment handle for the environment containing the database file.

**dbfile**

The path name to the file to be backed up. The file name is resolved using the usual BDB library name resolution rules.

**target**

The directory to which you want the database copied. This is specified relative to the current directory of the executing process or as an absolute path.

**password**

Specified only if the database file is encrypted. The resulting backup file will be encrypted as well.
db_create

```c
#include <db.h>

int db_create(DB **dbp, DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `db_create()` function creates a `DB` structure that is the handle for a Berkeley DB database. This function allocates memory for the structure, returning a pointer to the structure in the memory to which `dbp` refers. To release the allocated memory and discard the handle, call the `DB->close()` (page 13), `DB->remove()` (page 83), `DB->rename()` (page 85), or `DB->verify()` (page 165) methods.

DB handles are free-threaded if the `DB_THREAD` flag is specified to the `DB->open()` (page 74) method when the database is opened or if the database environment in which the database is opened is free-threaded. The handle should not be closed while any other handle that refers to the database is in use; for example, database handles must not be closed while cursor handles into the database remain open, or transactions that include operations on the database have not yet been committed or aborted. Once the `DB->close()` (page 13), `DB->remove()` (page 83), `DB->rename()` (page 85), or `DB->verify()` (page 165) methods are called, the handle may not be accessed again, regardless of the method's return.

The DB handle contains a special field, `app_private`, which is declared as type `void *`. This field is provided for the use of the application program. It is initialized to `NULL` and is not further used by Berkeley DB in any way.

The `db_create` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**dbp**

The `dbp` parameter references the memory into which the returned structure pointer is stored.

**dbenv**

If the `dbenv` parameter is `NULL`, the database is standalone; that is, it is not part of any Berkeley DB environment.

If the `dbenv` parameter is not `NULL`, the database is created within the specified Berkeley DB environment. The database access methods automatically make calls to the other subsystems in Berkeley DB, based on the enclosing environment. For example, if the environment has been configured to use locking, the access methods will automatically acquire the correct locks when reading and writing pages of the database.

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

- `DB_XA_CREATE`
Instead of creating a standalone database, create a database intended to be accessed via applications running under an X/Open conformant Transaction Manager. The database will be opened in the environment specified by the OPENINFO parameter of the GROUPS section of the ubbconfig file. See the XA Introduction section in the Berkeley DB Reference Guide for more information.

**Errors**

The `db_create()` function may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->del()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->del(DB *db, DB_TXN *txnid, DBT *key, u_int32_t flags);
```

The DB->del() method removes key/data pairs from the database. The key/data pair associated with the specified key is discarded from the database. In the presence of duplicate key values, all records associated with the designated key will be discarded.

When called on a database that has been made into a secondary index using the DB->associate() (page 6) method, the DB->del() method deletes the key/data pair from the primary database and all secondary indices.

The DB->del() method will return DB_NOTFOUND if the specified key is not in the database. The DB->del() method will return DB_KEYEMPTY if the database is a Queue or Recno database and the specified key exists, but was never explicitly created by the application or was later deleted. Unless otherwise specified, the DB->del() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**txnid**

If the operation is part of an application-specified transaction, the txnid parameter is a transaction handle returned from DB_ENV->txn_begin() (page 648); if the operation is part of a Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store group, the txnid parameter is a handle returned from DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin() (page 640); otherwise NULL. If no transaction handle is specified, but the operation occurs in a transactional database, the operation will be implicitly transaction protected.

**key**

The key DBT operated on.

**flags**

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or one of the following values:

- **DB_CONSUME**
  
  If the database is of type DB_QUEUE then this flag may be set to force the head of the queue to move to the first non-deleted item in the queue. Normally this is only done if the deleted item is exactly at the head when deleted.

- **DB_MULTIPLE**
  
  Delete multiple data items using keys from the buffer to which the key parameter refers.

To delete records in bulk by key with the btree or hash access methods, construct a bulk buffer in the key DBT using DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_INIT (page 204) and
DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_NEXT (page 205). To delete records in bulk by record number, construct the key DBT using DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_INIT (page 209) and DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_NEXT (page 210) with a data size of zero.

A successful bulk delete operation is logically equivalent to a loop through each key/data pair, performing a DB->del() (page 23) for each one.

See the DBT and Bulk Operations (page 198) for more information on working with bulk updates.

The DB_MULTIPLE flag may only be used alone.

- DB_MULTIPLE_KEY

Delete multiple data items using keys and data from the buffer to which the key parameter refers.

To delete records in bulk with the btree or hash access methods, construct a bulk buffer in the key DBT using DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_INIT (page 204) and DB_MULTIPLE_KEY_WRITE_NEXT (page 207). To delete records in bulk with the recno or hash access methods, construct a bulk buffer in the key DBT using DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_INIT (page 209) and DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_NEXT (page 210).

See the DBT and Bulk Operations (page 198) for more information on working with bulk updates.

The DB_MULTIPLE_KEY flag may only be used alone.

Errors

The DB->del() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_FOREIGN_CONFLICT**

A foreign key constraint violation has occurred. This can be caused by one of two things:

1. An attempt was made to add a record to a constrained database, and the key used for that record does not exist in the foreign key database.

2. DB_FOREIGN_ABORT (page 11) was declared for a foreign key database, and then subsequently a record was deleted from the foreign key database without first removing it from the constrained secondary database.

**DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**

A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.

**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**

A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.
You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See DB->set_lk_exclusive() (page 126) for more information.

**DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD**

When a client synchronizes with the master, it is possible for committed transactions to be rolled back. This invalidates all the database and cursor handles opened in the replication environment. Once this occurs, an attempt to use such a handle will return DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD. The application will need to discard the handle and open a new one in order to continue processing.

**DB_REP_LOCKOUT**

The operation was blocked by client/master synchronization.

**DB_SECONDARY_BAD**

A secondary index references a nonexistent primary key.

**EACCES**

An attempt was made to modify a read-only database.

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
The `DB->err()` and `DB_ENV->err()` (page 230) methods construct an error message consisting of the following elements:

- **An optional prefix string**
  
  If no error callback function has been set using the `DB_ENV->set_errcall()` (page 301) method, any prefix string specified using the `DB_ENV->set_errpfx()` (page 305) method, followed by two separating characters: a colon and a `<space>` character.

- **An optional printf-style message**
  
  The supplied message `fmt`, if non-NULL, in which the ANSI C X3.159-1989 (ANSI C) printf function specifies how subsequent parameters are converted for output.

- **A separator**
  
  Two separating characters: a colon and a `<space>` character.

- **A standard error string**
  
  The standard system or Berkeley DB library error string associated with the `error` value, as returned by the `db_strerror` (page 345) method.

The `DB->errx()` and `DB_ENV->errx()` methods are the same as the `DB->err()` and `DB_ENV->err()` (page 230) methods, except they do not append the final separator characters and standard error string to the error message.

This constructed error message is then handled as follows:

- If an error callback function has been set (see `DB->set_errcall()` (page 105) and `DB_ENV->set_errcall()` (page 301)), that function is called with two parameters: any prefix string specified (see `DB->set_errpfx()` (page 109) and `DB_ENV->set_errpfx()` (page 305)) and the error message.

- If a C library FILE * has been set (see `DB->set_errfile()` (page 107) and `DB_ENV->set_errfile()` (page 303)), the error message is written to that output stream.

- If none of these output options have been configured, the error message is written to stderr, the standard error output stream.
Note

The total length of the message written by this method, including the prefix string, can be no longer than 4096.

Parameters

error

The error parameter is the error value for which the DB_ENV->err() (page 230) and DB->err() methods will display an explanatory string.

fmt

The fmt parameter is an optional printf-style message to display.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->exists()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->exists(DB *db, DB_TXN *txnid, DBT *key, u_int32_t flags);
```

The DB->exists() method returns whether the specified key appears in the database. The DB->exists() method will return DB_NOTFOUND if the specified key is not in the database. The DB->exists() method will return DB_KEYEMPTY if the database is a Queue or Recno database and the specified key exists, but was never explicitly created by the application or was later deleted.

**Parameters**

**txnid**

If the operation is part of an application-specified transaction, the txnid parameter is a transaction handle returned from DB_ENV->txn_begin() (page 648); if the operation is part of a Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store group, the txnid parameter is a handle returned from DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin() (page 640); otherwise NULL. If no transaction handle is specified, but the operation occurs in a transactional database, the operation will be implicitly transaction protected.

**key**

The key DBT operated on.

**flags**

The flags parameter must be set to zero or by bitwise inclusively OR’ing together one or more of the following values:

- **DB_READ_COMMITTED**
  Configure a transactional read operation to have degree 2 isolation (the read is not repeatable).

- **DB_READ_UNCOMMITTED**
  Configure a transactional read operation to have degree 1 isolation, reading modified but not yet committed data. Silently ignored if the DB_READ_UNCOMMITTED flag was not specified when the underlying database was opened.

- **DB_RMW**
  Acquire write locks instead of read locks when doing the read, if locking is configured. Setting this flag can eliminate deadlock during a read-modify-write cycle by acquiring the write lock during the read part of the cycle so that another thread of control acquiring a read lock for the same item, in its own read-modify-write cycle, will not result in deadlock.
Because the DB->exists() method will not hold locks across Berkeley DB calls in non-transactional operations, the DB_RMW flag to the DB->exists() call is meaningful only in the presence of transactions.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
The `DB->fd()` method provides access to a file descriptor representative of the underlying database. A file descriptor referring to the same file will be returned to all processes that call `DB->open()` (page 74) with the same `file` parameter.

This file descriptor may be safely used as a parameter to the `fcntl(2)` and `flock(2)` locking functions.

The `DB->fd()` method only supports a coarse-grained form of locking. Applications should instead use the Berkeley DB lock manager where possible.

The `DB->fd()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**fdp**

The `fdp` parameter references memory into which the current file descriptor is copied.

### Class

`DB`

### See Also

* Database and Related Methods (page 3)*
The DB->get() method retrieves key/data pairs from the database. The address and length of the data associated with the specified key are returned in the structure to which data refers.

In the presence of duplicate key values, DB->get() will return the first data item for the designated key. Duplicates are sorted by:

- Their sort order, if a duplicate sort function was specified.
- Any explicit cursor designated insertion.
- By insert order. This is the default behavior.

Retrieval of duplicates requires the use of cursor operations. See DBcursor->get() (page 180) for details.

When called on a database that has been made into a secondary index using the DB->associate() (page 6) method, the DB->get() and DB->pget() methods return the key from the secondary index and the data item from the primary database. In addition, the DB->pget() method returns the key from the primary database. In databases that are not secondary indices, the DB->pget() method will always fail.

The DB->get() method will return DB_NOTFOUND if the specified key is not in the database. The DB->get() method will return DB_KEYEMPTY if the database is a Queue or Recno database and the specified key exists, but was never explicitly created by the application or was later deleted. Unless otherwise specified, the DB->get() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **txnid**

  If the operation is part of an application-specified transaction, the txnid parameter is a transaction handle returned from DB_ENV->txn_begin() (page 648); if the operation is part of a Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store group, the txnid parameter is a handle returned from DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin() (page 640); otherwise NULL. If no transaction handle is specified, but the operation occurs in a transactional database, the operation will be implicitly transaction protected.

- **key**

  The key DBT operated on.
If `DB_DBT_PARTIAL` is set for the DBT used for this parameter, and if the `flags` parameter is not set to `DB_CONSUME DB_CONSUME_WAIT`, or `DB_SET_RECNO`, then this method will fail and return `EINVAL`.

**pkey**

The `pkey` parameter is the return key from the primary database. If `DB_DBT_PARTIAL` is set for the DBT used for this parameter, then this method will fail and return `EINVAL`.

**data**

The data DBT operated on.

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or one of the following values:

- **DB_CONSUME**
  
  Return the record number and data from the available record closest to the head of the queue, and delete the record. The record number will be returned in `key`, as described in `DBT`. The data will be returned in the `data` parameter. A record is available if it is not deleted and is not currently locked. The underlying database must be of type Queue for `DB_CONSUME` to be specified.

- **DB_CONSUME_WAIT**
  
  The `DB_CONSUME_WAIT` flag is the same as the `DB_CONSUME` flag, except that if the Queue database is empty, the thread of control will wait until there is data in the queue before returning. The underlying database must be of type Queue for `DB_CONSUME_WAIT` to be specified.

  If lock or transaction timeouts have been specified, the `DB->get()` method with the `DB_CONSUME_WAIT` flag may return `DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED`. This failure, by itself, does not require the enclosing transaction be aborted.

- **DB_GET_BOTH**
  
  Retrieve the key/data pair only if both the key and data match the arguments.

  When using a secondary index handle, the `DB_GET_BOTH` flag causes:

  - the `DB->pget()` version of this method to return the secondary key/primary key/data tuple only if both the primary and secondary keys match the arguments.
  
  - the `DB->get()` version of this method to result in an error.

- **DB_SET_RECNO**
  
  Retrieve the specified numbered key/data pair from a database. Upon return, both the `key` and `data` items will have been filled in.
The data field of the specified key must be a pointer to a logical record number (that is, a db_recno_t). This record number determines the record to be retrieved.

For DB_SET_RECNO to be specified, the underlying database must be of type Btree, and it must have been created with the DB_RECNUM flag.

In addition, the following flags may be set by bitwise inclusively OR’ing them into the flags parameter:

- **DB_IGNORE_LEASE**
  
  Return the data item irrespective of the state of master leases. The item will be returned under all conditions: if master leases are not configured, if the request is made to a client, if the request is made to a master with a valid lease, or if the request is made to a master without a valid lease.

- **DB_MULTIPLE**
  
  Return multiple data items in the buffer to which the data parameter refers.

  In the case of Btree or Hash databases, all of the data items associated with the specified key are entered into the buffer. In the case of Queue, Recno or Heap databases, all of the data items in the database, starting at, and subsequent to, the specified key, are entered into the buffer.

  The buffer to which the data parameter refers must be provided from user memory (see DB_DBT_USERMEM). The buffer must be at least as large as the page size of the underlying database, aligned for unsigned integer access, and be a multiple of 1024 bytes in size. If the buffer size is insufficient, then upon return from the call the size field of the data parameter will have been set to an estimated buffer size, and the error DB_BUFFER_SMALL is returned. (The size is an estimate as the exact size needed may not be known until all entries are read. It is best to initially provide a relatively large buffer, but applications should be prepared to resize the buffer as necessary and repeatedly call the method.)

  The DB_MULTIPLE flag may only be used alone, or with the DB_GET_BOTH and DB_SET_RECNO options. The DB_MULTIPLE flag may not be used when accessing databases made into secondary indices using the DB->associate() (page 6) method.

  See the DBT and Bulk Operations (page 198) for more information on working with bulk get.

- **DB_READ_COMMITTED**
  
  Configure a transactional get operation to have degree 2 isolation (the read is not repeatable).

- **DB_READ_UNCOMMITTED**
  
  Configure a transactional get operation to have degree 1 isolation, reading modified but not yet committed data. Silently ignored if the DB_READ_UNCOMMITTED flag was not specified when the underlying database was opened.
• **DB_RMW**

  Acquire write locks instead of read locks when doing the read, if locking is configured. Setting this flag can eliminate deadlock during a read-modify-write cycle by acquiring the write lock during the read part of the cycle so that another thread of control acquiring a read lock for the same item, in its own read-modify-write cycle, will not result in deadlock.

  Because the `DB->get()` method will not hold locks across Berkeley DB calls in non-transactional operations, the **DB_RMW** flag to the `DB->get()` call is meaningful only in the presence of transactions.

**Errors**

The `DB->get()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_BUFFER_SMALL**

The requested item could not be returned due to undersized buffer.

**DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**

A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.

**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**

A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.

You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See `DB->set_lk_exclusive()` (page 126) for more information.

**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**

The `DB_CONSUME_WAIT` flag was specified, lock or transaction timers were configured and the lock could not be granted before the wait-time expired.

**DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD**

When a client synchronizes with the master, it is possible for committed transactions to be rolled back. This invalidates all the database and cursor handles opened in the replication environment. Once this occurs, an attempt to use such a handle will return `DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD`. The application will need to discard the handle and open a new one in order to continue processing.

**DB_REP_LEASE_EXPIRED**

The operation failed because the site's replication master lease has expired.

**DB_REP_LOCKOUT**

The operation was blocked by client/master synchronization.
**DB_SECONDARY_BAD**

A secondary index references a nonexistent primary key.

**EINVAL**

If a record number of 0 was specified; the DB_THREAD flag was specified to the DB-
>open() (page 74) method and none of the DB_DBT_MALLOC, DB_DBT_REALLOC or
DB_DBT_USERMEM flags were set in the DBT; the DB->pget() method was called with a DB
handle that does not refer to a secondary index; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was
specified.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->get_bt_minkey()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->get_bt_minkey(DB *db, u_int32_t *bt_minkeyp);
```

The DB->get_bt_minkey() method returns the minimum number of key/data pairs intended to be stored on any single Btree leaf page. This value can be set using the DB->set_bt_minkey() (page 96) method.

The DB->get_bt_minkey() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB->get_bt_minkey() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **bt_minkeyp**
  
The DB->get_bt_minkey() method returns the minimum number of key/data pairs intended to be stored on any single Btree leaf page in `bt_minkeyp`.

**Class**

- DB

**See Also**

- Database and Related Methods (page 3), DB->set_bt_minkey() (page 96)
DB->get_byteswapped()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB->get_byteswapped(DB *db, int *isswapped);
```

The `DB->get_byteswapped()` method returns whether the underlying database files were created on an architecture of the same byte order as the current one, or if they were not (that is, big-endian on a little-endian machine, or vice versa). This information may be used to determine whether application data needs to be adjusted for this architecture or not.

The `DB->get_byteswapped()` method may not be called before the `DB->open()` (page 74) method is called.

The `DB->get_byteswapped()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

*isswapped*

If the underlying database files were created on an architecture of the same byte order as the current one, 0 is stored into the memory location referenced by `isswapped`. If the underlying database files were created on an architecture of a different byte order as the current one, 1 is stored into the memory location referenced by `isswapped`.

**Errors**

The `DB->get_byteswapped()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called before `DB->open()` (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->get_cachesize()

#include <db.h>

int
DB->get_cachesize(DB *db,
        u_int32_t *gbytesp, u_int32_t *bytesp, int *ncachep);

The DB->get_cachesize() method returns the current size and composition of the cache. These values may be set using the DB->set_cachesize() (page 99) method.

The DB->get_cachesize() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB->get_cachesize() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

gbytesp

The gbytesp parameter references memory into which the gigabytes of memory in the cache is copied.

bytesp

The bytesp parameter references memory into which the additional bytes of memory in the cache is copied.

ncachep

The ncachep parameter references memory into which the number of caches is copied.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3), DB->set_cachesize() (page 99)
DB->get_create_dir()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->get_create_dir(DB *db, const char **dirp);
```

Determine which directory a database file will be created in or was found in.

The `DB->get_create_dir()` method may be called at any time.

The `DB->get_create_dir()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**dirp**

The `dirp` will be set to the directory specified in the call to `DB->set_create_dir()` (page 101) method on this handle or to the directory that the database was found in after `DB->open()` (page 74) has been called.

**Errors**

The `DB->get_create_dir()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
**DB->get_dbname()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->get_dbname(DB *db, const char **filenamep, const char **dbnamep);
```

The `DB->get_dbname()` method returns the filename and database name used by the DB handle.

The `DB->get_dbname()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- `filenamep`
  
The `filenamep` parameter references memory into which a pointer to the current filename is copied.

- `dbnamep`
  
The `dbnamep` parameter references memory into which a pointer to the current database name is copied.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->get_encrypt_flags()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->get_encrypt_flags(DB *db, u_int32_t *flagsp);
```

The DB->get_encrypt_flags() method returns the encryption flags. This flag can be set using the DB->set_encrypt() (page 104) method.

The DB->get_encrypt_flags() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB->get_encrypt_flags() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

flagsp

The DB->get_encrypt_flags() method returns the encryption flags in flagsp.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3), DB->set_encrypt() (page 104)
DB->get_errfile()

```c
#include <db.h>

void
DB->get_errfile(DB *db, FILE **errfilep);
```

The `DB->get_errfile()` method returns the `FILE *`, as set by the `DB->set_errfile()` (page 107) method.

The `DB->get_errfile()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Parameters**

- `errfilep`
  
The `DB->get_errfile()` method returns the `FILE *` in `errfilep`.

**Class**

- `DB`

**See Also**

- Database and Related Methods (page 3), `DB->set_errfile()` (page 107)
DB->get_errpfx()

#include <db.h>

void DB->get_errpfx(DB *db, const char **errpfxp);

The DB->get_errpfx() method returns the error prefix.

The DB->get_errpfx() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

Parameters

errpfxp

The DB->get_errpfx() method returns a reference to the error prefix in errpfxp.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3), DB->set_errpfx() (page 109)
DB->get_flags()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB->get_flags(DB *db, u_int32_t *flagsp);
```

The `DB->get_flags()` method returns the current database flags as set by the `DB->set_flags()` method.

The `DB->get_flags()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB->get_flags()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

*flagsp*

The `DB->get_flags()` method returns the current flags in `flagsp`.

**Class**

`DB`

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3), `DB->set_flags()` (page 112)
DB->get_h_ffactor()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->get_h_ffactor(DB *db, u_int32_t *h_ffactorp);
```

The `DB->get_h_ffactor()` method returns the hash table density as set by the `DB->set_h_ffactor()` method. The hash table density is the number of items that Berkeley DB tries to place in a hash bucket before splitting the hash bucket.

The `DB->get_h_ffactor()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB->get_h_ffactor()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **h_ffactorp**

  The `DB->get_h_ffactor()` method returns the hash table density in `h_ffactorp`.

**Class**

- **DB**

**See Also**

- Database and Related Methods (page 3), `DB->set_h_ffactor()` (page 120)
**DB->get_h_nelem()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->get_h_nelem(DB *db, u_int32_t *h_nelemp);
```

The `DB->get_h_nelem()` method returns the estimate of the final size of the hash table as set by the `DB->set_h_nelem()` (page 122) method.

The `DB->get_h_nelem()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB->get_h_nelem()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **h_nelemp**

  The `DB->get_h_nelem()` method returns the estimate of the final size of the hash table in `h_nelemp`.

**Class**

- **DB**

**See Also**

- Database and Related Methods (page 3), `DB->set_h_nelem()` (page 122)
DB->get_heapsize()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->get_heapsize(DB *db, u_int32_t *gbytesp, u_int32_t *bytesp);
```

Used when the underlying database is configured to use the Heap access method. This method returns the maximum size of the database's heap file. This value may be set using the DB->set_heapsize() (page 123) method.

The DB->get_heapsize() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB->get_heapsize() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **gbytesp**
  The `gbytesp` parameter references memory into which is copied the maximum number of gigabytes in the heap.

- **bytesp**
  The `bytesp` parameter references memory into which is copied the additional bytes in the heap.

**Class**

- **DB**

**See Also**

- Database and Related Methods (page 3), DB->set_heapsize() (page 123)
# DB->get_heap_regionsize()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->get_heap_regionsize(DB *db, u_int32_t *npagesize);
```

Used when the underlying database is configured to use the Heap access method. This method returns the number of pages in a region. This value may be set using the `DB->set_heap_regionsize()` (page 125) method.

The `DB->get_heap_regionsize()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB->get_heap_regionsize()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

## Parameters

### npagesp

The `npagesp` parameter references memory into which is copied the number of pages in a region.

## Class

DB

## See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3), `DB->set_heap_regionsize()` (page 125)
DB->get_lk_exclusive()

#include <db.h>

int
DB->get_lk_exclusive(DB *db, int *onoff, int *nowait);

Returns whether the database handle is configured to obtain a write lock on the entire database. This can be set using the DB->set_lk_exclusive() (page 126) method.

The DB->get_lk_exclusive() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB->get_lk_exclusive() always returns 0.

Parameters

onoff

Indicates whether the handle is configured for exclusive database locking. If 0, it is not configured for exclusive locking. If 1, then it is configured for exclusive locking.

nowait

Indicates whether the handle is configured for immediate locking. If 0, then the locking operation will block until it can obtain an exclusive database lock. If 1, then the locking operation will error out if it cannot immediately obtain an exclusive lock.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3), DB->set_lk_exclusive() (page 126)
DB->get_lorder()

```
#include <db.h>

int DB->get_lorder(DB *db, int *lorderp);
```

The `DB->get_lorder()` method returns the database byte order; a byte order of 4,321 indicates a big endian order, and a byte order of 1,234 indicates a little endian order. This value is set using the `DB->set_lorder()` method.

The `DB->get_lorder()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB->get_lorder()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- `lorderp`
  
  The `DB->get_lorder()` method returns the database byte order in `lorderp`.

**Class**

`DB`

**See Also**

- `Database and Related Methods (page 3)`, `DB->set_lorder()` (page 128)
DB->get_msgfile()

```c
#include <db.h>

void
DB->get_msgfile(DB *db, FILE **msgfilep);
```

The DB->get_msgfile() method returns the FILE * used to output informational or statistical messages. This file handle is configured using the DB->set_msgfile() (page 131) method.

The DB->get_msgfile() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Parameters**

**msgfilep**

The DB->get_msgfile() method returns the FILE * in msgfilep.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3), DB->set_msgfile() (page 131)
DB->get_msgpfx()

```c
#include <db.h>

void DB->get_msgpfx(DB *db, const char **msgpfxp);
```

The DB->get_msgpfx() method returns the informational prefix.

The DB->get_msgpfx() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Parameters**

- `msgpfxp`

The DB->get_msgpfx() method returns a reference to the error prefix in `msgpfxp`.

**Class**

- `DB`

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3), DB->set_msgpfx() (page 132)
DB->get_multiple()

#include <db.h>

int DB->get_multiple(DB *db);

This method returns non-zero if the DB handle references a physical file supporting multiple databases, and 0 otherwise.

In this case, the DB handle is a handle on a database whose key values are the names of the databases stored in the physical file and whose data values are opaque objects. No keys or data values may be modified or stored using the database handle.

This method may not be called before the DB->open() (page 74) method is called.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->get_open_flags()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB->get_open_flags(DB *db, u_int32_t *flagsp);
```

The `DB->get_open_flags()` method returns the current open method flags. That is, this method returns the flags that were specified when `DB->open()` (page 74) was called.

The `DB->get_open_flags()` method may not be called before the `DB->open()` method is called.

The `DB->get_open_flags()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- `flagsp`

  The `DB->get_open_flags()` method returns the current open method flags in `flagsp`.

**Class**

- `DB`

**See Also**

- Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->get_partition_callback()

```
#include <db.h>

int DB->get_partition_callback(DB *db, u_int32_t *partsp,
                            u_int32_t (**callback_fcn) (DB *dbp, DBT *key);
```

The DB->get_partition_callback() method returns the database partitioning callback as set by the DB->set_partition() (page 134) method.

The DB->get_partition_callback() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB->get_partition_callback() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**partsp**

The partsp parameter returns the number of partitions used by the database.

**callback_fcn**

The callback_fcn parameter returns the partitioning callback.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3), DB->set_partition() (page 134)
DB->get_partition_dirs()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB->get_partition_dirs(DB *db, const char ***dirsp);
```

Identify the directories used to store the database partitions.

The DB->get_partition_dirs() method may be called at any time.

The DB->get_partition_dirs() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **dirsp**

  The dirsp will be set to the array of directories specified in the call to DB->get_partition_dirs() (page 136) method on this handle or to the directories that the database partitions were found in after DB->open() (page 74) has been called.

**Errors**

The DB->get_partition_dirs() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

- **DB**

**See Also**

- [Database and Related Methods (page 3)](http://example.com/database-related-methods)
# DB->get_partition_keys()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->get_partition_keys(DB *db, u_int32_t *partsp, DBT *keysp);
```

The `DB->get_partition_keys()` method returns the range of keys used to specify the values placed in each of a database's partitions. This information is set using the `DB->set_partition()` (page 134) method.

The `DB->get_partition_keys()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB->get_partition_keys()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

## Parameters

- **partsp**
  
The `partsp` parameter returns the number of partitions in the database.

- **keysp**
  
The `keysp` parameter returns the set of keys used to place values in the database partitions.

## Class

- **DB**

## See Also

- `Database and Related Methods (page 3)`, `DB->set_partition()` (page 134)
DB->get_pagesize()

```
#include <db.h>

int
DB->get_pagesize(DB *db, u_int32_t *pagesizep);
```

The DB->get_pagesize() method returns the database's current page size, as set by the DB->set_pagesize() (page 133) method. Note that if DB->set_pagesize() was not called by your application, then the default pagesize is selected based on the underlying filesystem I/O block size. If you call DB->get_pagesize() before you have opened the database, the value returned by this method is therefore the underlying filesystem I/O block size.

The DB->get_pagesize() method may be called only after the database has been opened.

The DB->get_pagesize() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

pagesizep

The DB->get_pagesize() method returns the page size in pagesizep.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3), DB->set_pagesize() (page 133)
#include <db.h>

int DB->get_priority(DB *db, DB_CACHE_PRIORITY *priorityp);

The DB->get_priority() method returns the cache priority for pages referenced by the DB handle. This priority value is set using the DB->set_priority() (page 137) method.

The DB->get_priority() method may be called only after the database has been opened.

The DB->get_priority() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

priorityp

The DB->get_priority() method returns a reference to the cache priority in priorityp. See DB->set_priority() (page 137) for a list of possible priorities.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3), DB->set_priority() (page 137)
The DB->get_q_extentsize() method returns the number of pages in an extent. This value is used only for Queue databases and is set using the DB->set_q_extentsize() (page 139) method.

The DB->get_q_extentsize() method may be called only after the database has been opened.

The DB->get_q_extentsize() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

*extentsizep*

The DB->get_q_extentsize() method returns the number of pages in an extent in *extentsizep*. If used on a handle that has not yet been opened, 0 is returned.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3), DB->set_q_extentsize() (page 139)
DB->get_re_delim()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->get_re_delim(DB *db, int *delimp);
```

The DB->get_re_delim() method returns the delimiting byte, which is used to mark the end of a record in the backing source file for the Recno access method. This value is set using the DB->set_re_delim() (page 140) method.

The DB->get_re_delim() method may be called only after the database has been opened.

The DB->get_re_delim() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**delimp**

The DB->get_re_delim() method returns the delimiting byte in delimp. If this method is called on a handle that has not yet been opened, then the default delimiting byte is returned. See DB->set_re_delim() (page 140) for details.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3), DB->set_re_delim() (page 140)
**DB->get_re_len()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB->get_re_len(DB *db, u_int32_t *re_lenp);
```

The `DB->get_re_len()` method returns the length of the records held in a Queue access method database. This value can be set using the `DB->set_re_len()` (page 141) method.

The `DB->get_re_len()` method may be called only after the database has been opened.

The `DB->get_re_len()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**re_lenp**

The `DB->get_re_len()` method returns the record length in `re_lenp`. If the record length has never been set using `DB->set_re_len()` (page 141), then 0 is returned.

**Class**

`DB`

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3), `DB->set_re_len()` (page 141)
The DB->get_re_pad() method returns the pad character used for short, fixed-length records used by the Queue and Recno access methods. This character is set using the DB->set_re_pad() method.

The DB->get_re_pad() method may be called only after the database has been opened.

The DB->get_re_pad() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**re_padp**

The DB->get_re_pad() method returns the pad character in re_padp. If used on a handle that has not yet been opened, the default pad character is returned. See the DB->set_re_pad() method description for what that default value is.

### Class

DB

### See Also

Database and Related Methods, DB->set_re_pad()
**DB->get_re_source()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->get_re_source(DB *db, const char **sourcep);
```

The `DB->get_re_source()` method returns the source file used by the Recno access method. This file is configured for the Recno access method using the `DB->set_re_source()` (page 143) method.

The `DB->get_re_source()` method may be called only after the database has been opened.

The `DB->get_re_source()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`sourcep`

The `DB->get_re_source()` method returns a reference to the source file in `sourcep`.

**Class**

`DB`

**See Also**

`Database and Related Methods (page 3), DB->set_re_source()` (page 143)
DB->get_slices()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB->get_slices(DB *db, DB ***slicepp);
```

The `DB->get_slices()` method returns a NULL-terminated array of slice databases. Each element in the array represents one slice. Note that you should not explicitly close these database handles; each slice database is automatically closed when the parent database handle is closed.

The `DB->get_slices()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB->get_slices()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

slicepp

The `DB->get_slices()` method returns a reference to a NULL-terminated array of slice databases in `slicepp`.

**Class**

`DB`

**See Also**

(Database and Related Methods (page 3))
DB->get_type()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB->get_type(DB *db, DBTYPE *type);
```

The DB->get_type() method returns the type of the underlying access method (and file format). The type value is one of DB_BTREE, DB_HASH, DB_RECNO, or DB_QUEUE. This value may be used to determine the type of the database after a return from DB->open() (page 74) with the type parameter set to DB_UNKNOWN.

The DB->get_type() method may not be called before the DB->open() (page 74) method is called.

The DB->get_type() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**type**

The type parameter references memory into which the type of the underlying access method is copied.

**Errors**

The DB->get_type() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called before DB->open() (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
The `DB->join()` method creates a specialized join cursor for use in performing equality or natural joins on secondary indices. For information on how to organize your data to use this functionality, see Equality join.

The `DB->join()` method is called using the `DB` handle of the primary database.

The join cursor supports only the `DBcursor->get()` (page 180) and `DBcursor->close()` (page 173) cursor functions:

- **DBcursor->get() (page 180)**

  Iterates over the values associated with the keys to which each item in `curslist` was initialized. Any data value that appears in all items specified by the `curslist` parameter is then used as a key into the `primary`, and the key/data pair found in the `primary` is returned. The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

  - **DB_JOIN_ITEM**

    Do not use the data value found in all the cursors as a lookup key for the `primary`, but simply return it in the key parameter instead. The data parameter is left unchanged.

In addition, the following flag may be set by bitwise inclusively OR'ing it into the `flags` parameter:

- **DB_READ_UNCOMMITTED**

  Configure a transactional join operation to have degree 1 isolation, reading modified but not yet committed data. Silently ignored if the `DB_READ_UNCOMMITTED` flag was not specified when the underlying database was opened.

- **DB_RMW**

  Acquire write locks instead of read locks when doing the read, if locking is configured. Setting this flag can eliminate deadlock during a read-modify-write cycle by acquiring the write lock during the read part of the cycle so that another thread of control acquiring a read lock for the same item, in its own read-modify-write cycle, will not result in deadlock.

- **DBcursor->close() (page 173)**

  Close the returned cursor and release all resources. (Closing the cursors in `curslist` is the responsibility of the caller.)

The `DB->join()` method can not be used with a sliced database.
The DB->join() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**curslist**

The `curslist` parameter contains a NULL terminated array of cursors. Each cursor must have been initialized to refer to the key on which the underlying database should be joined. Typically, this initialization is done by a `DBcursor->get()` (page 180) call with the `DB_SET` flag specified. Once the cursors have been passed as part of a `curslist`, they should not be accessed or modified until the newly created join cursor has been closed, or else inconsistent results may be returned.

Joined values are retrieved by doing a sequential iteration over the first cursor in the `curslist` parameter, and a nested iteration over each secondary cursor in the order they are specified in the `curslist` parameter. This requires database traversals to search for the current datum in all the cursors after the first. For this reason, the best join performance normally results from sorting the cursors from the one that refers to the least number of data items to the one that refers to the most. By default, DB->join() does this sort on behalf of its caller.

For the returned join cursor to be used in a transaction-protected manner, the cursors listed in `curslist` must have been created within the context of the same transaction.

**dbcp**

The newly created join cursor is returned in the memory location to which `dbcp` refers.

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

- `DB_JOIN_NOSORT`

  Do not sort the cursors based on the number of data items to which they refer. If the data are structured so that cursors with many data items also share many common elements, higher performance will result from listing those cursors before cursors with fewer data items; that is, a sort order other than the default. The `DB_JOIN_NOSORT` flag permits applications to perform join optimization prior to calling the DB->join() method.

**Errors**

The DB->join() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD**

When a client synchronizes with the master, it is possible for committed transactions to be rolled back. This invalidates all the database and cursor handles opened in the replication environment. Once this occurs, an attempt to use such a handle will return `DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD`. The application will need to discard the handle and open a new one in order to continue processing.
**DB_REP_LOCKOUT**

The operation was blocked by client/master synchronization.

**DB_SECONDARY_BAD**

A secondary index references a nonexistent primary key.

**EINVAL**

If cursor methods other than `DBcursor->get()` (page 180) or `DBcursor->close()` (page 173) were called; if this method is called on a sliced database; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB`

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
The `DB->key_range()` method returns an estimate of the proportion of keys that are less than, equal to, and greater than the specified key. The underlying database must be of type Btree.

The `DB->key_range()` method fills in a structure of type `DB_KEY_RANGE`. The following data fields are available from the `DB_KEY_RANGE` structure:

- **double less;**
  A value between 0 and 1, the proportion of keys less than the specified key.

- **double equal;**
  A value between 0 and 1, the proportion of keys equal to the specified key.

- **double greater;**
  A value between 0 and 1, the proportion of keys greater than the specified key.

Values are in the range of 0 to 1; for example, if the field `less` is 0.05, 5% of the keys in the database are less than the `key` parameter. The value for `equal` will be zero if there is no matching key, and will be non-zero otherwise.

The `DB->key_range()` method can not be used with a sliced database.

The `DB->key_range()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**txnid**

If the operation is part of an application-specified transaction, the `txnid` parameter is a transaction handle returned from `DB_ENV->txn_begin()` (page 648); if the operation is part of a Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store group, the `txnid` parameter is a handle returned from `DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin()` (page 640); otherwise NULL. If no transaction handle is specified, but the operation occurs in a transactional database, the operation will be implicitly transaction protected. The `DB->key_range()` method does not retain the locks it acquires for the life of the transaction, so estimates may not be repeatable.

**key**

The key `DBT` operated on.
key_range

The estimates are returned in the key_range parameter, which contains three elements of type double: less, equal, and greater. Values are in the range of 0 to 1; for example, if the field less is 0.05, 5% of the keys in the database are less than the key parameter. The value for equal will be zero if there is no matching key, and will be non-zero otherwise.

flags

The flags parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

Errors

The DB->key_range() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK

A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.

DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED

A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.

You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See DB->set_lk_exclusive() (page 126) for more information.

DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD

When a client synchronizes with the master, it is possible for committed transactions to be rolled back. This invalidates all the database and cursor handles opened in the replication environment. Once this occurs, an attempt to use such a handle will return DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD. The application will need to discard the handle and open a new one in order to continue processing.

DB_REP_LOCKOUT

The operation was blocked by client/master synchronization.

EINVAL

If the underlying database was not of type Btree; if this method is called on a sliced database; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->msg()

```c
#include <db.h>

void
DB->msg(DB *db, const char *fmt, ...);
```

The DB_ENV->msg() (page 269) and DB->msg() methods provide informational messaging functionality for applications written using the Berkeley DB library.

The DB->msg() and DB_ENV->msg() (page 269) methods construct an informational message consisting of the following elements:

- **An optional prefix string**
  
  If no informational callback function has been set using the DB_ENV->set_msgcall() (page 324) method, any prefix string specified using the DB_ENV->set_msgpfx() (page 327) method.

- **An optional printf-style message**
  
  The supplied message `fmt`, if non-NULL, in which the ANSI C X3.159-1989 (ANSI C) printf function specifies how subsequent parameters are converted for output.

This constructed informational message is then handled as follows:

- If an informational callback function has been set (see DB->set_msgcall() (page 129) and DB_ENV->set_msgcall() (page 324)), that function is called with two parameters: any prefix string specified (see DB->set_msgpfx() (page 132) and DB_ENV->set_msgpfx() (page 327)) and the informational message.

- If a C library FILE * has been set (see DB->set_msgfile() (page 131) and DB_ENV->set_msgfile() (page 326)), the informational message is written to that output stream.

- If none of these output options have been configured, the informational message is written to stdout, the standard output stream.

**Note**

The total length of the message written by this method, including the prefix string, can be no longer than 4096.

**Parameters**

- **fmt**
  
  The `fmt` parameter is an optional printf-style message to display.

**Class**

- DB
See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->open()

#include <db.h>

int
DB->open(DB *db, DB_TXN *txnid, const char *file,
const char *database, DBTYPE type, u_int32_t flags, int mode);

The DB->open() method opens the database represented by the file and database.

The currently supported Berkeley DB file formats (or access methods) are Btree, Hash, Heap, Queue, and Recno. The Btree format is a representation of a sorted, balanced tree structure. The Hash format is an extensible, dynamic hashing scheme. The Queue format supports fast access to fixed-length records accessed sequentially or by logical record number. The Recno format supports fixed- or variable-length records, accessed sequentially or by logical record number, and optionally backed by a flat text file.

Storage and retrieval for the Berkeley DB access methods are based on key/data pairs; see DBT for more information.

Calling DB->open() is a relatively expensive operation, and maintaining a set of open databases will normally be preferable to repeatedly opening and closing the database for each new query.

The DB->open() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success. If DB->open() fails, the DB->close() (page 13) method must be called to discard the DB handle.

Parameters

txnid

If the operation is part of an application-specified transaction, the txnid parameter is a transaction handle returned from DB_ENV->txn_begin() (page 648); if the operation is part of a Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store group, the txnid parameter is a handle returned from DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin() (page 640); otherwise NULL. If no transaction handle is specified, but the DB_AUTO_COMMIT flag is specified, the operation will be implicitly transaction protected. Note that transactionally protected operations on a DB handle requires the DB handle itself be transactionally protected during its open. Also note that the transaction must be committed before the handle is closed; see Berkeley DB handles for more information.

file

The file parameter is used as the name of an underlying file that will be used to back the database; see File naming for more information.

In-memory databases never intended to be preserved on disk may be created by setting the file parameter to NULL. Whether other threads of control can access this database is driven entirely by whether the database parameter is set to NULL.

When using a Unicode build on Windows (the default), the file argument will be interpreted as a UTF-8 string, which is equivalent to ASCII for Latin characters.
**database**

The `database` parameter is optional, and allows applications to have multiple databases in a single file. Although no `database` parameter needs to be specified, it is an error to attempt to open a second database in a file that was not initially created using a `database` name. Further, the `database` parameter is not supported by the Queue or Heap format. Finally, when opening multiple databases in the same physical file, it is important to consider locking and memory cache issues; see Opening multiple databases in a single file for more information.

If both the `database` and `file` parameters are NULL, the database is strictly temporary and cannot be opened by any other thread of control. Thus the database can only be accessed by sharing the single database handle that created it, in circumstances where doing so is safe.

If the `database` parameter is not set to NULL, the database can be opened by other threads of control and will be replicated to client sites in any replication group, regardless of whether the `file` parameter is set to NULL.

**type**

The `type` parameter is of type DBTYPE, and must be set to one of DB_BTREE, DB_HASH, DB_HEAP, DB_QUEUE, DB_RECNO, or DB_UNKNOWN. If `type` is DB_UNKNOWN, the database must already exist and `DB->open()` will automatically determine its type. The `DB->get_type()` (page 66) method may be used to determine the underlying type of databases opened using DB_UNKNOWN.

It is an error to specify the incorrect `type` for a database that already exists.

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to zero or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

- **DB_AUTO_COMMIT**
  
  Enclose the `DB->open()` call within a transaction. If the call succeeds, the open operation will be recoverable and all subsequent database modification operations based on this handle will be transactionally protected. If the call fails, no database will have been created.

- **DB_CREATE**
  
  Create the database. If the database does not already exist and the `DB_CREATE` flag is not specified, the `DB->open()` will fail.

- **DB_EXCL**
  
  Return an error if the database already exists. The `DB_EXCL` flag is only meaningful when specified with the `DB_CREATE` flag.

- **DB_MULTIVERSION**
  
  Open the database with support for multiversion concurrency control. This will cause updates to the database to follow a copy-on-write protocol, which is required to support...
snapshot isolation. The DB_MULTIVERSION flag requires that the database be transactionally protected during its open and is not supported by the queue format.

- **DB_NOMMAP**

  Do not map this database into process memory (see the `DB_ENV->set_mp_mmapsize()` method for further information).

- **DB_RDONLY**

  Open the database for reading only. Any attempt to modify items in the database will fail, regardless of the actual permissions of any underlying files.

- **DB_READ_UNCOMMITTED**

  Support transactional read operations with degree 1 isolation. Read operations on the database may request the return of modified but not yet committed data. This flag must be specified on all DB handles used to perform dirty reads or database updates, otherwise requests for dirty reads may not be honored and the read may block.

- **DB_SLICED**

  Open the database with slice support. If the `set_slice_count` DB_CONFIG parameter is not set, this flag is ignored. In addition, slice support must be configured for the database at compile time, or this flag is ignored.

  If this flag is specified, then the **file** parameter must not be NULL and the **database** parameter must be NULL. Also, the **type** parameter must be either DB_BTREE or DB_HASH, or DB_UNKNOWN when opening an existing database.

  This flag is optional when opening an existing database.

  This flag can not be used if the supporting environment was opened with the DB_INIT_REP and DB_FAILCHK flags. Also, distributed transactions can not be used with sliced databases.

- **DB_THREAD**

  Cause the DB handle returned by `DB->open()` to be free-threaded; that is, concurrently usable by multiple threads in the address space. You should use this flag only in the absence of an encompassing environment.

  When opening the database within an encompassing environment, the database inherits the state of this flag from the environment. That is, if the encompassing environment is threaded, then the database will also be threaded. Note that it is an error to specify this flag to the database open if the encompassing environment is not threaded.

  Note that this flag is incompatible with the `DB->set_lk_exclusive()` method.

  Be aware that enabling this flag will serialize calls to DB when using the handle across threads. If concurrent scaling is important to your application we recommend opening separate handles for each thread (and not specifying this flag), rather than sharing handles between threads.
• **DB_TRUNCATE**

Physically truncate the underlying file, discarding all previous databases it might have held. Underlying filesystem primitives are used to implement this flag. For this reason, it is applicable only to the file and cannot be used to discard databases within a file.

The **DB_TRUNCATE** flag cannot be lock or transaction-protected, and it is an error to specify it in a locking or transaction-protected environment.

**mode**

On Windows systems, the mode parameter is ignored.

On UNIX systems or in IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) environments, files created by the database open are created with mode **mode** (as described in **chmod**(2)) and modified by the process' umask value at the time of creation (see **umask**(2)). Created files are owned by the process owner; the group ownership of created files is based on the system and directory defaults, and is not further specified by Berkeley DB. System shared memory segments created by the database open are created with mode **mode**, unmodified by the process' umask value. If **mode** is 0, the database open will use a default mode of readable and writable by both owner and group.

**Environment Variables**

If the database was opened within a database environment, the environment variable **DB_HOME** may be used as the path of the database environment home.

**DB->open()** is affected by any database directory specified using the **DB_ENV->add_data_dir()** (page 216) method, or by setting the "add_data_dir" string in the environment's **DB_CONFIG** file.

• **TMPDIR**

If the **file** and **dbenv** parameters to **DB->open()** are NULL, the environment variable **TMPDIR** may be used as a directory in which to create temporary backing files.

**Errors**

The **DB->open()** method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**

A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.

**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**

A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.

You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See **DB->set_lk_exclusive()** (page 126) for more information.
ENOENT

The file or directory does not exist.

ENOENT

A nonexistent re_source file was specified.

DB_OLD_VERSION

The database cannot be opened without being first upgraded.

DB_META_CHKSUM_FAIL

Checksum mismatch detected on a database metadata page. Either the database is corrupted or the file is not a Berkeley DB database file.

EEXIST

DB_CREATE and DB_EXCL were specified and the database exists.

EINVAL

If an unknown database type, page size, hash function, pad byte, byte order, or a flag value or parameter that is incompatible with the specified database was specified; the DB_THREAD flag was specified and fast mutexes are not available for this architecture; the DB_THREAD flag was specified to DB->open(), but was not specified to the DB_ENV->open() call for the environment in which the DB handle was created; a backing flat text file was specified with either the DB_THREAD flag or the provided database environment supports transaction processing; a Heap database is in use and DB->set_heapsize() (page 123) was used to set a heap size that is different from the value used to create the database or an invalid heap region size was set using DB->set_heap_regionsize() (page 125); or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD

When a client synchronizes with the master, it is possible for committed transactions to be rolled back. This invalidates all the database and cursor handles opened in the replication environment. Once this occurs, an attempt to use such a handle will return DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD. The application will need to discard the handle and open a new one in order to continue processing.

DB_REP_LOCKOUT

The operation was blocked by client/master synchronization.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
**DB->put()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->put(DB *db,
    DB_TXN *txnid, DBT *key, DBT *data, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB->put()` method stores key/data pairs in the database. The default behavior of the `DB->put()` function is to enter the new key/data pair, replacing any previously existing key if duplicates are disallowed, or adding a duplicate data item if duplicates are allowed. If the database supports duplicates, the `DB->put()` method adds the new data value at the end of the duplicate set. If the database supports sorted duplicates, the new data value is inserted at the correct sorted location.

Unless otherwise specified, the `DB->put()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**txnid**

If the operation is part of an application-specified transaction, the `txnid` parameter is a transaction handle returned from `DB_ENV->txn_begin()` (page 648); if the operation is part of a Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store group, the `txnid` parameter is a handle returned from `DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin()` (page 640); otherwise NULL. If no transaction handle is specified, but the operation occurs in a transactional database, the operation will be implicitly transaction protected.

**key**

The key `DBT` operated on.

If creating a new record in a Heap database, the key `DBT` must be empty. The `put` method will return the new record’s Record ID (RID) in the key `DBT`.

**data**

The data `DBT` operated on.

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or one of the following values:

- **DB_APPEND**

  Append the key/data pair to the end of the database. For the `DB_APPEND` flag to be specified, the underlying database must be a Heap, Queue or Recno database. The record number allocated to the record is returned in the specified `key`.

  There is a minor behavioral difference between the Recno and Queue access methods for the `DB_APPEND` flag. If a transaction enclosing a `DB->put()` operation with the `DB_APPEND` flag aborts, the record number may be reallocated in a subsequent `DB_APPEND` operation if
you are using the Recno access method, but it will not be reallocated if you are using the Queue access method.

For a Heap database, if the put operation results in the creation of a new record, then this flag is required.

- **DB_NODUPDATA**

  In the case of the Btree and Hash access methods, enter the new key/data pair only if it does not already appear in the database.

  The DB_NODUPDATA flag may only be specified if the underlying database has been configured to support sorted duplicates. The DB_NODUPDATA flag may not be specified to the Queue or Recno access methods.

  The `DB->put()` method will return `DB_KEYEXIST (page 191)` if DB_NODUPDATA is set and the key/data pair already appears in the database.

- **DB_NOOVERWRITE**

  Enter the new key/data pair only if the key does not already appear in the database. The `DB->put()` method call with the DB_NOOVERWRITE flag set will fail if the key already exists in the database, even if the database supports duplicates.

  The `DB->put()` method will return `DB_KEYEXIST (page 191)` if DB_NOOVERWRITE is set and the key already appears in the database.

  This enforcement of uniqueness of keys applies only to the primary key. The behavior of insertions into secondary databases is not affected by the DB_NOOVERWRITE flag. In particular, the insertion of a record that would result in the creation of a duplicate key in a secondary database that allows duplicates would not be prevented by the use of this flag.

- **DB_MULTIPLE**

  Put multiple data items using keys from the buffer to which the `key` parameter refers and data values from the buffer to which the `data` parameter refers.

  To put records in bulk with the btree or hash access methods, construct bulk buffers in the `key` and `data` `DBT` using `DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_INIT (page 204)` and `DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_NEXT (page 205)`. To put records in bulk with the recno or queue access methods, construct bulk buffers in the `data` `DBT` as before, but construct the `key` `DBT` using `DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_INIT (page 209)` and `DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_NEXT (page 210)` with a data size of zero.

  A successful bulk operation is logically equivalent to a loop through each key/data pair, performing a `DB->put()` (page 79) for each one.

  See [DBT and Bulk Operations (page 198)] for more information on working with bulk updates.

  The DB_MULTIPLE flag may only be used alone, or with the DB_OVERWRITE_DUP option.
• **DB_MULTIPLE_KEY**

Put multiple data items using keys and data from the buffer to which the `key` parameter refers.

To put records in bulk with the btree or hash access methods, construct a single bulk buffer in the `key` `DBT` using `DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_INIT` (page 204) and `DB_MULTIPLE_KEY_WRITE_NEXT` (page 207). To put records in bulk with the recno or queue access methods, construct a bulk buffer in the `key` `DBT` using `DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_INIT` (page 209) and `DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_NEXT` (page 210).

See DBT and Bulk Operations (page 198) for more information on working with bulk updates.

The `DB_MULTIPLE_KEY` flag may only be used alone, or with the `DB_OVERWRITE_DUP` option.

• **DB_OVERWRITE_DUP**

Ignore duplicate records when overwriting records in a database configured for sorted duplicates.

Normally, if a database is configured for sorted duplicates, an attempt to put a record that compares identically to a record already existing in the database will fail. Using this flag causes the put to silently proceed, without failure.

This flag is extremely useful when performing bulk puts (using the `DB_MULTIPLE` or `DB_MULTIPLE_KEY` flags). Depending on the number of records you are writing to the database with a bulk put, you may not want the operation to fail in the event that a duplicate record is encountered. Using this flag along with the `DB_MULTIPLE` or `DB_MULTIPLE_KEY` flags allows the bulk put to complete, even if a duplicate record is encountered.

This flag is also useful if you are using a custom comparison function that compares only part of the data portion of a record. In this case, two records can compare equally when, in fact, they are not equal. This flag allows the put to complete, even if your custom comparison routine claims the two records are equal.

**Errors**

The `DB->put()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_FOREIGN_CONFLICT**

A foreign key constraint violation has occurred. This can be caused by one of two things:

1. An attempt was made to add a record to a constrained database, and the key used for that record does not exist in the foreign key database.

2. `DB_FOREIGN_ABORT` (page 11) was declared for a foreign key database, and then subsequently a record was deleted from the foreign key database without first removing it from the constrained secondary database.
**DB_HEAP_FULL**

An attempt was made to add or update a record in a Heap database. However, the size of the database was constrained using the `DB->set_heapsize()` (page 123) method, and that limit has been reached.

**DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**

A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.

**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**

A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.

You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See `DB->set lk_exclusive()` (page 126) for more information.

**DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD**

When a client synchronizes with the master, it is possible for committed transactions to be rolled back. This invalidates all the database and cursor handles opened in the replication environment. Once this occurs, an attempt to use such a handle will return `DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD`. The application will need to discard the handle and open a new one in order to continue processing.

**DB_REP_LOCKOUT**

The operation was blocked by client/master synchronization.

**EACCES**

An attempt was made to modify a read-only database.

**EINVAL**

If a record number of 0 was specified; an attempt was made to add a record to a fixed-length database that was too large to fit; an attempt was made to do a partial put on a database not configured for it (such as a database configured for duplicate records); an attempt was made to add a record to a secondary index; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**ENOSPC**

A btree exceeded the maximum btree depth (255).

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
The DB->remove() method removes the database specified by the file and database parameters. If no database is specified, the underlying file represented by file is removed, incidentally removing all of the databases it contained.

Applications should never remove databases with open DB handles, or in the case of removing a file, when any database in the file has an open handle. For example, some architectures do not permit the removal of files with open system handles. On these architectures, attempts to remove databases currently in use by any thread of control in the system may fail.

The DB->remove() method should not be called if the remove is intended to be transactionally safe; the DB_ENV->dbremove() (page 226) method should be used instead.

The DB->remove() method can not be called for sliced databases; the DB_ENV->dbremove() (page 226) method should be used instead.

The DB->remove() method may not be called after calling the DB->open() (page 74) method on any DB handle. If the DB->open() (page 74) method has already been called on a DB handle, close the existing handle and create a new one before calling DB->remove().

The DB handle may not be accessed again after DB->remove() is called, regardless of its return.

The DB->remove() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

file

The file parameter is the physical file which contains the database(s) to be removed.

database

The database parameter is the database to be removed.

flags

The flags parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

**Environment Variables**

If the database was opened within a database environment, the environment variable DB_HOME may be used as the path of the database environment home.
DB->remove() is affected by any database directory specified using the DB_ENV->add_data_dir() (page 216) method, or by setting the "add_data_dir" string in the environment's DB_CONFIG file.

Errors

The DB->remove() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL
If the method was called after DB->open() (page 74) was called; if this method was called on a sliced database; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

ENOENT
The file or directory does not exist.

DB_META_CHKSUM_FAIL
Checksum mismatch detected on a database metadata page. Either the database is corrupted or the file is not a Berkeley DB database file.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->rename()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->rename(DB *db, const char *file,
                const char *database, const char *newname, u_int32_t flags);
```

The **DB->rename()** method renames the database specified by the **file** and **database** parameters to **newname**. If no **database** is specified, the underlying file represented by **file** is renamed, incidentally renaming all of the databases it contained.

Applications should not rename databases that are currently in use. If an underlying file is being renamed and logging is currently enabled in the database environment, no database in the file may be open when the **DB->rename()** method is called. In particular, some architectures do not permit renaming files with open handles. On these architectures, attempts to rename databases that are currently in use by any thread of control in the system may fail.

The **DB->rename()** method should not be called if the rename is intended to be transactionally safe; the **DB_ENV->dbrename()** (page 228) method should be used instead.

The **DB->rename()** method can not be used for sliced databases; the **DB_ENV->dbrename()** (page 228) method should be used instead.

The **DB->rename()** method may not be called after calling the **DB->open()** (page 74) method on any **DB** handle. If the **DB->open()** (page 74) method has already been called on a **DB** handle, close the existing handle and create a new one before calling **DB->rename()**. The **DB** handle may not be accessed again after **DB->rename()** is called, regardless of its return.

The **DB->rename()** method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**file**

The **file** parameter is the physical file which contains the database(s) to be renamed.

When using a Unicode build on Windows (the default), the **file** argument will be interpreted as a UTF-8 string, which is equivalent to ASCII for Latin characters.

**database**

The **database** parameter is the database to be renamed.

**newname**

The **newname** parameter is the new name of the database or file.
The DB Handle

flags

The flags parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

Environment Variables

If the database was opened within a database environment, the environment variable DB_HOME may be used as the path of the database environment home.

DB->rename() is affected by any database directory specified using the DB_ENV->add_data_dir() (page 216) method, or by setting the "add_data_dir" string in the environment's DB_CONFIG file.

Errors

The DB->rename() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL
If the method was called after DB->open() (page 74) was called; if this method was called on a sliced database; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

ENOENT
The file or directory does not exist.

DB_META_CHKSUM_FAIL
Checksum mismatch detected on a database metadata page. Either the database is corrupted or the file is not a Berkeley DB database file.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
### DB->set_alloc()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB->set_alloc(DB *db,
    void *(*app_malloc)(size_t),
    void *(*app_realloc)(void *, size_t),
    void (*app_free)(void *));
```

Set the allocation functions used by the DB_ENV and DB methods to allocate or free memory owned by the application.

There are a number of interfaces in Berkeley DB where memory is allocated by the library and then given to the application. For example, the DB_DBT_MALLOC flag, when specified in the DBT object, will cause the DB methods to allocate and reallocate memory which then becomes the responsibility of the calling application. (See DBT for more information.) Other examples are the Berkeley DB interfaces which return statistical information to the application: DB->stat() (page 150), DB_ENV->lock_stat() (page 380), DB_ENV->log_archive() (page 399), DB_ENV->log_stat() (page 414), DB_ENV->memp_stat() (page 448), and DB_ENV->txn_stat() (page 654). There is one method in Berkeley DB where memory is allocated by the application and then given to the library: DB->associate() (page 6).

On systems in which there may be multiple library versions of the standard allocation routines (notably Windows NT), transferring memory between the library and the application will fail because the Berkeley DB library allocates memory from a different heap than the application uses to free it. To avoid this problem, the DB_ENV->set_alloc() (page 279) and DB->set_alloc() methods can be used to pass Berkeley DB references to the application's allocation routines.

It is not an error to specify only one or two of the possible allocation function parameters to these interfaces; however, in that case the specified interfaces must be compatible with the standard library interfaces, as they will be used together. The functions specified must match the calling conventions of the ANSI C X3.159-1989 (ANSI C) library routines of the same name.

Because databases opened within Berkeley DB environments use the allocation interfaces specified to the environment, it is an error to attempt to set those interfaces in a database created within an environment.

The DB->set_alloc() method may not be called after the DB->open() (page 74) method is called.

The DB->set_alloc() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Errors

The DB->set_alloc() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If called in a database environment, or called after DB->open() (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.
Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->set_append_recno()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB->set_append_recno(DB *,
    int (*db_append_recno_fcn)(DB *dbp, DBT *data, db_recno_t recno));
```

When using the DB_APPEND option of the DB->put() (page 79) method, it may be useful to modify the stored data based on the generated key. If a callback function is specified using the DB->set_append_recno() method, it will be called after the record number has been selected, but before the data has been stored.

The DB->set_append_recno() method configures operations performed using the specified DB handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database.

The DB->set_append_recno() method may not be called after the DB->open() (page 74) method is called.

The DB->set_append_recno() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Note**

Berkeley DB is not re-entrant. Callback functions should not attempt to make library calls (for example, to release locks or close open handles). Re-entering Berkeley DB is not guaranteed to work correctly, and the results are undefined.

**Parameters**

**db_append_recno_fcn**

The db_append_recno_fcn parameter is a function to call after the record number has been selected but before the data has been stored into the database. The function takes three parameters:

- **dbp**
  
  The dbp parameter is the enclosing database handle.

- **data**
  
  The data parameter is the data DBT to be stored.

- **recno**
  
  The recno parameter is the generated record number.

The called function may modify the data DBT. If the function needs to allocate memory for the data field, the flags field of the returned DBT should be set to DB_DBT_APPMALLOC, which indicates that Berkeley DB should free the memory when it is done with it.
The callback function must return 0 on success and **errno** or a value outside of the Berkeley DB error name space on failure.

**Errors**

The `DB->set_append_recno()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after `DB->open()` (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB`

**See Also**

*Database and Related Methods (page 3)*
DB->set_bt_compare()

```
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_bt_compare(DB *db, int (*bt_compare_fcn)(DB *db,
    const DBT *dbt1, const DBT *dbt2, size_t *locp));
```

Set the Btree key comparison function. The comparison function is called whenever it is necessary to compare a key specified by the application with a key currently stored in the tree.

If no comparison function is specified, the keys are compared lexically, with shorter keys collating before longer keys.

The DB->set_bt_compare() method configures operations performed using the specified DB handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database.

The DB->set_bt_compare() method may not be called after the DB->open() (page 74) method is called. If the database already exists when DB->open() (page 74) is called, the information specified to DB->set_bt_compare() must be the same as that historically used to create the database or corruption can occur.

The DB->set_bt_compare() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**bt_compare_fcn**

The bt_compare_fcn function is the application-specified Btree comparison function. The comparison function takes four parameters:

- **db**
  
  The db parameter is the enclosing database handle.

- **dbt1**
  
  The dbt1 parameter is the DBT representing the application supplied key.

- **dbt2**
  
  The dbt2 parameter is the DBT representing the current tree's key.

- **locp**
  
  The locp parameter is currently unused, and must be set to NULL or corruption can occur.

The bt_compare_fcn function must return an integer value less than, equal to, or greater than zero if the first key parameter is considered to be respectively less than, equal to, or greater than the second key parameter. In addition, the comparison function must cause the
keys in the database to be well-ordered. The comparison function must correctly handle any key values used by the application (possibly including zero-length keys). In addition, when Btree key prefix comparison is being performed (see \texttt{DB->set_bt_prefix()} (page 97) for more information), the comparison routine may be passed a prefix of any database key. The \texttt{data} and \texttt{size} fields of the \texttt{DBT} are the only fields that may be used for the purposes of this comparison, and no particular alignment of the memory to which by the \texttt{data} field refers may be assumed.

**Errors**

The \texttt{DB->set_bt_compare()} method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- \texttt{EINVAL}

  If the method was called after \texttt{DB->open()} (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

\texttt{DB}

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->set_bt_compress()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_bt_compress(DB *db,
                        int (*bt_compress_fcn)(DB *db, const DBT *prevKey,
                                                const DBT *prevData, const DBT *key, const DBT *data, DBT *dest),
                        int (*bt_decompress_fcn)(DB *db, const DBT *prevKey,
                                                  const DBT *prevData, DBT *compressed, DBT *destKey,
                                                  DBT *destData));
```

Set the Btree compression and decompression functions. The compression function is called whenever a key/data pair is added to the tree and the decompression function is called whenever data is requested from the tree.

This method is only compatible with prefix-based compression routines. This callback is mostly intended for compressing keys. From a performance perspective, it is better to perform compression of the data portion of your records outside of the Berkeley DB library.

If NULL function pointers are specified, then default compression and decompression functions are used. Berkeley DB’s default compression function performs prefix compression on all keys and prefix compression on data values for duplicate keys. If using default compression, both the default compression and decompression functions must be used.

The DB->set_bt_compress() method configures operations performed using the specified DB handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database.

The DB->set_bt_compress() method may not be called after the DB->open() (page 74) method is called. If the database already exists when DB->open() (page 74) is called, the information specified to DB->set_bt_compress() must be the same as that historically used to create the database or corruption can occur.

The DB->set_bt_compress() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**bt_compress_fcn**

The bt_compress_fcn function is the application-specified Btree compression function. The compression function takes six parameters:

- db

  The `db` parameter is the enclosing database handle.

- prevKey

  The `prevKey` parameter is the DBT representing the key immediately preceding the application supplied key.
• prevData
  The *prevData* parameter is the DBT representing the data associated with *prevKey*.

• key
  The *key* parameter is the DBT representing the application supplied key.

• data
  The *data* parameter is the DBT representing the application supplied data.

• dest
  The *dest* parameter is the DBT representing the data stored in the tree, where the function should write the compressed data.

The *bt_compress_fcn* function must return 0 on success and a non-zero value on failure. If the compressed data cannot fit in *dest->data* (the size of which is stored in *dest->ulen*), the function should identify the required buffer size in *dest->size* and return DB_BUFFER_SMALL.

**bt_decompress_fcn**

The *bt_decompress_fcn* function is the application-specified Btree decompression function. The decompression function takes six parameters:

• db
  The *db* parameter is the enclosing database handle.

• prevKey
  The *prevKey* parameter is the DBT representing the key immediately preceding the key being decompressed.

• prevData
  The *prevData* parameter is the DBT representing the data associated with *prevKey*.

• compressed
  The *compressed* parameter is the DBT representing the data stored in the tree, that is, the compressed data.

• destKey
  The *key* parameter is the DBT where the decompression function should store the decompressed key.

• destData
  The *data* parameter is the DBT where the decompression function should store the decompressed key.
The `bt_decompress_fcn` function must return 0 on success and a non-zero value on failure. If the decompressed data cannot fit in `key->data` or `data->data` (the size of which is available in the `DBT`'s `ulen` field), the function should identify the required buffer size using the `DBT`'s `size` field and return `DB_BUFFER_SMALL`.

**Errors**

The `DB->set_bt_compress()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after `DB->open()` (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
**DB->set_bt_minkey()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_bt_minkey(DB *db, u_int32_t bt_minkey);
```

Set the minimum number of key/data pairs intended to be stored on any single Btree leaf page.

This value is used to determine if key or data items will be stored on overflow pages instead of Btree leaf pages. For more information on the specific algorithm used, see Minimum keys per page. The `bt_minkey` value specified must be at least 2; if `bt_minkey` is not explicitly set, a value of 2 is used.

The `DB->set_bt_minkey()` method configures a database, not only operations performed using the specified DB handle.

The `DB->set_bt_minkey()` method may not be called after the `DB->open()` (page 74) method is called. If the database already exists when `DB->open()` (page 74) is called, the information specified to `DB->set_bt_minkey()` will be ignored.

The `DB->set_bt_minkey()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **bt_minkey**
  
The `bt_minkey` parameter is the minimum number of key/data pairs intended to be stored on any single Btree leaf page.

**Errors**

The `DB->set_bt_minkey()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  
  If the method was called after `DB->open()` (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

- **DB**

**See Also**

- Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->set_bt_prefix()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_bt_prefix(DB *db, 
                      size_t (*bt_prefix_fcn)(DB *, const DBT *dbt1, const DBT *dbt2));
```

Set the Btree prefix function. The prefix function is used to determine the amount by which keys stored on the Btree internal pages can be safely truncated without losing their uniqueness. See the Btree prefix comparison section of the Berkeley DB Reference Guide for more details about how this works. The usefulness of this is data-dependent, but can produce significantly reduced tree sizes and search times in some data sets.

If no prefix function or key comparison function is specified by the application, a default lexical comparison function is used as the prefix function. If no prefix function is specified and a key comparison function is specified, no prefix function is used. It is an error to specify a prefix function without also specifying a Btree key comparison function.

The DB->set_bt_prefix() method configures operations performed using the specified DB handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database.

The DB->set_bt_prefix() method may not be called after the DB->open() (page 74) method is called. If the database already exists when DB->open() (page 74) is called, the information specified to DB->set_bt_prefix() must be the same as that historically used to create the database or corruption can occur.

The DB->set_bt_prefix() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **bt_prefix_fcn**

  The bt_prefix_fcn function is the application-specific Btree prefix function. The prefix function takes three parameters:

  - **db**
    
    The db parameter is the enclosing database handle.

  - **dbt1**
    
    The dbt1 parameter is a DBT representing a database key.

  - **dbt2**
    
    The dbt2 parameter is a DBT representing a database key.

  The bt_prefix_fcn function must return the number of bytes of the second key parameter that would be required by the Btree key comparison function to determine the second key parameter’s ordering relationship with respect to the first key parameter. If the two keys are
equal, the key length should be returned. The prefix function must correctly handle any key values used by the application (possibly including zero-length keys). The data and size fields of the DBT are the only fields that may be used for the purposes of this determination, and no particular alignment of the memory to which the data field refers may be assumed.

Errors

The DB->set_bt_prefix() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL

If the method was called after DB->open() (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->set_cachesize()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_cachesize(DB *db,
    u_int32_t gbytes, u_int32_t bytes, int ncache);
```

Set the size of the shared memory buffer pool -- that is, the cache. The cache should be the size of the normal working data set of the application, with some small amount of additional memory for unusual situations. (Note: the working set is not the same as the number of pages accessed simultaneously, and is usually much larger.)

The default cache size is 256KB, and may not be specified as less than 20KB. Any cache size less than 500MB is automatically increased by 25% to account for buffer pool overhead; cache sizes larger than 500MB are used as specified. The maximum size of a single cache is 4GB on 32-bit systems and 10TB on 64-bit systems. (All sizes are in powers-of-two, that is, 256KB is $2^{18}$ not 256,000.) For information on tuning the Berkeley DB cache size, see Selecting a cache size.

It is possible to specify caches to Berkeley DB large enough they cannot be allocated contiguously on some architectures. For example, some releases of Solaris limit the amount of memory that may be allocated contiguously by a process. If ncache is 0 or 1, the cache will be allocated contiguously in memory. If it is greater than 1, the cache will be split across ncache separate regions, where the region size is equal to the initial cache size divided by ncache.

Because databases opened within Berkeley DB environments use the cache specified to the environment, it is an error to attempt to set a cache in a database created within an environment.

The DB->set_cachesize() method may not be called after the DB->open() method is called.

The DB->set_cachesize() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **gbytes**
  
The size of the cache is set to gbytes gigabytes plus bytes.

- **bytes**
  
The size of the cache is set to gbytes gigabytes plus bytes.

- **ncache**
  
The ncache parameter is the number of caches to create.

**Errors**

The DB->set_cachesize() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:
EINVAL

If the specified cache size was impossibly small; the method was called after `DB->open()` (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB`

**See Also**

'Database and Related Methods' (page 3)
DB->set_create_dir()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_create_dir(DB *db, const char *dir);
```

Specify which directory a database should be created in or looked for.

The DB->set_create_dir() method may not be called after the DB->open() (page 74) method is called.

The DB->set_create_dir() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **dir**

  The `dir` will be used to create or locate the database file specified in the DB->open() (page 74) method call. The directory must be one of the directories in the environment list specified by DB_ENV->add_data_dir() (page 216).

**Errors**

The DB->set_create_dir() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

- DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
The DB Handle

DB->set_dup_compare()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_dup_compare(DB *db, int (*dup_compare_fcn)(DB *db,
    const DBT *dbt1, const DBT *dbt2, size_t *locp));
```

Set the duplicate data item comparison function. The comparison function is called whenever it is necessary to compare a data item specified by the application with a data item currently stored in the database. Calling DB->set_dup_compare() implies calling DB->set_flags() (page 112) with the DB_DUPSORT flag.

If no comparison function is specified, the data items are compared lexically, with shorter data items collating before longer data items.

The DB->set_dup_compare() method may not be called after the DB->open() (page 74) method is called. If the database already exists when DB->open() (page 74) is called, the information specified to DB->set_dup_compare() must be the same as that historically used to create the database or corruption can occur.

The DB->set_dup_compare() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**dup_compare_fcn**

The `dup_compare_fcn` function is the application-specified duplicate data item comparison function. The function takes four arguments:

- **db**
  
The `db` parameter is the enclosing database handle.

- **dbt1**
  
The `dbt1` parameter is a `DBT` representing the application supplied data item.

- **dbt2**
  
The `dbt2` parameter is a `DBT` representing the current tree's data item.

- **locp**
  
The `locp` parameter is currently unused, and must be set to NULL or corruption can occur.

The `dup_compare_fcn` function must return an integer value less than, equal to, or greater than zero if the first data item parameter is considered to be respectively less than, equal to, or greater than the second data item parameter. In addition, the comparison function must cause the data items in the set to be well-ordered. The comparison function must
correctly handle any data item values used by the application (possibly including zero-length
data items). The data and size fields of the DBT are the only fields that may be used for the
purposes of this comparison, and no particular alignment of the memory to which the data
field refers may be assumed.

Errors

The DB->set_dup_compare() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero
errors:

EINVAL

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->set_encrypt()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_encrypt(DB *db, const char *passwd, u_int32_t flags);
```

Set the password used by the Berkeley DB library to perform encryption and decryption.

Because databases opened within Berkeley DB environments use the password specified to the environment, it is an error to attempt to set a password in a database created within an environment.

The DB->set_encrypt() method may not be called after the DB->open() (page 74) method is called.

The DB->set_encrypt() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

passwd

The `passwd` parameter is the password used to perform encryption and decryption.

flags

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

- **DB_ENCRYPT_AES**

  Use the Rijndael/AES (also known as the Advanced Encryption Standard and Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) 197) algorithm for encryption or decryption.

Errors

The DB->set_encrypt() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after DB->open() (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**EOPNOTSUPP**

Cryptography is not available in this Berkeley DB release.

Class

**DB**

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->set_errcall()

```c
#include <db.h>

void
DB->set_errcall(DB *, void (*db_errcall_fcn)(const DB_ENV *dbenv, const char *errpfx, const char *msg));
```

When an error occurs in the Berkeley DB library, a Berkeley DB error or an error return value is returned by the interface. In some cases, however, the `errno` value may be insufficient to completely describe the cause of the error, especially during initial application debugging.

The `DB_ENV->set_errcall()` (page 301) and `DB->set_errcall()` methods are used to enhance the mechanism for reporting error messages to the application. In some cases, when an error occurs, Berkeley DB will call `db_errcall_fcn()` with additional error information. It is up to the `db_errcall_fcn()` function to display the error message in an appropriate manner.

Setting `db_errcall_fcn` to NULL unconfigures the callback interface.

Alternatively, you can use the `DB->set_errfile()` (page 107) or `DB->set_errfile()` (page 303) methods to display the additional information via a C library `FILE *`.

This error-logging enhancement does not slow performance or significantly increase application size, and may be run during normal operation as well as during application debugging.

For `DB` handles opened inside of Berkeley DB environments, calling the `DB->set_errcall()` method affects the entire environment and is equivalent to calling the `DB_ENV->set_errcall()` (page 301) method.

When used on a database that was not opened in an environment, the `DB->set_errcall()` method configures operations performed using the specified `DB` handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database.

The `DB->set_errcall()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Note**

Berkeley DB is not re-entrant. Callback functions should not attempt to make library calls (for example, to release locks or close open handles). Re-entering Berkeley DB is not guaranteed to work correctly, and the results are undefined.

**Parameters**

**db_errcall_fcn**

The `db_errcall_fcn` parameter is the application-specified error reporting function. The function takes three parameters:

- `dbenv`
The **dbenv** parameter is the enclosing database environment.

- **errpfx**
  
The **errpfx** parameter is the prefix string (as previously set by `DB->set_errpfx()` (page 109) or `DB_ENV->set_errpfx()` (page 305)).

- **msg**
  
The **msg** parameter is the error message string.

**Class**

**DB**

**See Also**

*Database and Related Methods* (page 3)
DB->set_errfile()

```c
#include <db.h>

void
DB->set_errfile(DB *db, FILE *errfile);
```

When an error occurs in the Berkeley DB library, a Berkeley DB error or an error return value is returned by the interface. In some cases, however, the `errno` value may be insufficient to completely describe the cause of the error, especially during initial application debugging.

The `DB_ENV->set_errfile()` (page 303) and `DB->set_errfile()` methods are used to enhance the mechanism for reporting error messages to the application by setting a C library FILE * to be used for displaying additional Berkeley DB error messages. In some cases, when an error occurs, Berkeley DB will output an additional error message to the specified file reference.

Alternatively, you can use the `DB_ENV->set_errcall()` (page 301) or `DB->set_errcall()` (page 105) methods to capture the additional error information in a way that does not use C library FILE *'s.

The error message will consist of the prefix string and a colon (":") (if a prefix string was previously specified using `DB->set_errpfx()` (page 109) or `DB_ENV->set_errpfx()` (page 305) ), an error string, and a trailing <newline> character.

The default configuration when applications first create DB or DB_ENV handles is as if the `DB_ENV->set_errfile()` (page 303) or `DB->set_errfile()` methods were called with the standard error output (stderr) specified as the FILE * argument. Applications wanting no output at all can turn off this default configuration by calling the `DB_ENV->set_errfile()` (page 303) or `DB->set_errfile()` methods with NULL as the FILE * argument. Additionally, explicitly configuring the error output channel using any of the following methods will also turn off this default output for the application:

- `DB->set_errfile()`
- `DB_ENV->set_errfile()` (page 303)
- `DB_ENV->set_errcall()` (page 301)
- `DB->set_errcall()` (page 105)

This error logging enhancement does not slow performance or significantly increase application size, and may be run during normal operation as well as during application debugging.

For DB handles opened inside of Berkeley DB environments, calling the `DB->set_errfile()` method affects the entire environment and is equivalent to calling the `DB_ENV->set_errfile()` (page 303) method.

When used on a database that was not opened in an environment, the `DB->set_errfile()` method configures operations performed using the specified DB handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database.
The DB->set_errfile() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Parameters**

**errfile**

The **errfile** parameter is a C library `FILE *` to be used for displaying additional Berkeley DB error information.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
**DB->set_errpfx()**

```c
#include <db.h>

void
DB->set_errpfx(DB *db, const char *errpfx);
```

Set the prefix string that appears before error messages issued by Berkeley DB. The length of this string can be no longer than 200.

The **DB->set_errpfx()** and **DB_ENV->set_errpfx()** (page 305) methods do not copy the memory to which the **errpfx** parameter refers; rather, they maintain a reference to it. Although this allows applications to modify the error message prefix at any time (without repeatedly calling the interfaces), it means the memory must be maintained until the handle is closed.

For **DB** handles opened inside of Berkeley DB environments, calling the **DB->set_errpfx()** method affects the entire environment and is equivalent to calling the **DB_ENV->set_errpfx()** (page 305) method.

The **DB->set_errpfx()** method configures operations performed using the specified **DB** handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database.

The **DB->set_errpfx()** method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

### Parameters

**errpfx**

The **errpfx** parameter is the application-specified error prefix for additional error messages.

### Class

**DB**

### See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->set_feedback()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_feedback(DB *,
    void (*db_feedback_fcn)(DB *dbp, int opcode, int percent));
```

Some operations performed by the Berkeley DB library can take non-trivial amounts of time. The DB->set_feedback() method can be used by applications to monitor progress within these operations. When an operation is likely to take a long time, Berkeley DB will call the specified callback function with progress information.

It is up to the callback function to display this information in an appropriate manner.

The DB->set_feedback() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB->set_feedback() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Note**

Berkeley DB is not re-entrant. Callback functions should not attempt to make library calls (for example, to release locks or close open handles). Re-entering Berkeley DB is not guaranteed to work correctly, and the results are undefined.

**Parameters**

**db_feedback_fcn**

The `db_feedback_fcn` parameter is the application-specified feedback function called to report Berkeley DB operation progress. The callback function must take three parameters:

- `dbp`

  The `dbp` parameter is a reference to the enclosing database.

- `opcode`

  The `opcode` parameter is an operation code. The `opcode` parameter may take on any of the following values:

  - `DB_UPGRADE`
    
    The underlying database is being upgraded.

  - `DB_VERIFY`
    
    The underlying database is being verified.

- `percent`

  The `percent` parameter is the percent of progress.
The **percent** parameter is the percent of the operation that has been completed, specified as an integer value between 0 and 100.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
**DB->set_flags()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_flags(DB *db, u_int32_t flags);
```

Configure a database. Calling `DB->set_flags()` is additive; there is no way to clear flags.

The `DB->set_flags()` method may not be called after the `DB->open()` (page 74) method is called.

The `DB->set_flags()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **flags**

  The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

**General**

The following flags may be specified for any Berkeley DB access method:

- **DB_CHKSUM**

  Do checksum verification of pages read into the cache from the backing filestore. Berkeley DB uses the SHA1 Secure Hash Algorithm if encryption is configured and a general hash algorithm if it is not.

  Calling `DB->set_flags()` with the `DB_CHKSUM` flag only affects the specified `DB` handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle).

  If the database already exists when `DB->open()` (page 74) is called, the `DB_CHKSUM` flag will be ignored.

- **DB_ENCRYPT**

  Encrypt the database using the cryptographic password specified to the `DB_ENV->set_encrypt()` (page 293) or `DB->set_encrypt()` (page 104) methods.

  Calling `DB->set_flags()` with the `DB_ENCRYPT` flag only affects the specified `DB` handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle).

  If the database already exists when `DB->open()` (page 74) is called, the `DB_ENCRYPT` flag must be the same as the existing database or an error will be returned.

  Encrypted databases are not portable between machines of different byte orders, that is, encrypted databases created on big-endian machines cannot be read on little-endian machines, and vice versa.

- **DB_TXN_NOT_DURABLE**
If set, Berkeley DB will not write log records for this database. This means that updates of this database exhibit the ACI (atomicity, consistency, and isolation) properties, but not D (durability); that is, database integrity will be maintained, but if the application or system fails, integrity will not persist. The database file must be verified and/or restored from backup after a failure. In order to ensure integrity after application shut down, the database handles must be closed without specifying `DB_NOSYNC`, or all database changes must be flushed from the database environment cache using either the `DB_ENV->txn_checkpoint()` (page 652) or `DB_ENV->memp_sync()` (page 455) methods. All database handles for a single physical file must set `DB_TXN_NOT_DURABLE`, including database handles for different databases in a physical file.

Calling `DB->set_flags()` with the `DB_TXN_NOT_DURABLE` flag only affects the specified `DB` handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle).

**Btree**

The following flags may be specified for the Btree access method:

- **DB_DUP**

  Permit duplicate data items in the database; that is, insertion when the key of the key/data pair being inserted already exists in the database will be successful. The ordering of duplicates in the database is determined by the order of insertion, unless the ordering is otherwise specified by use of a cursor operation or a duplicate sort function.

  The `DB_DUPSORT` flag is preferred to `DB_DUP` for performance reasons. The `DB_DUP` flag should only be used by applications wanting to order duplicate data items manually.

  Calling `DB->set_flags()` with the `DB_DUP` flag affects the database, including all threads of control accessing the database.

  If the database already exists when `DB->open()` (page 74) is called, the `DB_DUP` flag must be the same as the existing database or an error will be returned.

  It is an error to specify both `DB_DUP` and `DB_RECNUM`.

- **DB_DUPSORT**

  Permit duplicate data items in the database; that is, insertion when the key of the key/data pair being inserted already exists in the database will be successful. The ordering of duplicates in the database is determined by the duplicate comparison function. If the application does not specify a comparison function using the `DB->set_dup_compare()` (page 102) method, a default lexical comparison will be used. It is an error to specify both `DB_DUPSORT` and `DB_RECNUM`.

  Calling `DB->set_flags()` with the `DB_DUPSORT` flag affects the database, including all threads of control accessing the database.

  If the database already exists when `DB->open()` (page 74) is called, the `DB_DUPSORT` flag must be the same as the existing database or an error will be returned.
• DB_RECNUM

Support retrieval from the Btree using record numbers. For more information, see the DB_SET_RECNO flag to the DB->get() (page 31) and DBcursor->get() (page 180) methods.

Logical record numbers in Btree databases are mutable in the face of record insertion or deletion. See the DB_RENUMBER flag in the Recno access method information for further discussion.

Maintaining record counts within a Btree introduces a serious point of contention, namely the page locations where the record counts are stored. In addition, the entire database must be locked during both insertions and deletions, effectively single-threading the database for those operations. Specifying DB_RECNUM can result in serious performance degradation for some applications and data sets.

It is an error to specify both DB_DUP and DB_RECNUM.

Calling DB->set_flags() with the DB_RECNUM flag affects the database, including all threads of control accessing the database.

If the database already exists when DB->open() (page 74) is called, the DB_RECNUM flag must be the same as the existing database or an error will be returned.

• DB_REVSPLITOFF

Turn off reverse splitting in the Btree. As pages are emptied in a database, the Berkeley DB Btree implementation attempts to coalesce empty pages into higher-level pages in order to keep the database as small as possible and minimize search time. This can hurt performance in applications with cyclical data demands; that is, applications where the database grows and shrinks repeatedly. For example, because Berkeley DB does page-level locking, the maximum level of concurrency in a database of two pages is far smaller than that in a database of 100 pages, so a database that has shrunk to a minimal size can cause severe deadlocking when a new cycle of data insertion begins.

Calling DB->set_flags() with the DB_REVSPLITOFF flag only affects the specified DB handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle).

Hash

The following flags may be specified for the Hash access method:

• DB_DUP

Permit duplicate data items in the database; that is, insertion when the key of the key/data pair being inserted already exists in the database will be successful. The ordering of duplicates in the database is determined by the order of insertion, unless the ordering is otherwise specified by use of a cursor operation.

The DB_DUPSORT flag is preferred to DB_DUP for performance reasons. The DB_DUP flag should only be used by applications wanting to order duplicate data items manually.
Calling `DB->set_flags()` with the `DB_DUP` flag affects the database, including all threads of control accessing the database.

If the database already exists when `DB->open()` (page 74) is called, the `DB_DUP` flag must be the same as the existing database or an error will be returned.

• **DB_DUPSORT**

Permit duplicate data items in the database; that is, insertion when the key of the key/data pair being inserted already exists in the database will be successful. The ordering of duplicates in the database is determined by the duplicate comparison function. If the application does not specify a comparison function using the `DB->set_dup_compare()` (page 102) method, a default lexical comparison will be used.

Calling `DB->set_flags()` with the `DB_DUPSORT` flag affects the database, including all threads of control accessing the database.

If the database already exists when `DB->open()` (page 74) is called, the `DB_DUPSORT` flag must be the same as the existing database or an error will be returned.

• **DB_REVSPLITOFF**

Turns off hash bucket compaction. When a hash bucket is emptied, the Berkeley DB Hash implementation will decrease the hash table size, coalescing buckets. This will decrease the number of pages in the database. This can hurt performance in applications with cyclical data demands — that is, applications where the database grows and shrinks repeatedly — because of the cost of resplitting buckets when they grow again.

Calling `DB->set_flags()` with the `DB_REVSPLITOFF` flag only affects the specified `DB` handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle).

**Queue**

The following flags may be specified for the Queue access method:

• **DB_INORDER**

The `DB_INORDER` flag modifies the operation of the `DB_CONSUME` or `DB_CONSUME_WAIT` flags to `DB->get()` (page 31) to return key/data pairs in order. That is, they will always return the key/data item from the head of the queue.

The default behavior of queue databases is optimized for multiple readers, and does not guarantee that record will be retrieved in the order they are added to the queue. Specifically, if a writing thread adds multiple records to an empty queue, reading threads may skip some of the initial records when the next `DB->get()` (page 31) call returns.

This flag modifies the `DB->get()` (page 31) call to verify that the record being returned is in fact the head of the queue. This will increase contention and reduce concurrency when there are many reading threads.
Calling `DB->set_flags()` with the `DB_INORDER` flag only affects the specified `DB` handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle).

**Recno**

The following flags may be specified for the Recno access method:

- **DB_RENUMBER**

  Specifying the `DB_RENUMBER` flag causes the logical record numbers to be mutable, and change as records are added to and deleted from the database.

  Using the `DB->put()` (page 79) or `DBcursor->put()` (page 189) interfaces to create new records will cause the creation of multiple records if the record number is more than one greater than the largest record currently in the database. For example, creating record 28, when record 25 was previously the last record in the database, will create records 26 and 27 as well as 28. Attempts to retrieve records that were created in this manner will result in an error return of `DB_KEYEMPTY`.

  If a created record is not at the end of the database, all records following the new record will be automatically renumbered upward by one. For example, the creation of a new record numbered 8 causes records numbered 8 and greater to be renumbered upward by one. If a cursor was positioned to record number 8 or greater before the insertion, it will be shifted upward one logical record, continuing to refer to the same record as it did before.

  If a deleted record is not at the end of the database, all records following the removed record will be automatically renumbered downward by one. For example, deleting the record numbered 8 causes records numbered 9 and greater to be renumbered downward by one. If a cursor was positioned to record number 9 or greater before the removal, it will be shifted downward one logical record, continuing to refer to the same record as it did before.

  If a record is deleted, all cursors that were positioned on that record prior to the removal will no longer be positioned on a valid entry. This includes cursors used to delete an item. For example, if a cursor was positioned to record number 8 before the removal of that record, subsequent calls to `DBcursor->get()` (page 180) with flags of `DB_CURRENT` will result in an error return of `DB_KEYEMPTY` until the cursor is moved to another record. A call to `DBcursor->get()` (page 180) with flags of `DB_NEXT` will return the new record numbered 8 - which is the record that was numbered 9 prior to the delete (if such a record existed).

  For these reasons, concurrent access to a Recno database with the `DB_RENUMBER` flag specified may be largely meaningless, although it is supported.

  Calling `DB->set_flags()` with the `DB_RENUMBER` flag affects the database, including all threads of control accessing the database.

  If the database already exists when `DB->open()` (page 74) is called, the `DB_RENUMBER` flag must be the same as the existing database or an error will be returned.

- **DB_SNAPSHOT**
This flag specifies that any specified re_source file be read in its entirety when DB- >open() (page 74) is called. If this flag is not specified, the re_source file may be read lazily.

See the DB->set_re_source() (page 143) method for information on the re_source file.

Calling DB->set_flags() with the DB_SNAPSHOT flag only affects the specified DB handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle).

Errors

The DB->set_flags() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->set_h_compare()

```
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_h_compare(DB *db, int (*compare_fcn)(DB *db,
    const DBT *dbt1, const DBT *dbt2, size_t *locp));
```

Set the Hash key comparison function. The comparison function is called whenever it is
necessary to compare a key specified by the application with a key currently stored in the
database.

If no comparison function is specified, a byte-by-byte comparison is performed.

The DB->set_h_compare() method configures operations performed using the specified DB
handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database.

The DB->set_h_compare() method may not be called after the DB->open() (page 74) method
is called. If the database already exists when DB->open() (page 74) is called, the information
specified to DB->set_h_compare() must be the same as that historically used to create the
database or corruption can occur.

The DB->set_h_compare() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**compare_fcn**

The compare_fcn function is the application-specified Hash comparison function. The
comparison function takes four parameters:

- **db**

  The db parameter is the enclosing database handle.

- **dbt1**

  The dbt1 parameter is the DBT representing the application supplied key.

- **dbt2**

  The dbt2 parameter is the DBT representing the current database's key.

- **locp**

  The locp parameter is currently unused, and must be set to NULL or corruption can occur.

The compare_fcn function must return an integer value less than, equal to, or greater than
zero if the first key parameter is considered to be respectively less than, equal to, or greater
than the second key parameter. The comparison function must correctly handle any key values
used by the application (possibly including zero-length keys). The data and size fields of
the DBT are the only fields that may be used for the purposes of this comparison, and no particular alignment of the memory to which by the data field refers may be assumed.

Errors

The DB->set_h_compare() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after DB->open() (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->set_h_ffactor()

```
#include <db.h>

int
DB->set_h_ffactor(DB *db, u_int32_t h_ffactor);
```

Set the desired density within the hash table. If no value is specified, the fill factor will be selected dynamically as pages are filled.

The density is an approximation of the number of keys allowed to accumulate in any one bucket, determining when the hash table grows or shrinks. If you know the average sizes of the keys and data in your data set, setting the fill factor can enhance performance. A reasonable rule computing fill factor is to set it to the following:

\[
\text{pagesize - 32) / (average_key_size + average_data_size + 8)}
\]

The DB->set_h_ffactor() method configures a database, not only operations performed using the specified DB handle.

The DB->set_h_ffactor() method may not be called after the DB->open() (page 74) method is called. If the database already exists when DB->open() (page 74) is called, the information specified to DB->set_h_ffactor() will be ignored.

The DB->set_h_ffactor() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

**h_ffactor**

The h_ffactor parameter is the desired density within the hash table.

Errors

The DB->set_h_ffactor() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after DB->open() (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
**DB->set_h_hash()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_h_hash(DB *db,
    u_int32_t (*h_hash_fcn)(DB *dbp, const void *bytes,
    u_int32_t length));
```

Set a user-defined hash function; if no hash function is specified, a default hash function is used. Because no hash function performs equally well on all possible data, the user may find that the built-in hash function performs poorly with a particular data set.

The `DB->set_h_hash()` method configures operations performed using the specified `DB` handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database.

The `DB->set_h_hash()` method may not be called after the `DB->open()` (page 74) method is called. If the database already exists when `DB->open()` (page 74) is called, the information specified to `DB->set_h_hash()` must be the same as that historically used to create the database or corruption can occur.

The `DB->set_h_hash()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**h_hash_fcn**

The `h_hash_fcn` parameter is the application-specified hash function.

Application-specified hash functions take a pointer to a byte string and a length as parameters, and return a value of type `u_int32_t`. The hash function must handle any key values used by the application (possibly including zero-length keys).

**Errors**

The `DB->set_h_hash()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after `DB->open()` (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB`

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
**DB->set_h_nelem()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_h_nelem(DB *db, u_int32_t h_nelem);
```

Set an estimate of the final size of the hash table.

In order for the estimate to be used when creating the database, the **DB->set_h_ffactor()** method must also be called. If the estimate or fill factor are not set or are set too low, hash tables will still expand gracefully as keys are entered, although a slight performance degradation may be noticed.

The **DB->set_h_nelem()** method configures a database, not only operations performed using the specified DB handle.

The **DB->set_h_nelem()** method may not be called after the **DB->open()** method is called. If the database already exists when **DB->open()** is called, the information specified to **DB->set_h_nelem()** will be ignored.

The **DB->set_h_nelem()** method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **h_nelem**

  The **h_nelem** parameter is an estimate of the final size of the hash table.

**Errors**

The **DB->set_h_nelem()** method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  If the method was called after **DB->open()** was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

- **DB**

**See Also**

- Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->set_heapsize()

#include <db.h>

int DB->set_heapsize(DB *db, u_int32_t gbytes, u_int32_t bytes, u_int32_t flags);

Sets the maximum on-disk database file size used by a database configured to use the Heap access method. If this method is never called, the database's file size can grow without bound. If this method is called, then the heap file can never grow larger than the limit defined by this method. In that case, attempts to update or create records in a Heap database that has reached its maximum size will result in a DB_HEAP_FULL error return.

The size specified to this method must be at least three times the database page size. That is, a Heap database must contain at least three database pages. You can set the database page size using the DB->setpagesize() (page 133) method.

The DB->set_heapsize() method may not be called after the DB->open() (page 74) method is called. Further, if this method is called on an existing Heap database, the size specified here must match the size used to create the database. Note, however, that specifying an incorrect size to this method will not result in an error return (EINVAL) until the database is opened.

The DB->set_heapsize() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

gbytes
The size of the heap is set to gbytes gigabytes plus bytes.

bytes
The size of the heap is set to gbytes gigabytes plus bytes.

flags
The flags parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

Errors

The DB->set_heapsize() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL
If the specified heap size was too small; the method was called after DB->open() (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB
See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->set_heap_regionsize()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB->set_heap_regionsize(DB *db, u_int32_t npages);
```

Sets the number of pages in a region of a database configured to use the Heap access method. If this method is never called, the default region size for the database's page size will be used. You can set the database page size using the DB->set_pagesize() (page 133) method.

The DB->set_heap_regionsize() method may not be called after the DB->open() (page 74) method is called. If the database already exists when DB->open() (page 74) is called, the information specified to DB->set_heap_regionsize() will be ignored. If the specified region size is larger than the maximum region size for the database's page size, an error will be returned when DB->open() (page 74) is called. The maximum allowable region size will be included in the error message.

The DB->set_heap_regionsize() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- npages

  The npages parameter is the number of pages in a Heap database region.

**Errors**

The DB->set_heap_regionsize() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  - If the specified region size was too small; the method was called after DB->open() (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

- DB

**See Also**

  Database and Related Methods (page 3), DB->get_heap_regionsize() (page 48)
DB->set_lk_exclusive()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_lk_exclusive(DB *db, int nowait_onoff);
```

Configures the database handle to obtain a write lock on the entire database when it is opened. This gives the handle exclusive access to the database, because the write lock will block all other threads of control for both read and write access.

Use this method to improve the throughput performance on your database for the thread that is controlling this handle. When configured with this method, operations on the database do not acquire page locks as they perform read and/or write operations. Also, the exclusive lock means that operations performed on the database handle will never be blocked waiting for lock due to another thread's activities. The application will also be immune to deadlocks.

On the other hand, use of this method means that you can only have a single thread accessing the database until the handle is closed. For some applications, the loss of multiple threads concurrently operating on the database will result in performance degradation.

Also, use of this method means that you can only have one transaction active for the handle at a time.

Note

This method is incompatible with the DB_THREAD (page 76) and DB_SLICED (page 76) configuration flags.

The DB->set_lk_exclusive() method may not be called after the DB->open() (page 74) method is called.

The DB->set_lk_exclusive() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Replication Notes

Replication applications that use exclusive database handles need to be written with caution. This is because replication clients cannot process updates on an exclusive database until all local handles on the database are closed. Also, attempting to open an exclusive database handle on a currently operating client will result in the open call failing with the error EINVAL.

Also, opening an exclusive database handle on a replication master will result in all clients being locked out of the database. On clients, existing handles on the exclusive database will return the error DB_REP_DEAD_HANDLE when accessed, and must be closed. New handles opened on the exclusive database will block until the master closes its exclusive database handle.
Parameters

**nowait_onoff**

If set to 0, this method will block until it can obtain the exclusive lock on the database. If set to some value other than 0, DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED is returned when the handle is opened if the exclusive database lock cannot be immediately obtained.

Errors

The DB->set_lk_exclusive() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after DB->open() (page 74) was called; the method was called on a currently operating replication client; this method was called on a sliced database; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->set_lorder()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_lorder(DB *db, int lorder);
```

Set the byte order for integers in the stored database metadata. The host byte order of the machine where the Berkeley DB library was compiled will be used if no byte order is set.

The access methods provide no guarantees about the byte ordering of the application data stored in the database, and applications are responsible for maintaining any necessary ordering.

The DB->set_lorder() method configures a database, not only operations performed using the specified DB handle.

The DB->set_lorder() method may not be called after the DB->open() (page 74) method is called. If the database already exists when DB->open() (page 74) is called, the information specified to DB->set_lorder() will be ignored.

If creating additional databases in a single physical file, information specified to DB->set_lorder() will be ignored and the byte order of the existing databases will be used.

The DB->set_lorder() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **lorder**

  The lorder parameter should represent the byte order as an integer; for example, big endian order is the number 4,321, and little endian order is the number 1,234.

**Errors**

The DB->set_lorder() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  If the method was called after DB->open() (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

- **DB**

**See Also**

- Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->set_msgcall()

```c
#include <db.h>

#include <db.h>
void
DB->set_msgcall(DB *, void (*db_msgcall_fcn)(const DB_ENV *dbenv,
const char *msgpfx,
const char *msg));
```

There are interfaces in the Berkeley DB library which either directly output informational messages or statistical information, or configure the library to output such messages when performing other operations, for example, `DB_ENV->setVerbose()` (page 341) and `DB_ENV->stat_print()` (page 344).

The `DB_ENV->set_msgcall()` (page 324) and `DB->set_msgcall()` methods are used to pass these messages to the application, and Berkeley DB will call `db_msgcall_fcn` with each message. It is up to the `db_msgcall_fcn` function to display the message in an appropriate manner.

Setting `db_msgcall_fcn` to NULL unconfigures the callback interface.

Alternatively, you can use the `DB->set_msgfile()` (page 131) or `DB->set_msgfile()` (page 326) methods to display the messages via a C library FILE *.

For DB handles opened inside of Berkeley DB environments, calling the `DB->set_msgcall()` method affects the entire environment and is equivalent to calling the `DB_ENV->set_msgcall()` method.

The `DB->set_msgcall()` method configures operations performed using the specified DB handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database.

The `DB->set_msgcall()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Note**

Berkeley DB is not re-entrant. Callback functions should not attempt to make library calls (for example, to release locks or close open handles). Re-entering Berkeley DB is not guaranteed to work correctly, and the results are undefined.

**Parameters**

**db_msgcall_fcn**

The `db_msgcall_fcn` parameter is the application-specified message reporting function. The function takes three parameters:

- `dbenv`

  The `dbenv` parameter is the enclosing database environment.

- `msgpfx`

- `msg`
The `msgpfx` parameter is the message prefix string that appears before informational messages. This value is the environmental default, and can be changed at any time using `DB_ENV->set_msgpfx()` (page 327) or `DB->set_msgpfx()` (page 132).

- `msg`

  The `msg` parameter is the message string.

**Class**

`DB`

**See Also**

*Database and Related Methods (page 3)*
DB->set_msgfile()

#include <db.h>

void
DB->set_msgfile(DB *db, FILE *msgfile);

There are interfaces in the Berkeley DB library which either directly output informational messages or statistical information, or configure the library to output such messages when performing other operations, for example, \texttt{DB\_ENV->set\_verbose()} (page 341) and \texttt{DB\_ENV->stat\_print()} (page 344).

The \texttt{DB\_ENV->set\_msgfile()} (page 326) and \texttt{DB->set\_msgfile()} methods are used to display these messages for the application. In this case the message will include a trailing \texttt{<newline>} character.

Setting \texttt{msgfile} to NULL unconfigures the interface.

Alternatively, you can use the \texttt{DB\_ENV->set\_msgcall()} (page 324) or \texttt{DB->set\_msgcall()} (page 129) methods to capture the additional error information in a way that does not use C library FILE *'s.

For DB handles opened inside of Berkeley DB environments, calling the \texttt{DB->set\_msgfile()} method affects the entire environment and is equivalent to calling the \texttt{DB\_ENV->set\_msgfile()} (page 326) method.

The \texttt{DB->set\_msgfile()} method configures operations performed using the specified DB handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database.

The \texttt{DB->set\_msgfile()} method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Parameters**

\texttt{msgfile}

The \texttt{msgfile} parameter is a C library FILE * to be used for displaying messages.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
The DB Handle

### DB->set_msgpfx()

```c
#include <db.h>

void DB->set_msgpfx(DB *db, const char *msgpfx);
```

Set the prefix string that appears before informational messages issued by Berkeley DB. The length of this string can be no longer than 200.

The `DB->set_msgpfx()` and `DB_ENV->set_msgpfx()` methods do not copy the memory to which the `msgpfx` parameter refers; rather, they maintain a reference to it. Although this allows applications to modify the informational message prefix at any time (without repeatedly calling the interfaces), it means the memory must be maintained until the handle is closed.

For DB handles opened inside of Berkeley DB environments, calling the `DB->set_msgpfx()` method affects the entire environment and is equivalent to calling the `DB_ENV->set_msgpfx()` method.

The `DB->set_msgpfx()` method configures operations performed using the specified DB handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database.

The `DB->set_msgpfx()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

#### Parameters

- **msgpfx**

  The `msgpfx` parameter is the application-specified informational prefix for additional informational messages.

#### Class

- **DB**

#### See Also

- Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->set_pagesize()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB->set_pagesize(DB *db, u_int32_t pagesize);
```

Set the size of the pages used to hold items in the database, in bytes. The minimum page size is 512 bytes, the maximum page size is 64K bytes, and the page size must be a power-of-two. If the page size is not explicitly set, one is selected based on the underlying filesystem I/O block size. The automatically selected size has a lower limit of 512 bytes and an upper limit of 16K bytes.

For information on tuning the Berkeley DB page size, see Selecting a page size.

The DB->set_pagesize() method configures a database, not only operations performed using the specified DB handle.

The DB->set_pagesize() method may not be called after the DB->open() (page 74) method is called. If the database already exists when DB->open() (page 74) is called, the information specified to DB->set_pagesize() will be ignored.

If creating additional databases in a single physical file, information specified to DB->set_pagesize() will be ignored and the page size of the existing databases will be used.

The DB->set_pagesize() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

pagesize

The pagesize parameter sets the database page size.

**Errors**

The DB->set_pagesize() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after DB->open() (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
**DB->set_partition()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB->set_partition(DB * db, u_int32_t parts, DBT *keys,
                  u_int32_t (*db_partition_fcn) (DB *db, DBT *key));
```

Set up partitioning for a database. Partitioning may be used on either BTREE or HASH databases. Partitions may be specified by either a set of keys specifying a range of values in each partition, or with a callback function that returns the number of the partition to put a specific key. Partition range keys may only be specified for BTREE databases.

Partitions are implemented as separate database files and can help reduce contention within a logical database. Contention can come from multiple threads of control accessing database pages simultaneously. Typically these pages are the root of a btree and the metadata page which contains allocation information in both BTREE and HASH databases. Each partition has its own metadata and root pages.

The DB->set_partition() method can not be used with a sliced database.

**Parameters**

Exactly one of the parameters *keys* and *partition_fcn* must be NULL.

**parts**

The *parts* parameter is the number of partitions to create. The value must be greater than or equal to 2, and smaller than 1000000.

**keys**

The *keys* parameter is an array of DBT structures containing the keys that specify the range of key values to be stored in each partition. Each key specifies the minimum value that may be stored in the corresponding partition. The number of keys must be one less than the number of partitions specified by the *parts* parameter since the first partition will hold any key less than the first key in the array.

**db_partition_fcn**

The *db_partition_fcn* parameter is the application-specified partitioning function. The function returns an integer which will be used modulo the number of partitions specified by the *parts* parameter. The function will be called with two parameters:

- *db*
  
The *db* parameter is the database handle.

- *key*
  
The *key* parameter is the key for which a partition number should be returned.
Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->set_partition_dirs()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB->set_partition_dirs(DB *db, const char **dirs);
```

Specify which directories will contain the database extents. If the number of directories is less than the number of partitions, the directories will be used in a round robin fashion.

The DB->set_partition_dirs() method may not be called after the DB->open() (page 74) method is called.

The DB->set_partition_dirs() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **dirs**

  The `dirs` points to an array of directories that will be used to create or locate the database extent files specified to the DB->open() (page 74) method. The directories must be included in the environment list specified by DB_ENV->add_data_dir() (page 216).

**Errors**

The DB->set_partition_dirs() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
### DB->set_priority()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_priority(DB *db, DB_CACHE_PRIORITY priority);
```

Set the cache priority for pages referenced by the `DB` handle.

The priority of a page biases the replacement algorithm to be more or less likely to discard a page when space is needed in the buffer pool. The bias is temporary, and pages will eventually be discarded if they are not referenced again. The `DB->set_priority()` method is only advisory, and does not guarantee pages will be treated in a specific way.

When called on a database that has been opened with sliced support, the `DB->set_priority()` method is automatically called on each supporting slice database.

The `DB->set_priority()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB->set_priority()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

#### Parameters

**priority**

The `priority` parameter must be set to one of the following values:

- **DB_PRIORITY_VERY_LOW**
  
The lowest priority: pages are the most likely to be discarded.

- **DB_PRIORITY_LOW**
  
The next lowest priority.

- **DB_PRIORITY_DEFAULT**
  
The default priority.

- **DB_PRIORITY_HIGH**
  
The next highest priority.

- **DB_PRIORITY_VERY_HIGH**
  
The highest priority: pages are the least likely to be discarded.

#### Class

`DB`
See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
# DB->set_q_extentsize()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_q_extentsize(DB *db, u_int32_t extentsize);
```

Set the size of the extents used to hold pages in a Queue database, specified as a number of pages. Each extent is created as a separate physical file. If no extent size is set, the default behavior is to create only a single underlying database file.

For information on tuning the extent size, see Selecting a extent size.

The `DB->set_q_extentsize()` method configures a database, not only operations performed using the specified `DB` handle.

The `DB->set_q_extentsize()` method may not be called after the `DB->open()` (page 74) method is called. If the database already exists when `DB->open()` (page 74) is called, the information specified to `DB->set_q_extentsize()` will be ignored.

The `DB->set_q_extentsize()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

## Parameters

**extentsize**

The `extentsize` parameter is the number of pages in a Queue database extent.

## Errors

The `DB->set_q_extentsize()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after `DB->open()` (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

## Class

`DB`

## See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->set_re_delim()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_re_delim(DB *db, int re_delim);
```

Set the delimiting byte used to mark the end of a record in the backing source file for the Recno access method.

This byte is used for variable length records if the re_source file is specified using the DB->set_re_source() (page 143) method. If the re_source file is specified and no delimiting byte was specified, <newline> characters (that is, ASCII 0x0a) are interpreted as end-of-record markers.

The DB->set_re_delim() method configures a database, not only operations performed using the specified DB handle.

The DB->set_re_delim() method may not be called after the DB->open() (page 74) method is called. If the database already exists when DB->open() (page 74) is called, the information specified to DB->set_re_delim() will be ignored.

The DB->set_re_delim() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

re_delim

The re_delim parameter is the delimiting byte used to mark the end of a record.

**Errors**

The DB->set_re_delim() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after DB->open() (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
**DB->set_re_len()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB->set_re_len(DB *db, u_int32_t re_len);
```

For the Queue access method, specify that the records are of length `re_len`. For the Queue access method, the record length must be enough smaller than the database's page size that at least one record plus the database page's metadata information can fit on each database page.

For the Recno access method, specify that the records are fixed-length, not byte-delimited, and are of length `re_len`.

Any records added to the database that are less than `re_len` bytes long are automatically padded (see `DB->set_re_pad()` (page 142) for more information).

Any attempt to insert records into the database that are greater than `re_len` bytes long will cause the call to fail immediately and return an error.

The `DB->set_re_len()` method configures a database, not only operations performed using the specified `DB` handle.

The `DB->set_re_len()` method may not be called after the `DB->open()` (page 74) method is called. If the database already exists when `DB->open()` (page 74) is called, the information specified to `DB->set_re_len()` will be ignored.

The `DB->set_re_len()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`re_len`

The `re_len` parameter is the length of a Queue or Recno database record, in bytes.

**Errors**

The `DB->set_re_len()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  If the method was called after `DB->open()` (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB`

**See Also**

`Database and Related Methods (page 3)`
DB->set_re_pad()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_re_pad(DB *db, int re_pad);
```

Set the padding character for short, fixed-length records for the Queue and Recno access methods.

If no pad character is specified, <space> characters (that is, ASCII 0x20) are used for padding.

The `DB->set_re_pad()` method configures a database, not only operations performed using the specified `DB` handle.

The `DB->set_re_pad()` method may not be called after the `DB->open()` (page 74) method is called. If the database already exists when `DB->open()` (page 74) is called, the information specified to `DB->set_re_pad()` will be ignored.

The `DB->set_re_pad()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**re_pad**

The `re_pad` parameter is the pad character for fixed-length records for the Queue and Recno access methods.

**Errors**

The `DB->set_re_pad()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after `DB->open()` (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB`

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->set_re_source()

```
#include <db.h>

int
DB->set_re_source(DB *db, char *source);
```

Set the underlying source file for the Recno access method. The purpose of the source value is to provide fast access and modification to databases that are normally stored as flat text files.

The source parameter specifies an underlying flat text database file that is read to initialize a transient record number index. In the case of variable length records, the records are separated, as specified by DB->set_re_delim() (page 140). For example, standard UNIX byte stream files can be interpreted as a sequence of variable length records separated by <newline> characters.

In addition, when cached data would normally be written back to the underlying database file (for example, the DB->close() (page 13) or DB->sync() (page 159) methods are called), the in-memory copy of the database will be written back to the source file.

By default, the backing source file is read lazily; that is, records are not read from the file until they are requested by the application. If multiple processes (not threads) are accessing a Recno database concurrently, and are either inserting or deleting records, the backing source file must be read in its entirety before more than a single process accesses the database, and only that process should specify the backing source file as part of the DB->open() (page 74) call. See the DB_SNAPSHOT flag for more information.

Reading and writing the backing source file specified by source cannot be transaction-protected because it involves filesystem operations that are not part of the Db transaction methodology. For this reason, if a temporary database is used to hold the records, it is possible to lose the contents of the source file, for example, if the system crashes at the right instant. If a file is used to hold the database, normal database recovery on that file can be used to prevent information loss, although it is still possible that the contents of source will be lost if the system crashes.

The source file must already exist (but may be zero-length) when DB->open() (page 74) is called.

It is not an error to specify a read-only source file when creating a database, nor is it an error to modify the resulting database. However, any attempt to write the changes to the backing source file using either the DB->sync() (page 159) or DB->close() (page 13) methods will fail, of course. Specify the DB_NOSYNC flag to the DB->close() (page 13) method to stop it from attempting to write the changes to the backing file; instead, they will be silently discarded.

For all of the previous reasons, the source field is generally used to specify databases that are read-only for Berkeley DB applications; and that are either generated on the fly by software tools or modified using a different mechanism — for example, a text editor.

The DB->set_re_source() method configures operations performed using the specified DB handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database.
The DB->set_re_source() method may not be called after the DB->open() (page 74) method is called. If the database already exists when DB->open() (page 74) is called, the information specified to DB->set_re_source() must be the same as that historically used to create the database or corruption can occur.

The DB->set_re_source() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**source**

The backing flat text database file for a Recno database.

When using a Unicode build on Windows (the default), the source argument will be interpreted as a UTF-8 string, which is equivalent to ASCII for Latin characters.

**Errors**

The DB->set_re_source() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after DB->open() (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->set_slice_callback()

```
#include <db.h>

DB->set_slice_callback(DB *db,
        int (*func)(const DB *db, const DBT *key, DBT *slice));
```

The `DB->set_slice_callback()` method is optionally used to identify slices for applications using a sliced environment. The callback identifies the portion of a record's key that is used to allocate records across slices. This is the *slice-relevant* portion of the key. If no callback is specified, then the entire key is used to allocate records across slices.

The `DB->set_slice_callback()` method must be called on an opened database handle. Changing this callback after the database has been created results in undefined behavior.

The `DB->set_backup_callbacks()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**func**

The `func` parameter is the function used to determine which part of a key is slice relevant.

This function takes three parameters:

- **db**
  
  The `db` parameter is the sliced database for which the callback is set.

- **key**
  
  The `key` parameter is the source of the slice specification fields. That is, this is the key portion of the database's records. Some portion of this key is used to determine slice location, and that portion of the key is determined by the function implemented by this callback.

- **slice**
  
  The `slice` parameter is the `DBT` into which the slice-relevant portion of the key will be written. This `DBT` is user-owned.

You should zero this `DBT`, with the exception of the size and data fields. When initializing the structure, set size to `DB_SLICE_BUFLEN`, and data to the address of a 32-bit word aligned buffer of `DB_SLICE_BUFLEN` bytes.

Within the context of the callback, you can set these two fields in the following ways:

- If the slice-relevant portion of the key is one contiguous region, the set data to the first relevant byte in that region, and size to the number of significant bytes. Change no other fields.
• If the slice-relevant portion of the key is more than one contiguous region, then calculate the total size required to hold the slice-relevant data. If this total size is less than DB_SLICE_BUFLEN, then leave the initialized buffer unchanged. If the total size is greater than DB_SLICE_BUFLEN, then:

1. Allocate enough memory to contain all of the slice-relevant data. By default, malloc() is used to allocate memory. However, if your application configured a custom memory allocator using DB_ENV->set_alloc() (page 279) or db_env_set_func_malloc (page 764), then use that function.

2. Set the flags parameter to DB_DBT_APPMALLOC. DB will deallocate the memory before returning from the API call, using the free function corresponding to the allocator just used.

Once you have created a large enough buffer, set the slice DBT handle's size to the new buffer's size.

After that, concatenate all of the slice-relevant data together into the newly created buffer.

Be aware that the slice DBT handle's size can be zero, in which case the record will be placed in slice 0. Also, this size may be larger than the key's size, if it is appropriate for your application.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->slice_lookup()

```c
#include <db.h>

DB->slice_lookup(DB *db, const DBT *key, DB **result,
                 u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB->slice_lookup()` method returns the subordinate database that contains the records for the provided key.

The `DB->slice_lookup()` method must be called on an opened database handle.

The `DB->slice_lookup()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **key**
  
The `key` parameter is the `DBT` for the record that you want to look up.

- **result**
  
The subordinate database containing the record identified by `key` is returned in the `result` parameter.

- **flags**
  
The `flags` parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->sort_multiple()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->sort_multiple(DB *db, DBT *key, DBT *data, u_int32_t flags);
```

The DB->sort_multiple() method is used to sort a set of DBTs into database insert order. If specified the application specific btree comparison and duplicate comparison functions will be used if they are configured.

The key and data parameters must contain pairs of items. That is the n-th entry in key must correspond to the n-th entry in data.

The DB->sort_multiple() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**key**

The key parameter must contain a set of DBT entries in DB_MULTIPLE or DB_MULTIPLE_KEY format.

The sorted entries will be returned in the key parameter.

**data**

If non-NULL, the data parameter must contain a set of DBTs entries in DB_MULTIPLE format. Each entry must correspond to an entry in the key parameter.

**flags**

The flags parameter must be set to one of the following values:

- **DB_MULTIPLE**
  
  Sorts one or two DB_MULTIPLE format DBTs. Assumes that key and data specify pairs of key and data items to sort together. If the data parameter is NULL the API will sort the key arrays according to the btree comparison function.

- **DB_MULTIPLE_KEY**

  Sorts a DB_MULTIPLE_KEY format DBT.

**Errors**

The DB->sort_multiple() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EACCES**

An attempt was made to modify a read-only database.
EINVAL

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DBT and Bulk Operations (page 198)
The `DB->stat()` method creates a statistical structure and copies a pointer to it into user-specified memory locations. Specifically, if `sp` is non-NULL, a pointer to the statistics for the database are copied into the memory location to which it refers.

The `DB->stat()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

#### `txnid`

If the operation is part of an application-specified transaction, the `txnid` parameter is a transaction handle returned from `DB_ENV->txn_begin()` (page 648); if the operation is part of a Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store group, the `txnid` parameter is a handle returned from `DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin()` (page 640); otherwise NULL. If no transaction handle is specified, but the operation occurs in a transactional database, the operation will be implicitly transaction protected.

#### `flags`

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or one of the following values:

- **DB_FAST_STAT**
  
  Return only the values which do not require traversal of the database. Among other things, this flag makes it possible for applications to request key and record counts without incurring the performance penalty of traversing the entire database.

- **DB_READ_COMMITTED**
  
  Database items read during a transactional call will have degree 2 isolation. This ensures the stability of the data items read during the stat operation but permits that data to be modified or deleted by other transactions prior to the commit of the specified transaction.

- **DB_READ_UNCOMMITTED**
  
  Database items read during a transactional call will have degree 1 isolation, including modified but not yet committed data. Silently ignored if the `DB_READ_UNCOMMITTED` flag was not specified when the underlying database was opened.

### Statistical Structure

Statistical structures are stored in allocated memory. If application-specific allocation routines have been declared (see `DB_ENV->set_alloc()` (page 279) for more information), they are used to allocate the memory; otherwise, the standard C library `malloc(3)` is used. The caller
is responsible for deallocating the memory. To deallocate the memory, free the memory reference; references inside the returned memory need not be individually freed.

If the DB_FAST_STAT flag has not been specified, the DB->stat() method will access some of or all the pages in the database, incurring a severe performance penalty as well as possibly flushing the underlying buffer pool.

In the presence of multiple threads or processes accessing an active database, the information returned by DB->stat may be out-of-date.

If the database was not opened read-only and the DB_FAST_STAT flag was not specified, the cached key and record numbers will be updated after the statistical information has been gathered.

The DB->stat() method may not be called before the DB->open() (page 74) method is called.

The DB->stat() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Hash Statistics**

In the case of a Hash database, the statistics are stored in a structure of type DB_HASH_STAT. The following fields will be filled in:

- `uintmax_t hash_bfree;`
  The number of bytes free on bucket pages.
- `u_int32_t hash_bigpages;`
  The number of hash overflow pages (created when key/data is too big for the page).
- `uintmax_t hash_big_bfree;`
  The number of bytes free on hash overflow (big item) pages.
- `u_int32_t hash_buckets;`
  The number of hash buckets. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.
- `u_int32_t hash_dup;`
  The number of duplicate pages.
- `uintmax_t hash_dup_free;`
  The number of bytes free on duplicate pages.
- `u_int32_t hash_ffactor;`
  The desired fill factor (number of items per bucket) specified at database-creation time. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.
- `u_int32_t hash_free;`
The number of pages on the free list.

- `u_int32_t hash_magic;`
  Magic number that identifies the file as a Hash file. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

- `u_int32_t hash_metaflags;`
  Reports internal flags. For internal use only.

- `u_int32_t hash_ext_files;`
  The number of external files.

- `u_int32_t hash_nmeta;`
  The number of external files.

- `u_int32_t hash_ndata;`
  The number of key/data pairs in the database. If DB_FAST_STAT was specified the count will be the last saved value unless it has never been calculated, in which case it will be 0. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

- `u_int32_t hash_nkeys;`
  The number of unique keys in the database. If DB_FAST_STAT was specified the count will be the last saved value unless it has never been calculated, in which case it will be 0. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

- `u_int32_t hash_overflows;`
  The number of bucket overflow pages (bucket overflow pages are created when items did not fit on the main bucket page).

- `uintmax_t hash_ovfl_free;`
  The number of bytes free on bucket overflow pages.

- `u_int32_t hash_pagecnt;`
  The number of pages in the database. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

- `u_int32_t hash_pagesize;`
  The underlying database page (and bucket) size, in bytes. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

- `u_int32_t hash_version;`
  The version of the Hash database. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

### Heap Statistics

In the case of a Heap database, the statistics are stored in a structure of type `DB_HEAP_STAT`. The following fields will be filled in:
• u_int32_t heap_magic;
  Magic number that identifies the file as a Heap file. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• u_int32_t heap_metaflags;
  Reports internal flags. For internal use only.

• u_int32_t heap_ext_files;
  The number of external files.

• u_int32_t heap_nreps;
  Reports the number of records in the Heap database. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• u_int32_t heap_pagecnt;
  The number of pages in the database. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• u_int32_t heap_pagesize;
  The underlying database page (and bucket) size, in bytes. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• u_int32_t heap_nregions;
  The number of regions in the Heap database. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• u_int32_t heap_regionsize;
  The number of pages in a region in the Heap database. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• u_int32_t heap_version;
  The version of the Heap database. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

**Btree and Recno Statistics**

In the case of a Btree or Recno database, the statistics are stored in a structure of type DB_BTREE_STAT. The following fields will be filled in:

• u_int32_t bt_dup_pg;
  Number of database duplicate pages.

• uintmax_t bt_dup_pgfree;
  Number of bytes free in database duplicate pages.

• u_int32_t bt_empty_pg;
  Number of empty database pages.
• u_int32_t bt_free;
  Number of pages on the free list.
• u_int32_t bt_int_pg;
  Number of database internal pages.
• uintmax_t bt_int_pgfree;
  Number of bytes free in database internal pages.
• u_int32_t bt_leaf_pg;
  Number of database leaf pages.
• uintmax_t bt_leaf_pgfree;
  Number of bytes free in database leaf pages.
• u_int32_t bt_levels;
  Number of levels in the database.
• u_int32_t bt_magic;
  Magic number that identifies the file as a Btree database. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.
• u_int32_t bt_metaflags;
  Reports internal flags. For internal use only.
• u_int32_t bt_minkey;
  The minimum keys per page. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.
• u_int32_t bt_ext_files;
  The number of external files.
• u_int32_t bt_ndata;
  For the Btree Access Method, the number of key/data pairs in the database. If the DB_FAST_STAT flag is not specified, the count will be exact. Otherwise, the count will be the last saved value unless it has never been calculated, in which case it will be 0.
  
  For the Recno Access Method, the number of records in the database. If the database was configured with mutable record numbers (see DB_RENUMBER), the count will be exact. Otherwise, if the DB_FAST_STAT flag is specified the count will be exact but will include deleted and implicitly created records; if the DB_FAST_STAT flag is not specified, the count will be exact and will not include deleted or implicitly created records.

  Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.
• u_int32_t bt_nkeys;

For the Btree Access Method, the number of keys in the database. If the DB_FAST_STAT flag is not specified or the database was configured to support record numbers (see DB_RECNUM), the count will be exact. Otherwise, the count will be the last saved value unless it has never been calculated, in which case it will be 0.

For the Recno Access Method, the number of records in the database. If the database was configured with mutable record numbers (see DB_RENUMBER), the count will be exact. Otherwise, if the DB_FAST_STAT flag is specified the count will be exact but will include deleted and implicitly created records; if the DB_FAST_STAT flag is not specified, the count will be exact and will not include deleted or implicitly created records. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• u_int32_t bt_over_pg;

Number of database overflow pages.

• uintmax_t bt_over_pgfree;

Number of bytes free in database overflow pages.

• u_int32_t bt_pagecnt;

The number of pages in the database. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• u_int32_t bt_pagesize;

The underlying database page size, in bytes. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• u_int32_t bt_re_len;

The length of fixed-length records. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• u_int32_t bt_re_pad;

The padding byte value for fixed-length records. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• u_int32_t bt_version;

The version of the Btree database. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

**Queue Statistics**

In the case of a Queue database, the statistics are stored in a structure of type DB_QUEUE_STAT. The following fields will be filled in:

• u_int32_t qs_cur_recno;

Next available record number. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• u_int32_t qs_extentsize;
Underlying database extent size, in pages. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• `u_int32_t qs_first_recno;`
  First undeleted record in the database. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• `u_int32_t qs_magic;`
  Magic number that identifies the file as a Queue file. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• `u_int32_t qs_metaflags;`
  Reports internal flags. For internal use only.

• `u_int32_t qs_nkeys;`
  The number of records in the database. If DB_FAST_STAT was specified the count will be the last saved value unless it has never been calculated, in which case it will be 0. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• `u_int32_t qsndata;`
  The number of records in the database. If DB_FAST_STAT was specified the count will be the last saved value unless it has never been calculated, in which case it will be 0. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• `u_int32_t qs_pages;`
  Number of pages in the database.

• `u_int32_t qs_pagesize;`
  Underlying database page size, in bytes. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• `u_int32_t qs_pgfree;`
  Number of bytes free in database pages.

• `u_int32_t qs_re_len;`
  The length of the records. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• `u_int32_t qs_re_pad;`
  The padding byte value for the records. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

• `u_int32_t qs_version;`
  The version of the Queue file type. Returned if DB_FAST_STAT is set.

**Errors**

The `DB->stat()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:
DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD

When a client synchronizes with the master, it is possible for committed transactions to be rolled back. This invalidates all the database and cursor handles opened in the replication environment. Once this occurs, an attempt to use such a handle will return DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD. The application will need to discard the handle and open a new one in order to continue processing.

DB_REP_LOCKOUT

The operation was blocked by client/master synchronization.

EINVAL

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
**DB->stat_print()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->stat_print(DB *db, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB->stat_print()` method displays the database statistical information, as described for the `DB->stat()` (page 150) method. The information is printed to a specified output channel (see the `DB_ENV->set_msgfile()` (page 326) method for more information), or passed to an application callback function (see the `DB_ENV->set_msgcall()` (page 324) method for more information).

The `DB->stat_print()` method may not be called before the `DB->open()` (page 74) method is called.

The `DB->stat_print()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

For Berkeley DB SQL table or index statistics, see Command Line Features Unique to `dbsql` (page 733).

**Parameters**

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

- **DB_FAST_STAT**

  Return only the values which do not require traversal of the database. Among other things, this flag makes it possible for applications to request key and record counts without incurring the performance penalty of traversing the entire database.

- **DB_STAT_ALL**

  Display all available information.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB->sync()  

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB->sync(DB *db, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB->sync()` method flushes any cached information to disk. This method operates on the database file level, so if the file contains multiple database handles then this method will flush to disk any information that is cached for any of those handles.

If the database is in memory only, the `DB->sync()` method has no effect and will always succeed.

It is important to understand that flushing cached information to disk only minimizes the window of opportunity for corrupted data. Although unlikely, it is possible for database corruption to happen if a system or application crash occurs while writing data to the database. To ensure that database corruption never occurs, applications must either: use transactions and logging with automatic recovery; use logging and application-specific recovery; or edit a copy of the database, and once all applications using the database have successfully called `DB->close()` (page 13), atomically replace the original database with the updated copy.

When called on a database that has been opened with sliced support, the `DB->sync()` method is automatically called on each supporting slice database.

The `DB->sync()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**flags**

The `flags` parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

### Errors

The `DB->sync()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD**

When a client synchronizes with the master, it is possible for committed transactions to be rolled back. This invalidates all the database and cursor handles opened in the replication environment. Once this occurs, an attempt to use such a handle will return `DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD`. The application will need to discard the handle and open a new one in order to continue processing.

**DB_REP_LOCKOUT**

The operation was blocked by client/master synchronization.

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.
Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
The `DB->truncate()` method empties the database, discarding all records it contains. The number of records discarded from the database is returned in `countp`.

When called on a database configured with secondary indices using the `DB->associate()` (page 6) method, the `DB->truncate()` method truncates the primary database and all secondary indices. A count of the records discarded from the primary database is returned.

It is an error to call the `DB->truncate()` method on a database with open cursors.

The `DB->truncate()` method is non-atomic when used on a sliced database. If the operation fails, it is possible for the resulting database files to be in an inconsistent state.

The `DB->truncate()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**txnid**

If the operation is part of an application-specified transaction, the `txnid` parameter is a transaction handle returned from `DB_ENV->txn_begin()` (page 648); if the operation is part of a Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store group, the `txnid` parameter is a handle returned from `DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin()` (page 640); otherwise NULL. If no transaction handle is specified, but the operation occurs in a transactional database, the operation will be implicitly transaction protected.

**countp**

The `countp` parameter references memory into which the number of records discarded from the database is copied.

**flags**

The `flags` parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

**Errors**

The `DB->truncate()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**

A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.

**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**

A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.
You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See `DB->set_lk_exclusive()` (page 126) for more information.

**EINVAL**

If there are open cursors in the database; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
The DB->upgrade() method upgrades all of the databases included in the file file, if necessary. If no upgrade is necessary, DB->upgrade() always returns success.

Database upgrades are done in place and are destructive. For example, if pages need to be allocated and no disk space is available, the database may be left corrupted. Backups should be made before databases are upgraded. See Upgrading databases for more information.

Unlike all other database operations, DB->upgrade() may only be done on a system with the same byte-order as the database.

The DB->upgrade() method is non-atomic when used on a sliced database. If the operation fails, it is possible for the underlying database files to be in an inconsistent state.

The DB->upgrade() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

The DB->upgrade() method is the underlying method used by the db_upgrade utility. See the db_upgrade utility source code for an example of using DB->upgrade() in a IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) environment.

Parameters

file

The file parameter is the physical file containing the databases to be upgraded.

flags

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

- DB_DUPSORT

  This flag is only meaningful when upgrading databases from releases before the Berkeley DB 3.1 release.

  As part of the upgrade from the Berkeley DB 3.0 release to the 3.1 release, the on-disk format of duplicate data items changed. To correctly upgrade the format requires applications to specify whether duplicate data items in the database are sorted or not. Specifying the DB_DUPSORT flag informs DB->upgrade() that the duplicates are sorted; otherwise they are assumed to be unsorted. Incorrectly specifying the value of this flag may lead to database corruption.

  Further, because the DB->upgrade() method upgrades a physical file (including all the databases it contains), it is not possible to use DB->upgrade() to upgrade files in which
some of the databases it includes have sorted duplicate data items, and some of the
databases it includes have unsorted duplicate data items. If the file does not have more
than a single database, if the databases do not support duplicate data items, or if all of the
databases that support duplicate data items support the same style of duplicates (either
sorted or unsorted), DB->upgrade() will work correctly as long as the DB_DUPSORT flag is
correctly specified. Otherwise, the file cannot be upgraded using DB->upgrade(); it must
be upgraded manually by dumping and reloading the databases.

Environment Variables

If the database was opened within a database environment, the environment variable DB_HOME
may be used as the path of the database environment home.

DB->upgrade() is affected by any database directory specified using the DB_ENV-
>add_data_dir() (page 216) method, or by setting the “add_data_dir” string in the
environment’s DB_CONFIG file.

Errors

The DB->upgrade() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_OLD_VERSION**

The database cannot be upgraded by this version of the Berkeley DB software.

Class

DB

See Also

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
The `DB->verify()` method verifies the integrity of all databases in the file specified by the `file` parameter, and optionally outputs the databases' key/data pairs to the file stream specified by the `outfile` parameter.

The `DB->verify()` method does not perform any locking, even in Berkeley DB environments that are configured with a locking subsystem. As such, it should only be used on files that are not being modified by another thread of control.

The `DB->verify()` method may not be called after the `DB->open()` (page 74) method is called.

The `DB` handle may not be accessed again after `DB->verify()` is called, regardless of its return.

The `DB->verify()` method is the underlying method used by the `db_verify` utility. See the `db_verify` utility source code for an example of using `DB->verify()` in a IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) environment.

The `DB->verify()` method will return `DB_VERIFY_BAD` if a database is corrupted. When the `DB_SALVAGE` flag is specified, the `DB_VERIFY_BAD` return means that all key/data pairs in the file may not have been successfully output. Unless otherwise specified, the `DB->verify()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

When called on a database that has been opened with sliced support, the `DB->verify()` method is automatically called on each supporting slice database.

**Parameters**

**file**

The `file` parameter is the physical file in which the databases to be verified are found.

**database**

The `database` parameter is the database in `file` on which the database checks for btree and duplicate sort order and for hashing are to be performed. See the `DB_ORDERCHKONLY` flag for more information.

The database parameter must be set to NULL except when the `DB_ORDERCHKONLY` flag is set.

**outfile**

The `outfile` parameter is an optional file stream to which the databases' key/data pairs are written.

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->verify(DB *db, const char *file,
    const char *database, FILE *outfile, u_int32_t flags);
```
flags

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

- **DB_SALVAGE**

  Write the key/data pairs from all databases in the file to the file stream named in the outfile parameter. Key values are written for Btree, Hash and Queue databases, but not for Recno databases.

  The output format is the same as that specified for the db_dump utility, and can be used as input for the db_load utility.

  Because the key/data pairs are output in page order as opposed to the sort order used by db_dump, using DB->verify() to dump key/data pairs normally produces less than optimal loads for Btree databases.

  In addition, the following flags may be set by bitwise inclusively OR'ing them into the flags parameter:

  - **DB_AGGRESSIVE**

    Output all the key/data pairs in the file that can be found. By default, DB->verify() does not assume corruption. For example, if a key/data pair on a page is marked as deleted, it is not then written to the output file. When DB_AGGRESSIVE is specified, corruption is assumed, and any key/data pair that can be found is written. In this case, key/data pairs that are corrupted or have been deleted may appear in the output (even if the file being salvaged is in no way corrupt), and the output will almost certainly require editing before being loaded into a database.

  - **DB_PRINTABLE**

    When using the DB_SALVAGE flag, if characters in either the key or data items are printing characters (as defined by isprint(3)), use printing characters to represent them. This flag permits users to use standard text editors and tools to modify the contents of databases or selectively remove data from salvager output.

    Note: different systems may have different notions about what characters are considered printing characters, and databases dumped in this manner may be less portable to external systems.

  - **DB_NOORDERCHK**

    Skip the database checks for btree and duplicate sort order and for hashing.

    The DB->verify() method normally verifies that btree keys and duplicate items are correctly sorted, and hash keys are correctly hashed. If the file being verified contains multiple databases using differing sorting or hashing algorithms, some of them must necessarily fail database verification because only one sort order or hash function can be specified before DB->verify() is called. To verify files with multiple databases having differing sorting orders or hashing functions, first perform verification of the file as a whole.
by using the DB_NOORDERCHK flag, and then individually verify the sort order and hashing function for each database in the file using the DB_ORDERCHKONLY flag.

- **DB_ORDERCHKONLY**

  Perform the database checks for btree and duplicate sort order and for hashing, skipped by DB_NOORDERCHK.

  When this flag is specified, a database parameter should also be specified, indicating the database in the physical file which is to be checked. This flag is only safe to use on databases that have already successfully been verified using DB->verify() with the DB_NOORDERCHK flag set.

**Environment Variables**

If the database was opened within a database environment, the environment variable DB_HOME may be used as the path of the database environment home.

DB->verify() is affected by any database directory specified using the DB_ENV->add_data_dir() (page 216) method, or by setting the "add_data_dir" string in the environment's DB_CONFIG file.

**Errors**

The DB->verify() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  If the method was called after DB->open() (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

- **ENOENT**

  The file or directory does not exist.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
DB_HEAP_RID

```c
#include <db.h>

struct __db_heap_rid {
    db_pgno_t pgno;         /* Page number. */
    db_indx_t indx;         /* Index in the offset table. */
};
```

Content used for the key in a Heap database record. Berkeley DB creates this structure for you when you create a record in a Heap database. You should never create this structure or modify the contents of this structure yourself; Berkeley DB must create and manage it for you.

This structure is returned in the key DBT parameter of the method that you use to add a record to the Heap database.

**Parameters**

**pgno**

The database page number where the record is stored.

**indx**

Index in the offset table where the record can be found.

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3),
Chapter 3. The DBcursor Handle

A DBcursor object is a handle for a cursor into a Berkeley DB database.

DBcursor handles are not free-threaded. Cursor handles may be shared by multiple threads if access is serialized by the application.

You create a DBcursor using the \texttt{DB->cursor()} (page 171) method.

If the cursor is to be used to perform operations on behalf of a transaction, the cursor must be opened and closed within the context of that single transaction.

Once \texttt{DBcursor->close()} (page 173) has been called, the handle may not be accessed again, regardless of the method's return.
## Database Cursors and Related Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Database Cursors and Related Methods</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;cursor()</td>
<td>Create a cursor handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBcursor-&gt;close()</td>
<td>Close a cursor handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBcursor-&gt;cmp()</td>
<td>Compare two cursors for equality.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBcursor-&gt;count()</td>
<td>Return count of duplicates for current key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBcursor-&gt;del()</td>
<td>Delete current key/data pair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBcursor-&gt;dup()</td>
<td>Duplicate the cursor handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBcursor-&gt;get()</td>
<td>Retrieve by cursor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBcursor-&gt;put()</td>
<td>Store by cursor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBcursor-&gt;set_priority(), DBcursor-&gt;get_priority()</td>
<td>Set/get the cursor's cache priority</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DB->cursor()

```
#include <db.h>

int DB->cursor(DB *db, DB_TXN *txnid, DBC **cursorp, u_int32_t flags);
```

The DB->cursor() method returns a created database cursor.

Cursors may span threads, but only serially, that is, the application must serialize access to the cursor handle.

The DB->cursor() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**txnid**

To transaction-protect cursor operations, cursors must be opened and closed within the context of a transaction. The `txnid` parameter specifies the transaction context in which the cursor may be used.

Cursor operations are not automatically transaction-protected, even if the `DB_AUTO_COMMIT` flag is specified to the `DB_ENV->set_flags()` (page 308) or `DB->open()` (page 74) methods. If cursor operations are to be transaction-protected, the `txnid` parameter must be a transaction handle returned from `DB_ENV->txn_begin()` (page 648); otherwise, NULL.

**cursorp**

The `cursorp` parameter references memory into which a pointer to the allocated cursor is copied.

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

- **DB_CURSOR_BULK**
  
  Configure a cursor to optimize for bulk operations. Each successive operation on a cursor configured with this flag attempts to continue on the same database page as the previous operation, falling back to a search if a different page is required. This avoids searching if there is a high degree of locality between cursor operations. This flag is currently only effective with the btree access method. For other access methods, this flag is ignored.

- **DB_READ_COMMITTED**
  
  Configure a transactional cursor to have degree 2 isolation. This ensures the stability of the current data item read by this cursor but permits data read by this cursor to be modified or deleted prior to the commit of the transaction for this cursor.

- **DB_READ_UNCOMMITTED**
Configure a transactional cursor to have degree 1 isolation. Read operations performed by the cursor may return modified but not yet committed data. Silently ignored if the DB_READ_UNCOMMITTED flag was not specified when the underlying database was opened.

- **DB_WRITECURSOR**

  Specify that the cursor will be used to update the database. The underlying database environment must have been opened using the DB_INIT_CDB flag.

- **DB_TXN_SNAPSHOT**

  Configure a transactional cursor to operate with read-only snapshot isolation. For databases with the DB_MULTIVERSION flag set, data values will be read as they are when the cursor is opened, without taking read locks.

  This flag implicitly begins a transaction that is committed when the cursor is closed.

  This flag is silently ignored if DB_MULTIVERSION is not set on the underlying database or if a transaction is supplied in the `txnid` parameter. Snapshot isolation is not supported with replication.

**Errors**

The `DB->cursor()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD**

  When a client synchronizes with the master, it is possible for committed transactions to be rolled back. This invalidates all the database and cursor handles opened in the replication environment. Once this occurs, an attempt to use such a handle will return DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD. The application will need to discard the handle and open a new one in order to continue processing.

- **DB_REP_LOCKOUT**

  The operation was blocked by client/master synchronization.

- **EINVAL**

  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database Cursors and Related Methods (page 170)
### DBcursor->close()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DBcursor->close(DBC *DBcursor);
```

The `DBcursor->close()` method discards the cursor.

It is possible for the `DBcursor->close()` method to return `DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK`, signaling that any enclosing transaction should be aborted. If the application is already intending to abort the transaction, this error should be ignored, and the application should proceed.

After the `DBcursor->close()` method has been called, regardless of its return value, you cannot use the cursor handle again.

It is not required to close the cursor explicitly before closing the database handle or the transaction handle that owns this cursor because, closing a database handle or a transaction handle closes those open cursors.

However, it is recommended that you always close all cursor handles immediately after their use to promote concurrency and to release resources such as page locks.

The `DBcursor->close()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

#### Errors

The `DBcursor->close()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**

A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.

**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**

A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.

You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See `DB->set_lk-exclusive()` (page 126) for more information.

**EINVAL**

If the cursor is already closed; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

#### Class

`DBcursor`

#### See Also

`Database Cursors and Related Methods` (page 170)
DBcursor->cmp()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DBcursor->cmp(DBC *DBcursor,
              DBC *other_cursor, int *result, u_int32_t flags);
```

The DBcursor->cmp() method compares two cursors for equality. Two cursors are equal if and only if they are positioned on the same item in the same database.

The DBcursor->cmp() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

**other_cursor**

The other_cursor parameter references another cursor handle that will be used as the comparator.

**result**

If the call is successful and both cursors are positioned on the same item, result is set to zero. If the call is successful but the cursors are not positioned on the same item, result is set to a non-zero value. If the call is unsuccessful, the value of result should be ignored.

**flags**

The flags parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

Errors

The DBcursor->cmp() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

- If either of the cursors are already closed.
- If the cursors have been opened against different databases.
- If either of the cursors have not been positioned.
- If the other_dbc parameter is NULL.
- If the result parameter is NULL.

Class

DBcursor

See Also

Database Cursors and Related Methods (page 170)
The DBcursor->count() method returns a count of the number of data items for the key to which the cursor refers.

Parameters

- **countp**
  
  The `countp` parameter references memory into which the count of the number of duplicate data items is copied.

- **flags**
  
  The `flags` parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

Errors

The DBcursor->count() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD**
  
  When a client synchronizes with the master, it is possible for committed transactions to be rolled back. This invalidates all the database and cursor handles opened in the replication environment. Once this occurs, an attempt to use such a handle will return **DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD**. The application will need to discard the handle and open a new one in order to continue processing.

- **DB_REP_LOCKOUT**
  
  The operation was blocked by client/master synchronization.

- **EINVAL**
  
  If the cursor has not been initialized; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DBcursor

See Also

Database Cursors and Related Methods (page 170)
DBcursor->del()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DBcursor->del(DBC *DBcursor, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DBcursor->del()` method deletes the key/data pair to which the cursor refers.

When called on a cursor opened on a database that has been made into a secondary index using the `DB->associate()` method, the `DB->del()` method deletes the key/data pair from the primary database and all secondary indices.

The cursor position is unchanged after a delete, and subsequent calls to cursor functions expecting the cursor to refer to an existing key will fail.

The `DBcursor->del()` method will return `DB_KEYEMPTY` if the element has already been deleted. The `DBcursor->del()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or one of the following values:

- `DB_CONSUME`

  If the database is of type `DB_QUEUE` then this flag may be set to force the head of the queue to move to the first non-deleted item in the queue. Normally this is only done if the deleted item is exactly at the head when deleted.

**Errors**

The `DBcursor->del()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_FOREIGN_CONFLICT**

A foreign key constraint violation has occurred. This can be caused by one of two things:

1. An attempt was made to add a record to a constrained database, and the key used for that record does not exist in the foreign key database.

2. `DB_FOREIGN_ABORT` was declared for a foreign key database, and then subsequently a record was deleted from the foreign key database without first removing it from the constrained secondary database.

**DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**

A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.
**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**

A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.

You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See `DB->set_lk_exclusive()` (page 126) for more information.

**DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD**

When a client synchronizes with the master, it is possible for committed transactions to be rolled back. This invalidates all the database and cursor handles opened in the replication environment. Once this occurs, an attempt to use such a handle will return `DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD`. The application will need to discard the handle and open a new one in order to continue processing.

**DB_REP_LOCKOUT**

The operation was blocked by client/master synchronization.

**DB_SECONDARY_BAD**

A secondary index references a nonexistent primary key.

**EACCES**

An attempt was made to modify a read-only database.

**EINVAL**

If the cursor has not been initialized; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**EPERM**

Write attempt on read-only cursor when the `DB_INIT_CDB` flag was specified to `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271).

**Class**

`DBcursor`

**See Also**

*Database Cursors and Related Methods* (page 170)
The DBcursor->dup() method creates a new cursor that uses the same transaction and locker ID as the original cursor. This is useful when an application is using locking and requires two or more cursors in the same thread of control.

The DBcursor->dup() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

*cursorp*

The DBcursor->dup() method returns the newly created cursor in `cursorp`.

*flags*

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or the following flag:

- **DB_POSITION**

  The newly created cursor is initialized to refer to the same position in the database as the original cursor (if any) and hold the same locks (if any). If the DB POSITION flag is not specified, or the original cursor does not hold a database position and locks, the created cursor is uninitialized and will behave like a cursor newly created using the DB-cursor() (page 171) method.

**Errors**

The DBcursor->dup() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD**

When a client synchronizes with the master, it is possible for committed transactions to be rolled back. This invalidates all the database and cursor handles opened in the replication environment. Once this occurs, an attempt to use such a handle will return DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD. The application will need to discard the handle and open a new one in order to continue processing.

**DB_REP_LOCKOUT**

The operation was blocked by client/master synchronization.

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DBcursor->dup(DBC *DBcursor, DBC **cursorp, u_int32_t flags);
```
Class

DBcursor

See Also

Database Cursors and Related Methods (page 170)
`DBcursor->get()` method retrieves key/data pairs from the database. The address and length of the key are returned in the object to which `key` refers (except for the case of the `DB_SET` flag, in which the `key` object is unchanged), and the address and length of the data are returned in the object to which `data` refers.

When called on a cursor opened on a database that has been made into a secondary index using the `DB->associate()` method, the `DBcursor->get()` and `DBcursor->pget()` methods return the key from the secondary index and the data item from the primary database. In addition, the `DBcursor->pget()` method returns the key from the primary database. In databases that are not secondary indices, the `DBcursor->pget()` method will always fail.

Modifications to the database during a sequential scan will be reflected in the scan; that is, records inserted behind a cursor will not be returned while records inserted in front of a cursor will be returned.

In Queue and Recno databases, missing entries (that is, entries that were never explicitly created or that were created and then deleted) will be skipped during a sequential scan.

Unless otherwise specified, the `DBcursor->get()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

If `DBcursor->get()` fails for any reason, the state of the cursor will be unchanged.

### Parameters

**key**

The key `DBT` operated on.

If `DB_DBT_PARTIAL` is set for the `DBT` used for this parameter, and if the `flags` parameter is set to `DB_GET_BOTH`, `DB_GET_BOTH_RANGE`, `DB_SET`, or `DB_SET_RECNO`, then this method will fail and return `EINVAL`.

**pkey**

The return key from the primary database. If `DB_DBT_PARTIAL` is set for the `DBT` used for this parameter, then this method will fail and return `EINVAL`.

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DBcursor->get(DBC *DBcursor,
               DBT *key, DBT *data, u_int32_t flags);

int
DBcursor->pget(DBC *DBcursor,
               DBT *key, DBT *pkey, DBT *data, u_int32_t flags);
```
The data DBT operated on.

flags

The flags parameter must be set to one of the following values:

- **DB_CURRENT**

  Return the key/data pair to which the cursor refers.

  The `DBcursor->get()` method will return DB_KEYEMPTY if DB_CURRENT is set and the cursor key/data pair was deleted.

- **DB_FIRST**

  The cursor is set to refer to the first key/data pair of the database, and that pair is returned. If the first key has duplicate values, the first data item in the set of duplicates is returned.

  If the database is a Queue or Recno database, `DBcursor->get()` using the DB_FIRST flag will ignore any keys that exist but were never explicitly created by the application, or were created and later deleted.

  The `DBcursor->get()` method will return DB_NOTFOUND if DB_FIRST is set and the database is empty.

- **DB_GET_BOTH**

  Move the cursor to the specified key/data pair of the database. The cursor is positioned to a key/data pair if both the key and data match the values provided on the key and data parameters.

  In all other ways, this flag is identical to the DB_SET flag.

  When used with `DBcursor->pget()` on a secondary index handle, both the secondary and primary keys must be matched by the secondary and primary key item in the database. It is an error to use the DB_GET_BOTH flag with the `DBcursor->get()` version of this method and a cursor that has been opened on a secondary index handle.

- **DB_GET_BOTH_RANGE**

  Move the cursor to the specified key/data pair of the database. The key parameter must be an exact match with a key in the database. The data item retrieved is the item in a duplicate set that is the smallest value which is greater than or equal to the value provided by the data parameter (as determined by the comparison function). If this flag is specified on a database configured without sorted duplicate support, the behavior is identical to the DB_GET_BOTH flag. Returns the datum associated with the given key/data pair.

  In all other ways, this flag is identical to the DB_GET_BOTH flag.
• **DB_GET_RECNO**

  Return the record number associated with the cursor. The record number will be returned in `data`, as described in `DBT`. The `key` parameter is ignored.

  For `DB_GET_RECNO` to be specified, the underlying database must be of type Btree, and it must have been created with the `DB_RECNUM` flag.

  When called on a cursor opened on a database that has been made into a secondary index, the `DBcursor->get()` and `DBcursor->pget()` methods return the record number of the primary database in `data`. In addition, the `DBcursor->pget()` method returns the record number of the secondary index in `pkey`. If either underlying database is not of type Btree or is not created with the `DB_RECNUM` flag, the out-of-band record number of 0 is returned.

• **DB_JOIN_ITEM**

  Do not use the data value found in all of the cursors as a lookup key for the primary database, but simply return it in the key parameter instead. The data parameter is left unchanged.

  For `DB_JOIN_ITEM` to be specified, the underlying cursor must have been returned from the `DB->join()` (page 67) method.

  This flag is not supported for Heap databases.

• **DB_LAST**

  The cursor is set to refer to the last key/data pair of the database, and that pair is returned. If the last key has duplicate values, the last data item in the set of duplicates is returned.

  If the database is a Queue or Recno database, `DBcursor->get()` using the `DB_LAST` flag will ignore any keys that exist but were never explicitly created by the application, or were created and later deleted.

  The `DBcursor->get()` method will return `DB_NOTFOUND` if `DB_LAST` is set and the database is empty.

• **DB_NEXT**

  If the cursor is not yet initialized, `DB_NEXT` is identical to `DB_FIRST`. Otherwise, the cursor is moved to the next key/data pair of the database, and that pair is returned. In the presence of duplicate key values, the value of the key may not change.

  If the database is a Queue or Recno database, `DBcursor->get()` using the `DB_NEXT` flag will skip any keys that exist but were never explicitly created by the application, or those that were created and later deleted.

  The `DBcursor->get()` method will return `DB_NOTFOUND` if `DB_NEXT` is set and the cursor is already on the last record in the database.

• **DB_NEXT_DUP**
If the next key/data pair of the database is a duplicate data record for the current key/data pair, the cursor is moved to the next key/data pair of the database, and that pair is returned.

The DBcursor->get() method will return DB_NOTFOUND if DB_NEXT_DUP is set and the next key/data pair of the database is not a duplicate data record for the current key/data pair.

If using a Heap database, this flag results in this method returning DB_NOTFOUND.

• DB_NEXT_NODUP

If the cursor is not yet initialized, DB_NEXT_NODUP is identical to DB_FIRST. Otherwise, the cursor is moved to the next non-duplicate key of the database, and that key/data pair is returned.

If the database is a Queue or Recno database, DBcursor->get() using the DB_NEXT_NODUP flag will ignore any keys that exist but were never explicitly created by the application, or those that were created and later deleted.

The DBcursor->get() method will return DB_NOTFOUND if DB_NEXT_NODUP is set and no non-duplicate key/data pairs exist after the cursor position in the database.

If using a Heap database, this flag is identical to the DB_NEXT flag.

• DB_PREV

If the cursor is not yet initialized, DB_PREV is identical to DB_LAST. Otherwise, the cursor is moved to the previous key/data pair of the database, and that pair is returned. In the presence of duplicate key values, the value of the key may not change.

If the database is a Queue or Recno database, DBcursor->get() using the DB_PREV flag will skip any keys that exist but were never explicitly created by the application, or those that were created and later deleted.

The DBcursor->get() method will return DB_NOTFOUND if DB_PREV is set and the cursor is already on the first record in the database.

• DB_PREV_DUP

If the previous key/data pair of the database is a duplicate data record for the current key/data pair, the cursor is moved to the previous key/data pair of the database, and that pair is returned.

The DBcursor->get() method will return DB_NOTFOUND if DB_PREV_DUP is set and the previous key/data pair of the database is not a duplicate data record for the current key/data pair.

If using a Heap database, this flag results in this method returning DB_NOTFOUND.

• DB_PREV_NODUP
If the cursor is not yet initialized, DB_PREV_NODUP is identical to DB_LAST. Otherwise, the
cursor is moved to the previous non-duplicate key of the database, and that key/data pair is
returned.

If the database is a Queue or Recno database, DBcursor->get() using the DB_PREV_NODUP
flag will ignore any keys that exist but were never explicitly created by the application, or
those that were created and later deleted.

The DBcursor->get() method will return DB_NOTFOUND if DB_PREV_NODUP is set and no
non-duplicate key/data pairs exist before the cursor position in the database.

If using a Heap database, this flag is identical to the DB_PREV flag.

- **DB_SET**

  Move the cursor to the specified key/data pair of the database, and return the datum
  associated with the given key.

  The DBcursor->get() method will return DB_NOTFOUND if DB_SET is set and no matching
  keys are found. The DBcursor->get() method will return DB_KEYEMPTY if DB_SET is set
  and the database is a Queue or Recno database, and the specified key exists, but was never
  explicitly created by the application or was later deleted. In the presence of duplicate key
  values, DBcursor->get() will return the first data item for the given key.

- **DB_SET_RANGE**

  Move the cursor to the specified key/data pair of the database. In the case of the Btree
  access method, the key is returned as well as the data item and the returned key/data pair
  is the smallest key greater than or equal to the specified key (as determined by the Btree
  comparison function), permitting partial key matches and range searches.

  In all other ways the behavior of this flag is the same as the DB_SET flag.

- **DB_SET_RECNO**

  Move the cursor to the specific numbered record of the database, and return the associated
  key/data pair. The data field of the specified key must be a pointer to a memory location
  from which a db_recno_t may be read, as described in DBT. This memory location will be
  read to determine the record to be retrieved.

  For DB_SET_RECNO to be specified, the underlying database must be of type Btree, and it
  must have been created with the DB_RECNUM flag.

  In addition, the following flags may be set by bitwise inclusively OR'ing them into the flags
  parameter:

  - **DB_IGNORE_LEASE**

    This flag is relevant only when using a replicated environment.
Return the data item irrespective of the state of master leases. The item will be returned under all conditions: if master leases are not configured, if the request is made to a client, if the request is made to a master with a valid lease, or if the request is made to a master without a valid lease.

- **DB_READ_COMMITTED**

  Configure a transactional get operation to have degree 2 isolation (the read is not repeatable).

- **DB_READ_UNCOMMITTED**

  Database items read during a transactional call will have degree 1 isolation, including modified but not yet committed data. Silently ignored if the `DB_READ_UNCOMMITTED` flag was not specified when the underlying database was opened.

- **DB_MULTIPLE**

  Return multiple data items in the `data` parameter.

  In the case of Btree or Hash databases, duplicate data items for the current key, starting at the current cursor position, are entered into the buffer. Subsequent calls with both the DB_NEXT_DUP and DB_MULTIPLE flags specified will return additional duplicate data items associated with the current key or DB_NOTFOUND if there are no additional duplicate data items to return. Subsequent calls with both the DB_NEXT and DB_MULTIPLE flags specified will return additional duplicate data items associated with the current key or if there are no additional duplicate data items will return the next key and its data items or DB_NOTFOUND if there are no additional keys in the database.

  In the case of Queue, Recno, or Heap databases, data items starting at the current cursor position are entered into the buffer. The record number (or the RID, in the case of Heap) of the first record will be returned in the `key` parameter. For Queue and Recno, the record number of each subsequent returned record must be calculated from this value. For Heap databases, the RID of subsequent returned records cannot be known. Subsequent calls with the DB_MULTIPLE flag specified will return additional data items or DB_NOTFOUND if there are no additional data items to return.

  The buffer to which the `data` parameter refers must be provided from user memory (see `DB_DBT_USERMEM`). The buffer must be at least as large as the page size of the underlying database, aligned for unsigned integer access, and be a multiple of 1024 bytes in size. If the buffer size is insufficient, then upon return from the call the size field of the `data` parameter will have been set to an estimated buffer size, and the error DB_BUFFER_SMALL is returned. (The size is an estimate as the exact size needed may not be known until all entries are read. It is best to initially provide a relatively large buffer, but applications should be prepared to resize the buffer as necessary and repeatedly call the method.)

  The multiple data items can be iterated over using the `DB_MULTIPLE_NEXT` (page 200) macro.
The `DB_MULTIPLE` flag may only be used with the `DB_CURRENT`, `DB_FIRST`, `DB_GET_BOTH`, `DB_GET_BOTH_RANGE`, `DB_NEXT`, `DB_NEXT_DUP`, `DB_NEXT_NODUP`, `DB_SET`, `DB_SET_RANGE`, and `DB_SET_RECNO` options. The `DB_MULTIPLE` flag may not be used when accessing databases made into secondary indices using the `DB->associate()` (page 6) method.

- **DB_MULTIPLE_KEY**

Return multiple key and data pairs in the `data` parameter.

Key and data pairs, starting at the current cursor position, are entered into the buffer. Subsequent calls with both the `DB_NEXT` and `DB_MULTIPLE_KEY` flags specified will return additional key and data pairs or `DB_NOTFOUND` if there are no additional key and data items to return.

In the case of Btree, Hash or Heap databases, the multiple key and data pairs can be iterated over using the `DB_MULTIPLE_KEY_NEXT` (page 201) macro.

In the case of Queue or Recno databases, the multiple record number and data pairs can be iterated over using the `DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_NEXT` (page 203) macro.

The buffer to which the `data` parameter refers must be provided from user memory (see `DB_DBT_USERMEM`). The buffer must be at least as large as the page size of the underlying database, aligned for unsigned integer access, and be a multiple of 1024 bytes in size. If the buffer size is insufficient, then upon return from the call the size field of the `data` parameter will have been set to an estimated buffer size, and the error `DB_BUFFER_SMALL` is returned. (The size is an estimate as the exact size needed may not be known until all entries are read. It is best to initially provide a relatively large buffer, but applications should be prepared to resize the buffer as necessary and repeatedly call the method.)

The `DB_MULTIPLE_KEY` flag may only be used with the `DB_CURRENT`, `DB_FIRST`, `DB_GET_BOTH`, `DB_GET_BOTH_RANGE`, `DB_NEXT`, `DB_NEXT_DUP`, `DB_NEXT_NODUP`, `DB_SET`, `DB_SET_RANGE`, and `DB_SET_RECNO` options. The `DB_MULTIPLE_KEY` flag may not be used when accessing databases made into secondary indices using the `DB->associate()` (page 6) method.

- **DB_RMW**

Acquire write locks instead of read locks when doing the read, if locking is configured. Setting this flag can eliminate deadlock during a read-modify-write cycle by acquiring the write lock during the read part of the cycle so that another thread of control acquiring a read lock for the same item, in its own read-modify-write cycle, will not result in deadlock.

**Errors**

The `DBcursor->get()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **DB_BUFFER_SMALL**

The requested item could not be returned due to undersized buffer.
**DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**

A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.

**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**

A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.

You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See `DB->set_lk_exclusive()` (page 126) for more information.

**DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD**

When a client synchronizes with the master, it is possible for committed transactions to be rolled back. This invalidates all the database and cursor handles opened in the replication environment. Once this occurs, an attempt to use such a handle will return `DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD`. The application will need to discard the handle and open a new one in order to continue processing.

**DB_REP_LEASE_EXPIRED**

The operation failed because the site's replication master lease has expired.

**DB_REP_LOCKOUT**

The operation was blocked by client/master synchronization.

**DB_SECONDARY_BAD**

A secondary index references a nonexistent primary key.

**EINVAL**

If the `DB_CURRENT`, `DB_NEXT_DUP` or `DB_PREV_DUP` flags were specified and the cursor has not been initialized; the `DBcursor->pget()` method was called with a cursor that does not refer to a secondary index; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DBcursor`

**See Also**

Database Cursors and Related Methods (page 170)
The `DBcursor->get_priority()` method returns the cache priority for pages referenced by the `DBcursor` handle.

The `DBcursor->get_priority()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DBcursor->get_priority()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**priorityp**

The `DBcursor->get_priority()` method returns a reference to the cache priority for pages referenced by the `DBcursor` handle in `priorityp`.

**Class**

`DBcursor`

**See Also**

Database Cursors and Related Methods (page 170)
DBcursor->put()

#include <db.h>

int DBcursor->put(DBC *DBcursor, DBT *key, DBT *data, u_int32_t flags);

The DBcursor->put() method stores key/data pairs into the database.

Unless otherwise specified, the DBcursor->put() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

If DBcursor->put() fails for any reason, the state of the cursor will be unchanged. If DBcursor->put() succeeds and an item is inserted into the database, the cursor is always positioned to refer to the newly inserted item.

Parameters

key
The key DBT operated on.

If creating a new record in a Heap database, the key DBT must be empty. The put method will return the new record's Record ID (RID) in the key DBT.

data
The data DBT operated on.

flags
The flags parameter must be set to one of the following values:

• DB_AFTER

In the case of the Btree and Hash access methods, insert the data element as a duplicate element of the key to which the cursor refers. The new element appears immediately after the current cursor position. It is an error to specify DB_AFTER if the underlying Btree or Hash database is not configured for unsorted duplicate data items. The key parameter is ignored.

In the case of the Recno access method, it is an error to specify DB_AFTER if the underlying Recno database was not created with the DB_RENUMBER flag. If the DB_RENUMBER flag was specified, a new key is created, all records after the inserted item are automatically renumbered, and the key of the new record is returned in the structure to which the key parameter refers. The initial value of the key parameter is ignored. See DB->open() (page 74) for more information.

The DB_AFTER flag may not be specified to the Queue access method.

The DBcursor->put() method will return DB_NOTFOUND if the current cursor record has already been deleted and the underlying access method is Hash.

• DB_BEFORE
In the case of the Btree and Hash access methods, insert the data element as a duplicate element of the key to which the cursor refers. The new element appears immediately before the current cursor position. It is an error to specify DB_AFTER if the underlying Btree or Hash database is not configured for unsorted duplicate data items. The **key** parameter is ignored.

In the case of the Recno access method, it is an error to specify DB_BEFORE if the underlying Recno database was not created with the DB_RENUMBER flag. If the DB_RENUMBER flag was specified, a new key is created, the current record and all records after it are automatically renumbered, and the key of the new record is returned in the structure to which the **key** parameter refers. The initial value of the **key** parameter is ignored. See DB->open() (page 74) for more information.

The DB_BEFORE flag may not be specified to the Queue access method.

The DBcursor->put() method will return DB_NOTFOUND if the current cursor record has already been deleted and the underlying access method is Hash.

- **DB_CURRENT**

  Overwrite the data of the key/data pair to which the cursor refers with the specified data item. The **key** parameter is ignored.

  The DBcursor->put() method will return DB_NOTFOUND if the current cursor record has already been deleted.

- **DB_KEYFIRST**

  Insert the specified key/data pair into the database.

  If the underlying database supports duplicate data items, and if the key already exists in the database and a duplicate sort function has been specified, the inserted data item is added in its sorted location. If the key already exists in the database and no duplicate sort function has been specified, the inserted data item is added as the first of the data items for that key.

- **DB_KEYLAST**

  Insert the specified key/data pair into the database.

  If the underlying database supports duplicate data items, and if the key already exists in the database and a duplicate sort function has been specified, the inserted data item is added in its sorted location. If the key already exists in the database, and no duplicate sort function has been specified, the inserted data item is added as the last of the data items for that key.

- **DB_NODUPDATA**

  In the case of the Btree and Hash access methods, insert the specified key/data pair into the database, unless a key/data pair comparing equally to it already exists in the database.
If a matching key/data pair already exists in the database, `DB_KEYEXIST` (page 191) is returned. The `DB_NODUPDATA` flag may only be specified if the underlying database has been configured to support sorted duplicate data items.

The `DB_NODUPDATA` flag may not be specified to the Queue or Recno access methods.

**Errors**

The `DBcursor->put()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_KEYEXIST**

An attempt was made to insert a duplicate key into a database not configured for duplicate data.

**DB_FOREIGN_CONFLICT**

A foreign key constraint violation has occurred. This can be caused by one of two things:

1. An attempt was made to add a record to a constrained database, and the key used for that record does not exist in the foreign key database.

2. `DB_FOREIGN_ABORT` (page 11) was declared for a foreign key database, and then subsequently a record was deleted from the foreign key database without first removing it from the constrained secondary database.

**DB_HEAP_FULL**

An attempt was made to add or update a record in a Heap database. However, the size of the database was constrained using the `DB->set_heapsize()` (page 123) method, and that limit has been reached.

**DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**

A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.

**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**

A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.

You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See `DB->set_lk_exclusive()` (page 126) for more information.

**DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD**

When a client synchronizes with the master, it is possible for committed transactions to be rolled back. This invalidates all the database and cursor handles opened in the replication environment. Once this occurs, an attempt to use such a handle will return `DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD`. The application will need to discard the handle and open a new one in order to continue processing.
DB_REP_LOCKOUT

The operation was blocked by client/master synchronization.

EACCES

An attempt was made to modify a read-only database.

EINVAL

If the DB_AFTER, DB_BEFORE or DB_CURRENT flags were specified and the cursor has not been initialized; the DB_AFTER or DB_BEFORE flags were specified and a duplicate sort function has been specified; the DB_CURRENT flag was specified, a duplicate sort function has been specified, and the data item of the referenced key/data pair does not compare equally to the data parameter; the DB_AFTER or DB_BEFORE flags were specified, and the underlying access method is Queue; an attempt was made to add a record to a fixed-length database that was too large to fit; an attempt was made to add a record to a secondary index; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

EPERM

Write attempted on read-only cursor when the DB_INIT_CDB flag was specified to DB_ENV->open() (page 271).

Class

DBcursor

See Also

Database Cursors and Related Methods (page 170)
DBcursor->set_priority()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DBcursor->set_priority(DBC *DbCursor, DB_CACHE_PRIORITY priority);
```

Set the cache priority for pages referenced by the DBcursor handle.

The priority of a page biases the replacement algorithm to be more or less likely to discard a page when space is needed in the buffer pool. The bias is temporary, and pages will eventually be discarded if they are not referenced again. The DBcursor->set_priority() method is only advisory, and does not guarantee pages will be treated in a specific way.

The DBcursor->set_priority() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DBcursor->set_priority() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`priority`

The `priority` parameter must be set to one of the following values:

- `DB_PRIORITY_VERY_LOW`
  
  The lowest priority: pages are the most likely to be discarded.

- `DB_PRIORITY_LOW`
  
  The next lowest priority.

- `DB_PRIORITY_DEFAULT`
  
  The default priority.

- `DB_PRIORITY_HIGH`
  
  The next highest priority.

- `DB_PRIORITY_VERY_HIGH`
  
  The highest priority: pages are the least likely to be discarded.

**Class**

DBcursor

**See Also**

Database Cursors and Related Methods (page 170)
Chapter 4. The DBT Handle

```c
#include <db.h>

typedef struct {
    void *app_data;
    void *data;
    u_int32_t size;
    u_int32_t ulen;
    u_int32_t dlen;
    u_int32_t doff;
    u_int32_t flags;
} DBT;
```

Storage and retrieval for the DB access methods are based on key/data pairs. Both key and data items are represented by the DBT data structure. (The name DBT is a mnemonic for data base thang, and was used because no one could think of a reasonable name that wasn't already in use somewhere else.) Key and data byte strings may refer to strings of zero length up to strings of essentially unlimited length. See Database limits for more information.

All fields of the DBT structure that are not explicitly set should be initialized to nul bytes before the first time the structure is used. Do this by declaring the structure external or static, or by calling the C library routine `memset(3)`.

By default, the `flags` structure element is expected to be set to 0. In this default case, when the application is providing Berkeley DB a key or data item to store into the database, Berkeley DB expects the `data` structure element to point to a byte string of `size` bytes. When returning a key/data item to the application, Berkeley DB will store into the `data` structure element a pointer to a byte string of `size` bytes, and the memory to which the pointer refers will be allocated and managed by Berkeley DB. Note that using the default flags for returned DBTs is only compatible with single threaded usage of Berkeley DB.

The elements of the DBT structure are defined as follows:

- `void *app_data;`
  Optional field that can be used to pass information through Berkeley DB API calls into user-defined callback functions. For example, this field may be accessed to pass user-defined content when implementing the callback used by `DB->set_dup_compare()` (page 102).

- `void *data;`
  A pointer to a byte string.

- `u_int32_t size;`
  The length of `data`, in bytes.

- `u_int32_t ulen;`
The size of the user's buffer (to which data refers), in bytes. This location is not written by the Berkeley DB functions.

Set the byte size of the user-specified buffer.

Note that applications can determine the length of a record by setting the ulen field to 0 and checking the return value in the size field. See the DB_DBT_USERMEM flag for more information.

- **u_int32_t dlen;**

  The length of the partial record being read or written by the application, in bytes. See the DB_DBT_PARTIAL flag for more information.

- **u_int32_t doff;**

  The offset of the partial record being read or written by the application, in bytes. See the DB_DBT_PARTIAL flag for more information.

- **u_int32_t flags;**

  The flags parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

  - **DB_DBT_EXT_FILE**

    Set this flag on a DBT used for the data portion of a record to indicate that the DBT stores external file data. If this flag is set, and if the database otherwise supports external files, then the data contained by this DBT will be stored as an external file, regardless of whether it exceeds the external file threshold in size.

  - **DB_DBT_MALLOC**

    When this flag is set Berkeley DB will allocate memory for the returned key or data item (using malloc(3), or the user-specified malloc function), and return a pointer to it in the data field of the key or data DBT structure. Because any allocated memory becomes the responsibility of the calling application, the caller must determine whether memory was allocated using the returned value of the data field.

    It is an error to specify more than one of DB_DBT_MALLOC, DB_DBT_REALLOC, and DB_DBT_USERMEM.

  - **DB_DBT_REALLOC**

    When this flag is set Berkeley DB will allocate memory for the returned key or data item (using realloc(3), or the user-specified realloc function), and return a pointer to it in the data field of the key or data DBT structure. Because any allocated memory becomes the responsibility of the calling application, the caller must determine whether memory was allocated using the returned value of the data field.
The difference between DB_DBT_MALLOC and DB_DBT_REALLOC is that the latter will call `realloc(3)` instead of `malloc(3)`, so the allocated memory will be grown as necessary instead of the application doing repeated free/malloc calls.

It is an error to specify more than one of DB_DBT_MALLOC, DB_DBT_REALLOC, and DB_DBT_USERMEM.

• DB_DBT_USERMEM

The `data` field of the key or data structure must refer to memory that is at least `ulen` bytes in length. If the length of the requested item is less than or equal to that number of bytes, the item is copied into the memory to which the `data` field refers. Otherwise, the `size` field is set to the length needed for the requested item, and the error `DB_BUFFER_SMALL` is returned.

It is an error to specify more than one of DB_DBT_MALLOC, DB_DBT_REALLOC, and DB_DBT_USERMEM.

• DB_DBT_PARTIAL

Do partial retrieval or storage of an item. If the calling application is doing a get, the `dlen` bytes starting `doff` bytes from the beginning of the retrieved data record are returned as if they comprised the entire record. If any or all of the specified bytes do not exist in the record, the get is successful, and any existing bytes are returned.

For example, if the data portion of a retrieved record was 100 bytes, and a partial retrieval was done using a DBT having a `dlen` field of 20 and a `doff` field of 85, the get call would succeed, the `data` field would refer to the last 15 bytes of the record, and the `size` field would be set to 15.

If the calling application is doing a put, the `dlen` bytes starting `doff` bytes from the beginning of the specified key's data record are replaced by the data specified by the `data` and `size` structure elements. If `dlen` is smaller than `size` the record will grow; if `dlen` is larger than `size` the record will shrink. If the specified bytes do not exist, the record will be extended using nul bytes as necessary, and the put call will succeed.

It is an error to attempt a partial put using the `DB->put()` (page 79) method in a database that supports duplicate records. Partial puts in databases supporting duplicate records must be done using a `DBcursor->put()` (page 189) method.

It is an error to attempt a partial put with differing `dlen` and `size` values in Queue or Recno databases with fixed-length records.

For example, if the data portion of a retrieved record was 100 bytes, and a partial put was done using a DBT having a `dlen` field of 20, a `doff` field of 85, and a `size` field of 30, the resulting record would be 115 bytes in length, where the last 30 bytes would be those specified by the put call.
This flag is ignored when used with the pkey parameter on `DB->pget()` or `DBcursor->pget()`.

- **DB_DBT_APPMALLOC**

  After an application-supplied callback routine passed to either `DB->associate()` (page 6) or `DB->set_append_recno()` (page 89) is executed, the `data` field of a `DBT` may refer to memory allocated with `malloc(3)` or `realloc(3)`. In that case, the callback sets the `DB_DBT_APPMALLOC` flag in the `DBT` so that Berkeley DB will call `free(3)` to deallocate the memory when it is no longer required.

- **DB_DBT_MULTIPLE**

  Set in a secondary key creation callback routine passed to `DB->associate()` (page 6) to indicate that multiple secondary keys should be associated with the given primary key/data pair. If set, the `size` field indicates the number of secondary keys and the `data` field refers to an array of that number of `DBT` structures.

  The `DB_DBT_APPMALLOC` flag may be set on any of the `DBT` structures to indicate that their `data` field needs to be freed.

- **DB_DBT_READONLY**

  When this flag is set Berkeley DB will not write into the `DBT`. This may be set on key values in cases where the key is a static string that cannot be written and Berkeley DB might try to update it because the application has set a user defined comparison function.
## DBT and Bulk Operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DBT and Bulk Operations</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;sort_multiple()</td>
<td>Sort a set of DBTs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_MULTIPLE_INIT</td>
<td>Initialize bulk get retrieval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_MULTIPLE_NEXT</td>
<td>Next bulk get retrieval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_MULTIPLE_KEY_NEXT</td>
<td>Next bulk get retrieval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_NEXT</td>
<td>Next bulk get retrieval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_INIT</td>
<td>Initialize a bulk buffer to hold key/data pairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_NEXT</td>
<td>Append a data item to a bulk buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_MULTIPLE_RESERVE_NEXT</td>
<td>Reserve space for a data item in a bulk buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_MULTIPLE_KEY_WRITE_NEXT</td>
<td>Append a key / data pair to a bulk buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_MULTIPLE_KEY_RESERVE_NEXT</td>
<td>Reserve space for a key / data pair in a bulk buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_INIT</td>
<td>Initialize a bulk buffer to hold recno/data pairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_NEXT</td>
<td>Append a record number / data pair to a bulk buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_RESERVE_NEXT</td>
<td>Reserve space for a record number / data pair in a bulk buffer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DB_MULTIPLE_INIT

```c
#include <db.h>

DB_MULTIPLE_INIT(void *pointer, DBT *data);
```

If either of the DB_MULTIPLE or DB_MULTIPLE_KEY flags were specified to the DB->get() (page 31) or DBcursor->get() (page 180) methods, the data DBT returned by those interfaces will refer to a buffer that is filled with data. Access to that data is through the DB_MULTIPLE_* macros.

This macro initializes a variable used for bulk retrieval.

**Parameters**

- **pointer**
  The `pointer` parameter is a variable to be initialized.

- **data**
  The `data` parameter is a `DBT` structure returned from a successful call to DB->get() (page 31) or DBcursor->get() (page 180) for which one of the DB_MULTIPLE or DB_MULTIPLE_KEY flags were specified.

**Class**

`DBT`

**See Also**

DBT and Bulk Operations (page 198)
DB_MULTIPLE_NEXT

```c
#include <db.h>

DB_MULTIPLE_NEXT(void *pointer, DBT *data, void *retdata,
                 size_t retdlen);
```

If either of the DB_MULTIPLE or DB_MULTIPLE_KEY flags were specified to the DB->get() (page 31) or DBcursor->get() (page 180) methods, the data DBT returned by those interfaces will refer to a buffer that is filled with data. Access to that data is through the DB_MULTIPLE_* macros.

Returns the next DBT in the bulk retrieval set.

**Parameters**

**pointer**

The `pointer` parameter is a variable that must have been initialized by a call to DB_MULTIPLE_INIT (page 199).

This parameter is set to NULL if there are no more key/data pairs in the returned set.

**data**

The `data` parameter is a DBT structure returned from a successful call to DB->get() (page 31) or DBcursor->get() (page 180) for which the DB_MULTIPLE flag was specified.

The `data` parameter must have been initialized by a call to DB_MULTIPLE_INIT (page 199).

**retdata**

The `retdata` is set to the next data element in the returned set.

**retdlen**

The `retdlen` parameter is set to the length, in bytes, of that data element. When used with the Queue and Recno access methods, `retdata` parameter will be set to NULL for deleted records.

**Class**

DBT

**See Also**

DBT and Bulk Operations (page 198)
DB_MULTIPLE_KEY_NEXT

```c
#include <db.h>

DB_MULTIPLE_KEY_NEXT(void *pointer, DBT *data,
                      void *retkey, size_t retklen, void *retdata, size_t retdlen);
```

If either of the DB_MULTIPLE or DB_MULTIPLE_KEY flags were specified to the DB->get() (page 31) or DBcursor->get() (page 180) methods, the data DBT returned by those interfaces will refer to a buffer that is filled with data. Access to that data is through the DB_MULTIPLE_* macros.

Returns the next DBT in the bulk retrieval set. Use this macro with DBT structures obtained from a database that uses the Btree or Hash access methods.

**Parameters**

**pointer**

The `pointer` parameter is a variable that must have been initialized by a call to DB_MULTIPLE_INIT (page 199).

This parameter is set to NULL if there are no more key/data pairs in the returned set.

**data**

The `data` parameter is a DBT structure returned from a successful call to DBcursor->get() (page 180) with the Btree or Hash access methods for which the DB_MULTIPLE_KEY flag was specified.

The `data` parameter must have been initialized by a call to DB_MULTIPLE_INIT (page 199).

**retkey**

The `retkey` parameter is set to the next key element in the returned set.

**retklen**

The `retklen` parameter is set to the length, in bytes, of the next key element.

**retdata**

The `retdata` parameter is set to the next data element in the returned set.

**retdlen**

The `retdlen` parameter is set to the length, in bytes, of the next data element.

**Class**

DBT
See Also

DBT and Bulk Operations (page 198)
DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_NEXT

```c
#include <db.h>

DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_NEXT(void *pointer, DBT *data,
    db_recno_t recno, void * retdata, size_t retdlen);
```

If either of the DB_MULTIPLE or DB_MULTIPLE_KEY flags were specified to the DB->get() (page 31) or DBcursor->get() (page 180) methods, the data DBT returned by those interfaces will refer to a buffer that is filled with data. Access to that data is through the DB_MULTIPLE_* macros.

Returns the next DBT in the bulk retrieval set. Use this macro with DBT structures obtained from a database that uses the Queue or Recno access methods.

**Parameters**

**pointer**

The `pointer` parameter is a variable that must have been initialized by a call to DB_MULTIPLE_INIT (page 199).

This parameter is set to NULL if there are no more key/data pairs in the returned set.

**data**

The `data` parameter is a DBT structure returned from a successful call to DBcursor->get() (page 180) with the Queue or Recno access methods for which the DB_MULTIPLE_KEY flag was specified.

The `data` parameter must have been initialized by a call to DB_MULTIPLE_INIT (page 199).

**recno**

The `recno` parameter is set to the record number of the next record in the returned set.

**retdata**

The `retdata` parameter is set to the next data element in the returned set. Deleted records are not included in the results.

**retdlen**

The `retdlen` parameter is set to the length, in bytes, of the next data element.

**Class**

DBT

**See Also**

DBT and Bulk Operations (page 198)
DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_INIT

#include <db.h>

DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_INIT(void *pointer, DBT *data);

Initialize a DBT containing a bulk buffer for use with the DB_MULTIPLE or DB_MULTIPLE_KEY flags to the DB->put() (page 79) or DB->del() (page 23) methods.

This macro initializes an opaque pointer variable used for adding records to a bulk buffer. Use this macro for buffers that will contain either a data item per record (for use with DB_MULTIPLE), or key/data pairs, where the key is not a record number. For record number keys, use DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_INIT.

Parameters

pointer

The pointer parameter is an opaque pointer variable to be initialized.

data

The data parameter is a DBT structure that has been initialized by the application with a buffer to hold multiple records. The ulen field must be set to the size of the buffer allocated by the application, and must be a multiple of 4.

Class

DBT

See Also

DBT and Bulk Operations (page 198)
# DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_NEXT

```c
#include <db.h>

DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_NEXT(void *pointer, DBT *dbt, void *data,
                        size_t dlen);
```

Appends a data item to the bulk buffer.

## Parameters

**pointer**

The `pointer` parameter is a variable that must have been initialized by a call to `DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_INIT (page 204)`.

This parameter is set to NULL if the data item does not fit in the buffer.

**dbt**

The `dbt` parameter is a `DBT` structure initialized with `DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_INIT (page 204)`.

**data**

A pointer to the bytes to be copied into the bulk buffer.

**dlen**

The number of bytes to be copied.

## Class

`DBT`

## See Also

`DBT and Bulk Operations (page 198)`
DB_MULTIPLE_RESERVE_NEXT

```c
#include <db.h>

DB_MULTIPLE_RESERVE_NEXT(void *pointer, DBT *dbt,
    void *ddest, size_t dlen);
```

Reserves space for a data item in a bulk buffer.

**Parameters**

- **dbt**
  The `dbt` parameter is a `DBT` structure initialized with `DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_INIT` (page 204).

- **pointer**
  The `pointer` parameter is a variable that must have been initialized by a call to `DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_INIT` (page 204).

- **ddest**
  The `ddest` parameter is set to the location reserved in the bulk buffer for the data item. This parameter is set to NULL if the data item does not fit in the buffer.

- **dlen**
  The number of bytes to be reserved for the data item.

**Class**

`DBT`

**See Also**

`DBT` and `Bulk Operations` (page 198)
DB_MULTIPLE_KEY_WRITE_NEXT

```c
#include <db.h>

DB_MULTIPLE_KEY_WRITE_NEXT(void *pointer, DBT *dbt,
    void *key, size_t klen, void *data, size_t dlen);
```

Appends a key / data pair to the bulk buffer.

**Parameters**

**pointer**

The `pointer` parameter is a variable that must have been initialized by a call to `DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_INIT` (page 204).

This parameter is set to NULL if the data item does not fit in the buffer.

**dbt**

The `dbt` parameter is a `DBT` structure initialized with `DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_INIT` (page 204).

**key**

A pointer to the bytes for the key to be copied into the bulk buffer.

**klen**

The number of bytes to be copied for the key.

**data**

A pointer to the bytes for the data item to be copied into the bulk buffer.

**dlen**

The number of bytes to be copied for the data item.

**Class**

`DBT`

**See Also**

`DBT and Bulk Operations (page 198)`
DB_MULTIPLE_KEY_RESERVE_NEXT

```
#include <db.h>

DB_MULTIPLE_KEY_RESERVE_NEXT(void *pointer, DBT *dbt,
   void *kdest, size_t klen, void *ddest, size_t dlen);
```

Reserves space for a key / data pair in a bulk buffer.

**Parameters**

**pointer**

The `pointer` parameter is a variable that must have been initialized by a call to `DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_INIT` (page 204).

**kdest**

The `kdest` parameter is set to the location reserved in the bulk buffer for the key. This parameter is set to NULL if the data item does not fit in the buffer.

**klen**

The number of bytes to be reserved for the key.

**ddest**

The `ddest` parameter is set to the location reserved in the bulk buffer for the data item. This parameter is set to NULL if the data item does not fit in the buffer.

**dlen**

The number of bytes to be reserved for the data item.

**Class**

DBT

**See Also**

DBT and Bulk Operations (page 198)
DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_INIT

```
#include <db.h>

DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_INIT(void *pointer, DBT *data);
```

Initialize a DBT containing a bulk buffer for use with the DB_MULTIPLE or DB_MULTIPLE_KEY flags to the DB->put() (page 79) or DB->del() (page 23) methods, if the buffer will contain record number keys.

This macro initializes an opaque pointer variable used for adding records to a bulk buffer. Use this macro for buffers that will contain either a list of record numbers (for use with DB_MULTIPLE), or key/data pairs, where the key is a record number.

**Parameters**

**pointer**

The `pointer` parameter is an opaque pointer variable to be initialized.

**data**

The `data` parameter is a DBT structure that has been initialized by the application with a buffer to hold multiple records. The `ulen` field must be set to the size of the buffer allocated by the application, which must be a multiple of 4.

**Class**

DBT

**See Also**

DBT and Bulk Operations (page 198)
DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_NEXT

```c
#include <db.h>

DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_NEXT(void *pointer, DBT *dbt,
   db_recno_t recno, void *data, size_t dlen);
```

Appends a record number / data pair to the bulk buffer.

**Parameters**

**pointer**

The `pointer` parameter is a variable that must have been initialized by a call to
`DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_INIT (page 209)`.

This parameter is set to NULL if the data item does not fit in the buffer.

**dbt**

The `dbt` parameter is a `DBT` structure initialized with `DB_MULTIPLE_WRITE_INIT (page 204)`.

**recno**

The record number to be copied into the bulk buffer.

**data**

A pointer to the bytes to be copied into the bulk buffer.

**dlen**

The number of bytes to be copied.

**Class**

`DBT`

**See Also**

`DBT and Bulk Operations (page 198)`
DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_RESERVE_NEXT

```c
#include <db.h>

DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_RESERVE_NEXT(void *pointer, DBT *dbt, db_recno_t recno,
                               void *ddest, size_t dlen);
```

Reserves space for a record number / data pair in a bulk buffer.

**Parameters**

**pointer**

The `pointer` parameter is a variable that must have been initialized by a call to `DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_INIT` (page 209).

**dbt**

The `dbt` parameter is a `DBT` structure initialized with `DB_MULTIPLE_RECNO_WRITE_INIT` (page 209).

**recno**

The record number to be copied into the bulk buffer.

This parameter is set to 0 if the data item does not fit in the buffer.

**ddest**

The `ddest` parameter is set to the location reserved in the bulk buffer for the data item.

This parameter is set to NULL if the data item does not fit in the buffer.

**dlen**

The number of bytes to be reserved.

**Class**

DBT

**See Also**

DBT and Bulk Operations (page 198)
Chapter 5. The DB_ENV Handle

The DB_ENV object is the handle for a Berkeley DB environment — a collection including support for some or all of caching, locking, logging and transaction subsystems, as well as databases and log files. Methods of the DB_ENV handle are used to configure the environment as well as to operate on subsystems and databases in the environment.

DB_ENV handles are created using the db_env_create (page 223) method, and are opened using the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method.

When you are done using your environment, close it using the DB_ENV->close() (page 221) method. Before closing your environment, make sure all open database handles are closed first. See the DB->close() (page 13) method for more information.
# Database Environments and Related Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Database Environment Operations</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;backup()</td>
<td>Hot back up an entire environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;close()</td>
<td>Close an environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_env_create</td>
<td>Create an environment handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;dbbackup()</td>
<td>Hot back up a single environment file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;dbremove()</td>
<td>Remove a database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;dbrename()</td>
<td>Rename a database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;err()</td>
<td>Error message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;failchk()</td>
<td>Check for thread failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;fileid_reset()</td>
<td>Reset database file IDs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_full_version</td>
<td>Return full version information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;get_env()</td>
<td>Return the DB's underlying DB_ENV handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;get_home()</td>
<td>Return environment's home directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;get_open_flags()</td>
<td>Return flags with which the environment was opened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;get_slices()</td>
<td>Returns an array of slice environments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;log_verify()</td>
<td>Verify log files of an environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;lsn_reset()</td>
<td>Reset database file LSNs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;msg()</td>
<td>Informational message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;open()</td>
<td>Open an environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;remove()</td>
<td>Remove an environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;stat_print()</td>
<td>Environment statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_strerror</td>
<td>Error strings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_version</td>
<td>Return version information</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Environment Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Database Environment Operations</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;add_data_dir()</td>
<td>Add an environment data directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;get_slice_count()</td>
<td>Returns the number of slices configured for the environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set Alloc()</td>
<td>Set local space allocation functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_app_dispatch()</td>
<td>Configure application recovery callback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_backup_callbacks(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_backup_callbacks()</td>
<td>Set/get callbacks used for environment hot backups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_backup_config(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_backup_config()</td>
<td>Set/get environment hot backup configuration options</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database Environment Operations</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_data_dir(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_data_dirs()</td>
<td>Set/get the environment data directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_data_len(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_data_len()</td>
<td>Set/get the command line utility byte limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_create_dir(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_create_dir()</td>
<td>Add an environment data directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_encrypt(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_encrypt_flags()</td>
<td>Set/get the environment cryptographic key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_event_notify()</td>
<td>Set event notification callback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_errcall()</td>
<td>Set error message callbacks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_errfile(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_errfile()</td>
<td>Set/get error message FILE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_errpfx(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_errpfx()</td>
<td>Set/get error message prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_feedback()</td>
<td>Set feedback callback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_flags(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_flags()</td>
<td>Environment configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_intermediate_dir_mode(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_intermediate_dir_mode()</td>
<td>Set/get intermediate directory creation mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_isalive()</td>
<td>Set thread is-alive callback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_memory_init(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_memory_init()</td>
<td>Set/get initial memory allocation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_memory_max(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_memory_max()</td>
<td>Set/get maximum memory allocation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_metadata_dir(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_metadata_dir()</td>
<td>Set/get the directory containing environment metadata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_msgcall()</td>
<td>Set informational message callback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_msgfile(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_msgfile()</td>
<td>Set/get informational message FILE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_msgpfx(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_msgpfx()</td>
<td>Set/get informational message prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_shm_key(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_shm_key()</td>
<td>Set/get system memory shared segment ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_thread_count(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_thread_count()</td>
<td>Set/get approximate thread count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_thread_id()</td>
<td>Set thread of control ID function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_thread_id_string()</td>
<td>Set thread of control ID format function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_timeout(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_timeout()</td>
<td>Set/get lock and transaction timeout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_tmp_dir(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_tmp_dir()</td>
<td>Set/get the environment temporary file directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database Environment Operations</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_verbose(),  DB_ENV-&gt;get_verbose()</td>
<td>Set/get verbose messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_cachesize(),  DB_ENV-&gt;get_cachesize()</td>
<td>Set/get the environment cache size</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**DB_ENV->add_data_dir()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->add_data_dir(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char *dir);
```

Add the path of a directory to be used as the location of the access method database files. Paths specified to the `DB->open()` (page 74) function will be searched relative to this path. Paths set using this method are additive, and specifying more than one will result in each specified directory being searched for database files.

If no database directories are specified, database files must be named either by absolute paths or relative to the environment home directory. See Berkeley DB File Naming for more information.

The database environment’s data directories may also be configured using the environment’s `DB_CONFIG` file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string “add_data_dir”, one or more whitespace characters, and the directory name. Note that if you use this method for your application, and you also want to use the `db_recover` (page 721) or `db_archive` (page 695) utilities, then you should create a `DB_CONFIG` file and set the “add_data_dir” parameter in it.

The `DB_ENV->add_data_dir()` method configures operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The `DB_ENV->add_data_dir()` method may not be called after the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method is called. If the database environment already exists when `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) is called, the information specified to `DB_ENV->add_data_dir()` must be consistent with the existing environment or corruption can occur.

The `DB_ENV->add_data_dir()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`dir`

The `dir` parameter is a directory to be used as a location for database files. This directory must currently exist at environment open time.

When using a Unicode build on Windows (the default), this argument will be interpreted as a UTF-8 string, which is equivalent to ASCII for Latin characters.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->add_data_dir()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.
**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->backup()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->backup(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char *target, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB_ENV->backup()` method performs a hot backup of the open environment. All files used by the environment are backed up, so long as the normal rules for file placement are followed. For information on how files are normally placed relative to the environment directory, see Berkeley DB File Naming in the *Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide*.

By default, data directories and the log directory specified relative to the home directory will be recreated relative to the target directory. If absolute path names are used, then specify `DB_BACKUP_SINGLE_DIR` to the `flags` parameter.

This method provides the same functionality as the `db_hotbackup` utility. However, this method does not perform the housekeeping actions performed by the `db_hotbackup` utility. In particular, you may want to run a checkpoint before calling this method. To run a checkpoint, use the `DB_ENV->txn_checkpoint()` method. For more information on checkpoints, see Checkpoints in the *Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide*.

To back up a single database file contained within the environment, use the `DB_ENV->dbbackup()` method.

This method's default behavior can be changed by setting backup callbacks. See `DB_ENV->set_backup_callbacks()` for more information. Additional tuning parameters can also be set using the `DB_ENV->set_backup_config()` method.

The `DB_ENV->backup()` method may only be called after the environment handle has been opened.

The `DB_ENV->backup()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**target**

Identifies the directory in which the back up will be placed. Any subdirectories required to contain the backup must be placed relative to this directory. Note that if the backup callbacks are set, then the value specified to this parameter is passed on to the `open_func()` callback. If this parameter is NULL, then the target must be specified to the `open_func()` callback.

This directory, and any required subdirectories, will be created for you if you specify the `DB_CREATE` flag on the call to this method. Otherwise, if the target does not exist, this method exits with an ENOENT error return.

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the values:
• **DB_BACKUP_CLEAN**
  
  **Before performing the backup, first remove all files from the target backup directory tree.**

• **DB_BACKUP_FILES**
  
  **Back up all ordinary files that might exist in the environment, and the environment's subdirectories.**

• **DB_BACKUP_NO_LOGS**
  
  **Back up only the *.db files. Do not backup the log files.**

• **DB_BACKUP_SINGLE_DIR**
  
  **Regardless of the directory structure used by the source environment, place all back up files in the single directory identified by the target parameter. Use this option if absolute path names to your environment directory and the files within that directory are required by your application.**

• **DB_BACKUP_UPDATE**
  
  **Perform an incremental back up, instead of a full back up. When this option is specified, only log files are copied to the target directory.**

• **DB_CREATE**
  
  **If the target directory does not exist, create it and any required subdirectories.**

• **DB_EXCL**
  
  **Return an EEXIST error if a target backup file already exists.**

• **DB_VERB_BACKUP**
  
  **Run in verbose mode, listing operations as they are completed.**

### Errors

The **DB_ENV->backup()** method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EEXIST**

DB_EXCL was specified for the flags parameter, and an existing target file was discovered when attempting to back up a source file.

**ENOENT**

The target directory does not exist and DB_CREATE was not specified for the flags parameter.

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.
Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
The `DB_ENV->close()` method closes the Berkeley DB environment, freeing any allocated resources and closing all database handles opened with this environment handle, as well as closing any underlying subsystems.

When you call the `DB_ENV->close()` method, all open DB handles and DBcursor handles are closed automatically by this function. And, when you close a database handle, all cursors opened with it are closed automatically.

In multiple threads of control, each thread of control opens a database environment and the database handles within it. When you close each database handle using the `DB_ENV->close()` method, by default, the database is not synchronized and is similar to calling the `DB->close(DB_NOSYNC)` method. This is to avoid unnecessary database synchronization when there are multiple environment handles open. To ensure all open database handles are synchronized when you close the last environment handle, set the flag parameter value of the `DB_ENV->close()` method to `DB_FORCESYNC`. This is similar to calling the `DB->close(0)` method to close each database handle.

If a database close operation fails, the method returns a non-zero error value for the first instance of such an error, and continues to close the rest of the database and environment handles.

The `DB_ENV` handle should not be closed while any other handle that refers to it is not yet closed; for example, database environment handles must not be closed while transactions in the environment have not yet been committed or aborted. Specifically, this includes the `DB_TXN`, `DB_LOGC` and `DB_MPOOLFILE` handles.

Where the environment was initialized with the `DB_INIT_LOCK` flag, calling `DB_ENV->close()` does not release any locks still held by the closing process, providing functionality for long-lived locks. Processes that want to have all their locks released can do so by issuing the appropriate `DB_ENV->lock_vec()` (page 388) call.

Where the environment was initialized with the `DB_INIT_MPOOL` flag, calling `DB_ENV->close()` implies calls to `DB_MPOOLFILE->close()` (page 471) for any remaining open files in the memory pool that were returned to this process by calls to `DB_MPOOLFILE->open()` (page 475). It does not imply a call to `DB_MPOOLFILE->sync()` (page 479) for those files.

Where the environment was initialized with the `DB_INIT_TXN` flag, calling `DB_ENV->close()` aborts any unresolved transactions. Applications should not depend on this behavior for transactions involving Berkeley DB databases; all such transactions should be explicitly resolved. The problem with depending on this semantic is that aborting an unresolved transaction involving database operations requires a database handle. Because the database handles should have been closed before calling `DB_ENV->close()`, it will not be possible to abort the transaction, and recovery will have to be run on the Berkeley DB environment before further operations are done.
Where log cursors were created using the `DB_ENV->log_cursor()` (page 402) method, calling `DB_ENV->close()` does not imply closing those cursors.

In multithreaded applications, only a single thread may call the `DB_ENV->close()` method.

After `DB_ENV->close()` has been called, regardless of its return, the Berkeley DB environment handle may not be accessed again.

The `DB_ENV->close()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or be set to one of the following values:

- **DB_FORCESYNC**
  
  When closing each database handle internally, synchronize the database. If this flag is not specified, the database handle is closed without synchronizing the database.

- **DB_FORCESYNCENV**
  
  When closing the environment, flush memory mapped environment regions to disk. Specifying this flag may help prevent loss of updates when __db.* files are on NFS storage. However, there is a risk that this flag will significantly slow down this method call.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

`Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)`
db_env_create

```c
#include <db.h>

int
db_env_create(DB_ENV **dbenvp, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `db_env_create()` function creates a DB_ENV structure that is the handle for a Berkeley DB environment. This function allocates memory for the structure, returning a pointer to the structure in the memory to which `dbenvp` refers. To release the allocated memory and discard the handle, call the `DB_ENV->close()` (page 221) or `DB_ENV->remove()` (page 277) methods.

DB_ENV handles are free-threaded if the `DB_THREAD` flag is specified to the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method when the environment is opened. The DB_ENV handle should not be closed while any other handle remains open that is using it as a reference (for example, DB or DB_TXN). Once either the `DB_ENV->close()` (page 221) or `DB_ENV->remove()` (page 277) methods are called, the handle may not be accessed again, regardless of the method's return.

Before the handle may be used, you must open it using the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method.

The DB_ENV handle contains a special field, `app_private`, which is declared as type `void *`. This field is provided for the use of the application program. It is initialized to NULL and is not further used by Berkeley DB in any way.

The `db_env_create()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->dbbackup()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->dbbackup(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char *dbfile, const char *target, 
                      u_int32_t flags);
```

The DB_ENV->dbbackup() method performs a hot backup of a single database file contained within the environment.

To back up an entire environment, use the DB_ENV->backup() (page 218) method.

This method's default behavior can be changed by setting backup callbacks. See DB_ENV->set_backup_callbacks() (page 283) for more information. Additional tuning parameters can also be set using the DB_ENV->set_backup_config() (page 286) method.

The DB_ENV->dbbackup() method may only be called after the environment handle has been opened.

The DB_ENV->dbbackup() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **dbfile**
  
  Identifies the database file that you want to back up.

- **target**
  
  Identifies the directory in which the back up will be placed. This target must exist; otherwise this method exits with an ENOENT error return.

  Note that if the backup callbacks are set, then the value specified to this parameter is passed on to the open_func() callback. If this parameter is NULL, then the target must be specified directly to the open_func() callback.

- **flags**
  
  The flags parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:
  
  - DB_EXCL

    Return an EEXIST error if a target backup file already exists.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->dbbackup() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EEXIST**

  DB_EXCL was specified for the flags parameter, and an existing target file was discovered when attempting to back up a source file.
ENOENT
The target directory does not exist.

EINVAL
An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class
DB_ENV

See Also
Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->dbremove()

#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->dbremove(DB_ENV *dbenv, DB_TXN *txnid,
const char *file, const char *database, u_int32_t flags);

The DB_ENV->dbremove() method removes the database specified by the file and database parameters. If no database is specified, the underlying file represented by file is removed, incidentally removing all of the databases it contained.

Applications should never remove databases with open DB handles, or in the case of removing a file, when any database in the file has an open handle.

The DB_ENV->dbremove() method is not atomic in a sliced environment. If the operation fails, it is possible for some, but not all, of the sliced databases to still exist.

The DB_ENV->dbremove() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

DB_ENV->dbremove() is affected by any database directory specified using the DB_ENV->add_data_dir() (page 216) method, or by setting the add_data_dir string in the environment's DB_CONFIG file.

Parameters

txnid

If the operation is part of an application-specified transaction, the txnid parameter is a transaction handle returned from DB_ENV->txn_begin() (page 648); if the operation is part of a Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store group, the txnid parameter is a handle returned from DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin() (page 640); otherwise NULL. If no transaction handle is specified, but the DB_AUTO_COMMIT flag is specified to either this method or the environment handle, the operation will be implicitly transaction protected.

file

The file parameter is the physical file which contains the database(s) to be removed.

database

The database parameter is the database to be removed.

flags

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

• DB_AUTO_COMMIT

Enclose the DB_ENV->dbremove() call within a transaction. If the call succeeds, changes made by the operation will be recoverable. If the call fails, the operation will have made no changes.
Environment Variables

The environment variable DB_HOME may be used as the path of the database environment home.

Errors

The DB_ENV->dbremove() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**

A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.

**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**

A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.

You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See DB->set_lk_exclusive() (page 126) for more information.

**EINVAL**

If the method was called before DB_ENV->open() (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**ENOENT**

The file or directory does not exist.

**DB_META_CHKSUM_FAIL**

Checksum mismatch detected on a database metadata page. Either the database is corrupted or the file is not a Berkeley DB database file.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->dbrename()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->dbrename(DB_ENV *dbenv, DB_TXN *txnid, const char *file,
        const char *database, const char *newname, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB_ENV->dbrename()` method renames the database specified by the `file` and `database` parameters to `newname`. If no `database` is specified, the underlying file represented by `file` is renamed using the value supplied to `newname`, incidentally renaming all of the databases it contained.

Applications should not rename databases that are currently in use. If an underlying file is being renamed and logging is currently enabled in the database environment, no database in the file may be open when the `DB_ENV->dbrename()` method is called.

The `DB_ENV->dbrename()` method is not atomic in a sliced environment. If the operation fails, it is possible for the names of the various sliced databases to be in an inconsistent state.

The `DB_ENV->dbrename()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

`DB_ENV->dbrename()` is affected by any database directory specified using the `DB_ENV->add_data_dir()` method, or by setting the `add_data_dir` string in the environment's `DB_CONFIG` file.

**Parameters**

- **txnid**

  If the operation is part of an application-specified transaction, the `txnid` parameter is a transaction handle returned from `DB_ENV->txn_begin()`; if the operation is part of a Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store group, the `txnid` parameter is a handle returned from `DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin()` (page 640); otherwise NULL. If no transaction handle is specified, but the `DB_AUTO_COMMIT` flag is specified to either this method or the environment handle, the operation will be implicitly transaction protected.

- **file**

  The `file` parameter is the physical file which contains the database(s) to be renamed.

  When using a Unicode build on Windows (the default), the `file` argument will be interpreted as a UTF-8 string, which is equivalent to ASCII for Latin characters.

- **database**

  The `database` parameter is the database to be renamed.

- **newname**

  The `newname` parameter is the new name of the database or file.
The DB_ENV Handle

flags

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

- DB_AUTO_COMMIT

Enclose the DB_ENV->dbrename() call within a transaction. If the call succeeds, changes made by the operation will be recoverable. If the call fails, the operation will have made no changes.

Environment Variables

The environment variable DB_HOME may be used as the path of the database environment home.

Errors

The DB_ENV->dbrename() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**
A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.

**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**
A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.

You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See DB->set_lk_exclusive() (page 126) for more information.

**EINVAL**
If the method was called before DB_ENV->open() (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**ENOENT**
The file or directory does not exist.

**DB_META_CHKSUM_FAIL**
Checksum mismatch detected on a database metadata page. Either the database is corrupted or the file is not a Berkeley DB database file.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
The `DB_ENV->err()` methods provide error-messaging functionality for applications written using the Berkeley DB library. The `DB->err()` (page 26) and `DB_ENV->err()` (page 230) methods constructs an error message consisting of the following elements:

- **An optional prefix string**
  If no error callback function has been set using the `DB_ENV->set_errcall()` (page 301) method, any prefix string specified using the `DB_ENV->set_errpfx()` (page 305) method, followed by two separating characters: a colon and a <space> character.

- **An optional printf-style message**
  The supplied message `fmt`, if non-NULL, in which the ANSI C X3.159-1989 (ANSI C) printf function specifies how subsequent parameters are converted for output.

- **A separator**
  Two separating characters: a colon and a <space> character.

- **A standard error string**
  The standard system or Berkeley DB library error string associated with the error value, as returned by the `db_strerror` (page 345) method.

This constructed error message is then handled as follows:

- If an error callback function has been set (see `DB->set_errcall()` (page 105) and `DB_ENV->set_errcall()` (page 301)), that function is called with two parameters: any prefix string specified (see `DB->set_errpfx()` (page 109) and `DB_ENV->set_errpfx()` (page 305)) and the error message.

- If a C library FILE * has been set (see `DB->set_errfile()` (page 107) and `DB_ENV->set_errfile()` (page 303)), the error message is written to that output stream.

- If none of these output options have been configured, the error message is written to stderr, the standard error output stream.

**Note**

The total length of the message written by this method, including the prefix string, can be no longer than 4096.
Parameters

error

The error parameter is the error value for which the DB_ENV->err() and DB->err() (page 26) methods will display an explanatory string.

fmt

The fmt parameter is an optional printf-style message to display.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
The DB_ENV Handle

DB_ENV->failchk()

#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->failchk(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t flags);

The DB_ENV->failchk() method checks for threads of control (either a true thread or a process) that have exited while manipulating Berkeley DB library data structures, while holding a logical database lock, or with an unresolved transaction (that is, a transaction that was never aborted or committed). For more information, see Architecting Data Store and Concurrent Data Store applications, and Architecting Transactional Data Store applications, both in the Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide.

The DB_ENV->failchk() method is used in conjunction with the DB_ENV->set_thread_count() (page 330), DB_ENV->set_isalive() (page 317) and DB_ENV->set_thread_id() (page 332) methods. Before calling the failchk() method, applications must:

1. Configure their database using the DB_ENV->set_thread_count() (page 330) method.
2. Establish an is_alive() function and invoke DB_ENV->set_isalive() (page 317) with that function as the is_alive parameter.
3. Establish a thread_id function and invoke DB_ENV->set_thread_id() (page 332) with that function as the thread_id parameter.

If any of these methods are omitted, a program may be unable to allocate a thread control block. This is true of the standalone Berkeley DB utility programs. To avoid problems when using the standalone Berkeley DB utility programs with environments configured for failure checking, incorporate the utility's functionality directly in the application, or call the DB_ENV->failchk() method along with its associated methods before running the utility.

If DB_ENV->failchk() determines a thread of control exited while holding database read locks, it will release those locks. If DB_ENV->failchk() determines a thread of control exited with an unresolved transaction, the transaction will be aborted. In either of these cases, DB_ENV->failchk() will return 0 and the application may continue to use the database environment.

In either of these cases, the DB_ENV->failchk() method will also report the process and thread IDs associated with any released locks or aborted transactions. The information is printed to a specified output channel (see the DB_ENV->set_msgfile() (page 326) method for more information), or passed to an application callback function (see the DB_ENV->set_msgcall() (page 324) method for more information).

If DB_ENV->failchk() determines a thread of control has exited such that database environment recovery is required, it will return DB_RUNRECOVERY. In this case, the application should not continue to use the database environment. For a further description as to the actions the application should take when this failure occurs, see Handling failure in Data Store and Concurrent Data Store applications, and Handling failure in Transactional Data Store applications, both in the Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide.
In multiprocess applications, it is recommended that the DB_ENV handle used to invoke the DB_ENV->failchk() method not be shared and therefore not free-threaded.

The DB_ENV->failchk() method may not be called by the application before the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called.

The DB_ENV->failchk() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**flags**

The flags parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->failchk() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
The `DB_ENV->fileid_reset()` method allows database files to be copied, and then the copy used in the same database environment as the original.

All databases contain an ID string used to identify the database in the database environment cache. If a physical database file is copied, and used in the same environment as another file with the same ID strings, corruption can occur. The `DB_ENV->fileid_reset()` method creates new ID strings for all of the databases in the physical file.

The `DB_ENV->fileid_reset()` method modifies the physical file, in-place. Applications should not reset IDs in files that are currently in use.

The `DB_ENV->fileid_reset()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->fileid_reset()` method is a non-atomic operation. If the operation fails, it is possible for the copied database to be in an inconsistent state.

The `DB_ENV->fileid_reset()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**file**

The name of the physical file in which new file IDs are to be created.

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

- `DB_ENCRYPT`

  The file contains encrypted databases.

### Errors

The `DB_ENV->fileid_reset()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- `EINVAL`

  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

### Class

`DB_ENV`
See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
The `db_full_version()` method returns a pointer to a string, suitable for display, containing Berkeley DB version information. The string includes Oracle family and release numbers, as well as Berkeley DB’s traditional major, minor, and patch numbers.

**Parameters**

**family**

If `family` is non-NULL, the Oracle family number of the Berkeley DB release is copied to the memory to which it refers.

**release**

If `release` is non-NULL, the Oracle release number of the Berkeley DB release is copied to the memory to which it refers.

**major**

If `major` is non-NULL, the major version of the Berkeley DB release is copied to the memory to which it refers.

**minor**

If `minor` is non-NULL, the minor version of the Berkeley DB release is copied to the memory to which it refers.

**patch**

If `patch` is non-NULL, the patch version of the Berkeley DB release is copied to the memory to which it refers.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
### `DB_ENV->get_create_dir()`

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_create_dir(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char **dirp);
```

The `DB_ENV->get_create_dir()` method returns a pointer to the name of the directory to create databases in.

The `DB_ENV->get_create_dir()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->get_create_dir()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

#### Parameters

- **dirp**

  The `DB_ENV->get_create_dir()` method returns a pointer to the name of the directory in `dirp`.

#### Class

- **DB_ENV**

#### See Also

- Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->get_data_dirs()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_data_dirs(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char ***dirpp);
```

The DB_ENV->get_data_dirs() method returns the NULL-terminated array of directories.

The DB_ENV->get_data_dirs() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->get_data_dirs() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **dirpp**
  
  The DB_ENV->get_data_dirs() method returns a reference to the NULL-terminated array of directories in dirpp.

**Class**

- **DB_ENV**

**See Also**

- Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
The DB_ENV->get_data_len() method returns the maximum number of bytes to display for each key/data item when dumping the database or printing the log. This limit can be set using the DB_ENV->set_data_len() (page 290) method.

The DB_ENV->get_data_len() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->get_data_len() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

*bytes*

The bytes parameter references memory into which is copied the maximum number of bytes to display when dumping the database or printing the log.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
The DB_ENV Handle

DB_ENV->get_encrypt_flags()

```
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->get_encrypt_flags(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t *flagsp);
```

The DB_ENV->get_encrypt_flags() method returns the encryption flags.

The DB_ENV->get_encrypt_flags() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->get_encrypt_flags() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **flagsp**

  The DB_ENV->get_encrypt_flags() method returns the encryption flags in flagsp.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB->get_env()

```c
#include <db.h>

DB_ENV *
DB->get_env(DB *db);
```

The `DB->get_env()` method returns the handle for the database environment underlying the database.

The `DB->get_env()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Database and Related Methods (page 3)
**DB_ENV->get_errfile()**

```c
#include <db.h>

void
DB_ENV->get_errfile(DB_ENV *dbenv, FILE **errfilep);
```

The `DB_ENV->get_errfile()` method returns the `FILE *` used for displaying additional Berkeley DB error messages. This C library is set using the `DB_ENV->set_errfile()` (page 303) method.

The `DB_ENV->get_errfile()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Parameters**

- **errfilep**

  The `DB_ENV->get_errfile()` method returns the `FILE *` in `errfilep`.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

- Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
The DB_ENV Handle

DB_ENV->get_errpfx()

```c
#include <db.h>

void
DB_ENV->get_errpfx(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char **errpfxp);
```

The DB_ENV->get_errpfx() method returns the error prefix that appears before error messages issued by Berkeley DB. This error prefix is set using the DB_ENV->set_errpfx() (page 305) method.

The DB_ENV->get_errpfx() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Parameters**

- **errpfxp**

  The DB_ENV->get_errpfx() method returns a reference to the error prefix in errpfxp.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->get_backup_callbacks()

#include <db.h>

int (**open_func)(DB_ENV *, const char *dbname,
                 const char *target, void **handle),
int (**write_func)(DB_ENV *, u_int32_t offset_gbytes,
                  u_int32_t offset_bytes, u_int32_t size,
                  u_int8_t *buf, void *handle),
int (**close_func)(DB_ENV *, const char *dbname, void *handle));

The DB_ENV->get_backup_callbacks() method retrieves the three callback functions which can be used by the DB_ENV->backup() (page 218) or DB_ENV->dbackup() (page 224) methods to override their default behavior. These callbacks are configured using the DB_ENV->set_backup_callbacks() (page 283) method.

The DB_ENV->get_backup_callbacks() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->get_backup_callbacks() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

open_func

The open_func parameter is the function used when a target location is opened during a backup.

write_func

The close_func parameter is the function used to write data during a backup.

close_func

The close_func parameter is the function used when ending a backup and closing a backup target.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213), DB_ENV->set_backup_callbacks() (page 283), DB_ENV->backup() (page 218), and DB_ENV->dbackup() (page 224).
DB_ENV->get_backup_config()

```c
#include <db.h>

DB_ENV->get_backup_config(DB_ENV, DB_BACKUP_CONFIG option,
        u_int32_t *valuep);
```

The `DB_ENV->get_backup_config()` method retrieves the value set for hot backup tuning parameters. See the `DB_ENV->backup()` (page 218) and `DB_ENV->dbbackup()` (page 224) methods for a description of the hot backup APIs. These tuning parameters can be set using the `DB_ENV->set_backup_config()` (page 286) method.

The `DB_ENV->get_backup_config()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->get_backup_config()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**option**

The `option` parameter identifies the backup parameter to be retrieved. It must be one of the following:

- **DB_BACKUP_WRITE_DIRECT**
  
  Turning this on causes direct I/O to be used when writing pages to the disk.

- **DB_BACKUP_READ_COUNT**
  
  Configures the number of pages to read before pausing.

- **DB_BACKUP_READ_SLEEP**
  
  Configures the number of microseconds to sleep between batches of reads.

- **DB_BACKUP_SIZE**
  
  Configures the size of the buffer, in megabytes, to read from the database.

**valuep**

The `valuep` parameter references memory into which is copied the current value of the backup tuning parameter identified by the `option` parameter.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`,

**See Also**

`Database Environments and Related Methods` (page 213), `DB_ENV->set_backup_config()` (page 286), `DB_ENV->backup()` (page 218), `DB_ENV->dbbackup()` (page 224)
The `DB_ENV->get_flags()` method returns the configuration flags set for a `DB_ENV` handle. These flags are set using the `DB_ENV->set_flags()` method.

The `DB_ENV->get_flags()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->get_flags()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

- **flagsp**

  The `DB_ENV->get_flags()` method returns the configuration flags in `flagsp`.

### Class

`DB_ENV`

### See Also

- Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
The DB_ENV->get_home() method returns the database environment home directory. This directory is normally identified when the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called.

The DB_ENV->get_home() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->get_home() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
**DB_ENV->get_intermediate_dir_mode()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->get_intermediate_dir_mode(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char **modep);
```

The `DB_ENV->get_intermediate_dir_mode()` method returns the intermediate directory permissions.

Intermediate directories are directories needed for recovery. Normally, Berkeley DB does not create these directories and will do so only if the `DB_ENV->set_intermediate_dir_mode()` (page 315) method is called.

The `DB_ENV->get_intermediate_dir_mode()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->get_intermediate_dir_mode()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **modep**

  The `DB_ENV->get_intermediate_dir_mode()` method returns a reference to the intermediate directory permissions in `modep`.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

- Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
**DB_ENV->get_memory_init()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->get_memory_init(DB_ENV *dbenv, DB_MEM_CONFIG type,
                         u_int32_t *countp);
```

The `DB_ENV->get_memory_init()` method returns the number of objects to allocate and initialize when an environment is created. The count is returned for a specific named structure. The count for each structure is set using the `DB_ENV->set_memory_init()` (page 319) method.

The `DB_ENV->get_memory_init()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->get_memory_init()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`type`

The `struct` parameter identifies the structure for which you want an object count returned. It must be one of the following values:

- **DB_MEM_LOCK**
  
  Initialize locks. A thread uses this structure to lock a page (or record for the QUEUE access method) and hold it to the end of a transactions.

- **DB_MEM_LOCKOBJECT**
  
  Initialize lock objects. For each page (or record) which is locked in the system, a lock object will be allocated.

- **DB_MEM_LOCKER**
  
  Initialize lockers. Each thread which is active in a transactional environment will use a locker structure either for each transaction which is active, or for each non-transactional cursor that is active.

- **DB_MEM_LOGID**
  
  Initialize the log fileid structures. For each database handle which is opened for writing in a transactional environment, a log fileid structure is used.

- **DB_MEM_TRANSACTION**
  
  Initialize transaction structures. Each active transaction uses a transaction structure until it either commits or aborts.
• DB_MEM_THREAD

Initialize thread identification structures. If thread tracking is enabled then each active thread will use a structure. Note that since a thread does not signal the BDB library that it will no longer be making calls, unused structures may accumulate until a cleanup is triggered either using a high water mark or by running DB_ENV->failchk() (page 232).

countp

The countp parameter references memory into which the object count for the specified structure is copied.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->get_memory_max()

#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_memory_max(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t *gbytesp,
                           u_int32_t *bytesp);

The DB_ENV->get_memory_max() method returns the maximum amount of memory to be used by shared structures other than mutexes and the page cache (memory pool). This value is set using the DB_ENV->set_memory_max() (page 321) method.

The DB_ENV->get_memory_max() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->get_memory_max() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

  gbytesp  
The gbytesp parameter references memory into which is copied the maximum number of gigabytes of memory that can be allocated.

  bytesp   
The bytesp parameter references memory into which is copied the additional bytes of memory that can be allocated.

  sizep    
The sizep parameter references memory into which is copied the maximum number of bytes to be allocated.

Class

  DB_ENV

See Also

  Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->get_metadata_dir()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->get_metadata_dir(DB_ENV *envp, const char **dirp);
```

The `DB_ENV->get_metadata_dir()` method returns the directory where persistent metadata is stored. This location can be set using the `DB_ENV->set_metadata_dir()` method.

The `DB_ENV->get_metadata_dir()` directory may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->get_metadata_dir()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`dirp`

The `dirp` parameter references memory into which is copied the directory which contains persistent metadata files.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213), `DB_ENV->set_metadata_dir()` (page 323)
The DB_ENV Handle

DB_ENV->get_msgfile()

```c
#include <db.h>

void
DB_ENV->get_msgfile(DB_ENV *dbenv, FILE **msgfilep);
```

The DB_ENV->get_msgfile() method returns the FILE * used for displaying messages. This is set using the DB_ENV->set_msgfile() (page 326) method.

The DB_ENV->get_msgfile() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Parameters**

- `msgfilep`

  The DB_ENV->get_msgfile() method returns the FILE * in `msgfilep`.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213), DB_ENV->set_msgfile() (page 326)
**DB_ENV->get_msgpfx()**

```c
#include <db.h>

void
DB_ENV->get_msgpfx(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char **msgpfxp);
```

The `DB_ENV->get_msgpfx()` method returns the information prefix that appears before informational messages issued by Berkeley DB. This prefix is set using the `DB_ENV->set_msgpfx()` method.

The `DB_ENV->get_msgpfx()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Parameters**

- **msgpfxp**

  The `DB_ENV->get_msgpfx()` method returns a reference to the informational prefix in `msgpfxp`.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

- Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->get_open_flags()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_open_flags(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t *flagsp);
```

The DB_ENV->get_open_flags() method returns the open method flags originally used to create the database environment.

The DB_ENV->get_open_flags() method may not be called before the DB_ENV->open() method is called.

The DB_ENV->get_open_flags() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

flagsp

The DB_ENV->get_open_flags() method returns the open method flags originally used to create the database environment in flagsp.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213), DB_ENV->open() (page 271)
The `DB_ENV->get_shm_key()` method returns the base segment ID. This is used for Berkeley DB environment shared memory regions created in system memory on VxWorks or systems supporting X/Open-style shared memory interfaces. It may be specified using the `DB_ENV->set_shm_key()` (page 328) method.

The `DB_ENV->get_shm_key()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->get_shm_key()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

- **shm_keyp**
  
The `DB_ENV->get_shm_key()` method returns the base segment ID in `shm_keyp`.

### Class

- **DB_ENV**

### See Also

- Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213), `DB_ENV->set_shm_key()` (page 328)

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_shm_key(DB_ENV *dbenv, long *shm_keyp);
```
The `DB_ENV->get_slices()` method returns a NULL-terminated array of slice environments. Each element in the array represents one slice.

The `DB_ENV->get_slices()` method may only be called after the environment has been opened.

The `DB_ENV->get_slices()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**slicepp**

The `DB_ENV->get_slices()` method returns a reference to a NULL-terminated array of slice environments in `slicepp`.

### Class

`DB_ENV`

### See Also

[Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)](#)
The DB_ENV->get_slice_count() method returns the number of slices configured for the environment. The number of slices is configured using the set_slice_count DB_CONFIG parameter.

The DB_ENV->get_slice_count() method may only be called after the environment has been opened.

The DB_ENV->get_slice_count() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

*nslicep*

The DB_ENV->get_slice_count() method returns the slice count in nslicep.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
**DB_ENV->get_thread_count()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_thread_count(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t *countp);
```

The `DB_ENV->get_thread_count()` method returns the thread count as set by the `DB_ENV->set_thread_count()` method.

The `DB_ENV->get_thread_count()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->get_thread_count()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- `countp`

  The `DB_ENV->get_thread_count()` method returns the thread count in `countp`.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

- Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213), `DB_ENV->set_thread_count()` (page 330)
# DB_ENV->get_timeout()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_timeout(DB_ENV *dbenv, db_timeout_t *timeoutp, 
                        u_int32_t flag);
```

The `DB_ENV->get_timeout()` method returns a value, in microseconds, representing either lock or transaction timeouts. These values are set using the `DB_ENV->set_timeout()` (page 336) method.

The `DB_ENV->get_timeout()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->get_timeout()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

## Parameters

- **timeoutp**
  
The `timeoutp` parameter references memory into which the timeout value of the specified `flag` parameter is copied.

- **flag**
  
The `flag` parameter must be set to one of the following values:
  
  - `DB_SET_LOCK_TIMEOUT`
    
    Return the timeout value for locks in this database environment.
  
  - `DB_SET_REG_TIMEOUT`
    
    Return the timeout value for how long to wait for processes to exit the environment before recovery is started. This flag only has meaning when the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method was called with the `DB_REGISTER` flag and recovery must be performed.
  
  - `DB_SET_TXN_TIMEOUT`
    
    Return the timeout value for transactions in this database environment.

## Class

`DB_ENV`

## See Also

- Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213), `DB_ENV->set_timeout()` (page 336)
DB_ENV->get_tmp_dir()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_tmp_dir(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char **dirp);
```

The DB_ENV->get_tmp_dir() method returns the database environment temporary file directory.

The DB_ENV->get_tmp_dir() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->get_tmp_dir() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **dirp**

  The DB_ENV->get_tmp_dir() method returns a reference to the database environment temporary file directory in dirp.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213), DB_ENV->set_tmp_dir() (page 339)
**DB_ENV->get_verbose()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_verbose(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t which, int *onoffp);
```

The `DB_ENV->get_verbose()` method returns whether the specified `which` parameter is currently set or not. These parameters are set using the `DB_ENV->set_verbose()` (page 341) method.

The `DB_ENV->get_verbose()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->get_verbose()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**which**

The `which` parameter is the message value for which configuration is being checked. Must be set to one of the following values:

- **DB_VERB_DEADLOCK**
  
  Display additional information when doing deadlock detection.

- **DB_VERB_FILEOPS**
  
  Display additional information when performing filesystem operations such as open, close or rename. May not be available on all platforms.

- **DB_VERB_FILEOPS_ALL**
  
  Display additional information when performing all filesystem operations, including read and write. May not be available on all platforms.

- **DB_VERB_RECOVERY**
  
  Display additional information when performing recovery.

- **DB_VERB_REGISTER**
  
  Display additional information concerning support for the `DB_REGISTER` flag to the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method.

- **DB_VERB_REPLICATION**
  
  Display all detailed information about replication. This includes the information displayed by all of the other `DB_VERB_REP_*` and `DB_VERB_REPMGR_*` values.
• DB_VERB_REP_ELECT
  Display detailed information about replication elections.

• DB_VERB_REPLEASE
  Display detailed information about replication master leases.

• DB_VERB_REPMISC
  Display detailed information about general replication processing not covered by the other
  DB_VERB_REP_* values.

• DB_VERB_REPMSGS
  Display detailed information about replication message processing.

• DB_VERB_REPSYNC
  Display detailed information about replication client synchronization.

• DB_VERB_REPSYSTEM
  Saves replication system information to a system-owned file. This value is on by default.

• DB_VERB_REPMGR_CONNFAIL
  Display detailed information about Replication Manager connection failures.

• DB_VERB_REPMGR_MISC
  Display detailed information about general Replication Manager processing.

• DB_VERB_WAITSFOR
  Display the waits-for table when doing deadlock detection.

**onoffp**

The **onoffp** parameter references memory into which the configuration of the specified **which**
parameter is copied.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->log_verify()

#include <db.h>
int
DB_ENV->log_verify(DB_ENV *dbenv, const DB_LOG_VERIFY_CONFIG *config);

The DB_ENV->log_verify() method verifies the integrity of the log records of an environment and writes both error and normal messages to the error/message output facility of the database environment handle.

The DB_ENV->log_verify() method does not perform the locking function, even in Berkeley DB environments that are configured with a locking subsystem. Because this function does not access any database files, you can call it even when the environment has other threads of control attached and running.

The DB_ENV->log_verify() method is the underlying method used by the DB_ENV->db_log_verify utility. See the DB_ENV->db_log_verify utility source code for an example of using DB_ENV->log_verify() in an IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) environment.

The DB_ENV->log_verify() method returns DB_LOG_VERIFY_BAD when either log errors are detected or the internal data storage layer does not work. It returns EINVAL if you specify wrong configurations. Unless otherwise specified, the DB_ENV->log_verify() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

config

The configuration parameter of type DB_LOG_VERIFY_CONFIG is for the verification of log files. A struct variable of this type must be memset to 0 before setting any configurations to it.

DB_LOG_VERIFY_CONFIG members

struct __db_logvrfy_config {
    int continue_after_fail, verbose;
    u_int32_t cachesize;
    const char *temp_envhome;
    const char *dbfile, *dbname;
    DB_LSN start_lsn, end_lsn;
    time_t start_time, end_time;
};

continue_after_fail

The continue_after_fail parameter specifies whether or not continue the verification process when an error in the log is detected.

verbose

The verbose parameter specifies whether or not to display verbose output during the verification process.
cachesize

The **cachesize** parameter specifies the size of the cache of the temporary internal environment in bytes.

temp_envhome

The **temp_envhome** parameter is the home directory of the temporary database environment that is used internally during the verification. It can be NULL, meaning the environment and all databases are in-memory.

dbfile

The **dbfile** parameter specifies that for log records involving a database file, only those related to this database file are verified. Log records not involving database files are verified regardless of this parameter.

dbname

The **dbname** parameter specifies that for log records involving a database file, only those related to this database file are verified. Log records not involving database files are verified regardless of this parameter.

start_lsn and end_lsn

The **start_lsn** and **end_lsn** parameters specify the range of log records from the entire log set, that must be verified. Either of them can be [0][0], to specify an open ended range. If both of them are [0][0] (by default) the entire log is verified.

start_time and end_time

The **start_time** and **end_time** parameters specify range of log records from the entire log set that must be verified for a time range. Either of them can be 0, to specify an open ended range. If both of them are 0 (by default), the entire log is verified.

Note that the time range specified is not precise, because such a time range is converted to an lsn range based on the time points we know from transaction commits and checkpoints.

You can specify either an lsn range or a time range. You can neither specify both nor specify an lsn and a time as a range.

Environment Variables

If the database is opened within a database environment, the environment variable **DB_HOME** can be used as the path of the database environment home.

Errors

The **DB_ENV->log_verify()** method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL or DB_LOG_VERIFY_BAD.
Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
The DB_ENV->lsn_reset() method allows database files to be moved from one transactional database environment to another.

Database pages in transactional database environments contain references to the environment’s log files (that is, log sequence numbers, or LSNs). Copying or moving a database file from one database environment to another, and then modifying it, can result in data corruption if the LSNs are not first cleared.

Note that LSNs should be reset before moving or copying the database file into a new database environment, rather than moving or copying the database file and then resetting the LSNs. Berkeley DB has consistency checks that may be triggered if an application calls DB_ENV->lsn_reset() on a database in a new environment when the database LSNs still reflect the old environment.

The DB_ENV->lsn_reset() method modifies the physical file, in-place. Applications should not reset LSNs in files that are currently in use.

The DB_ENV->lsn_reset() method is a non-atomic operation. If the operation fails, it is possible for the database to be in an inconsistent state.

The DB_ENV->lsn_reset() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->lsn_reset() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

- **file**
  The name of the physical file in which the LSNs are to be cleared.

- **flags**
  The flags parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:
  
  - **DB_ENCRYPT**

  The file contains encrypted databases.

### Errors

The DB_ENV->lsn_reset() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.
Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
The DB_ENV->msg() and DB->msg() (page 72) methods provide informational messaging functionality for applications written using the Berkeley DB library.

The DB->msg() (page 72) and DB_ENV->msg() (page 269) methods constructs an informational message consisting of the following elements:

- **An optional prefix string**
  
  If no informational callback function has been set using the DB_ENV->set_msgcall() (page 324) method, any prefix string specified using the DB_ENV->set_msgpfx() (page 327) method.

- **An optional printf-style message**
  
  The supplied message *fmt*, if non-NULL, in which the ANSI C X3.159-1989 (ANSI C) printf function specifies how subsequent parameters are converted for output.

This constructed informational message is then handled as follows:

- If an informational callback function has been set (see DB->set_msgcall() (page 129) and DB_ENV->set_msgcall() (page 324)), that function is called with two parameters: any prefix string specified (see DB->set_msgpfx() (page 132) and DB_ENV->set_msgpfx() (page 327)) and the informational message.

- If a C library FILE * has been set (see DB->set_msgfile() (page 131) and DB_ENV->set_msgfile() (page 326)), the informational message is written to that output stream.

- If none of these output options have been configured, the message is written to stdout, the standard output stream.

**Note**

The total length of the message written by this method, including the prefix string, can be no longer than 4096.

**Parameters**

- **fmt**
  
  The *fmt* parameter is an optional printf-style message to display.

**Class**

DB_ENV
See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->open()

#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->open(DB_ENV *dbenv, char *db_home, u_int32_t flags, int mode);

The DB_ENV->open() method opens a Berkeley DB environment. It provides a structure for creating a consistent environment for processes using one or more of the features of Berkeley DB.

The DB_ENV->open() method method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success. If DB_ENV->open() fails, the DB_ENV->close() (page 221) method must be called to discard the DB_ENV handle.

Warning

Using environments with some journaling filesystems might result in log file corruption. This can occur if the operating system experiences an unclean shutdown when a log file is being created. Please see Using Recovery on Journaling Filesystems in the Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide for more information.

Parameters

db_home

The db_home parameter is the database environment's home directory. For more information on db_home, and filename resolution in general, see Berkeley DB File Naming. The environment variable DB_HOME may be used as the path of the database home, as described in Berkeley DB File Naming.

When using a Unicode build on Windows (the default), the db_home argument will be interpreted as a UTF-8 string, which is equivalent to ASCII for Latin characters.

flags

The flags parameter specifies the subsystems that are initialized and how the application's environment affects Berkeley DB file naming, among other things. The flags parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the values described in this section.

Because there are a large number of flags that can be specified, they have been grouped together by functionality. The first group of flags indicates which of the Berkeley DB subsystems should be initialized.

The choice of subsystems initialized for a Berkeley DB database environment is specified by the thread of control initially creating the environment. Any subsequent thread of control joining the environment will automatically be configured to use the same subsystems as were created in the environment (unless the thread of control requests a subsystem not available in the environment, which will fail). Applications joining an environment, able to adapt to whatever subsystems have been configured in the environment, should open the environment without specifying any subsystem flags. Applications joining an environment, requiring specific
subsystems from their environments, should open the environment specifying those specific subsystem flags.

- **DB_INIT_CDB**

  Initialize locking for the Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store product. In this mode, Berkeley DB provides multiple reader/single writer access. The only other subsystem that should be specified with the DB_INIT_CDB flag is DB_INIT_MPOOL.

- **DB_INIT_LOCK**

  Initialize the locking subsystem. This subsystem should be used when multiple processes or threads are going to be reading and writing a Berkeley DB database, so that they do not interfere with each other. If all threads are accessing the database(s) read-only, locking is unnecessary. When the DB_INIT_LOCK flag is specified, it is usually necessary to run a deadlock detector, as well. See `db_deadlock` and `DB_ENV->lock_detect()` (page 372) for more information.

- **DB_INIT_LOG**

  Initialize the logging subsystem. This subsystem should be used when recovery from application or system failure is necessary. If the log region is being created and log files are already present, the log files are reviewed; subsequent log writes are appended to the end of the log, rather than overwriting current log entries.

- **DB_INIT_MPOOL**

  Initialize the shared memory buffer pool subsystem. This subsystem should be used whenever an application is using any Berkeley DB access method.

- **DB_INIT_REP**

  Initialize the replication subsystem. This subsystem should be used whenever an application plans on using replication. The DB_INIT_REP flag requires the DB_INIT_TXN and DB_INIT_LOCK flags also be configured.

  You can also specify this flag in the DB_CONFIG configuration file. The syntax is a single line with the string "set_open_flags", one or more whitespace characters, the string "DB_INIT_REP", optionally one or more whitespace characters and the string “on” or “off”. If the optional string is omitted, the default is “on”; for example, “set_open_flags DB_INIT_REP” or “set_open_flags DB_INIT_REP on”. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

- **DB_INIT_TXN**

  Initialize the transaction subsystem. This subsystem should be used when recovery and atomicity of multiple operations are important. The DB_INIT_TXN flag implies the DB_INIT_LOG flag.

The second group of flags govern what recovery, if any, is performed when the environment is initialized:
The DB_ENV Handle

- **DB_RECOVER**

  Run normal recovery on this environment before opening it for normal use. If this flag is set, the **DB_CREATE** and **DB_INIT_TXN** flags must also be set, because the regions will be removed and re-created, and transactions are required for application recovery.

- **DB_RECOVER_FATAL**

  Run catastrophic recovery on this environment before opening it for normal use. If this flag is set, the **DB_CREATE** and **DB_INIT_TXN** flags must also be set, because the regions will be removed and re-created, and transactions are required for application recovery.

A standard part of the recovery process is to remove the existing Berkeley DB environment and create a new one in which to perform recovery. If the thread of control performing recovery does not specify the correct region initialization information (for example, the correct memory pool cache size), the result can be an application running in an environment with incorrect cache and other subsystem sizes. For this reason, the thread of control performing recovery should specify correct configuration information before calling the **DB_ENV->open()** method; or it should remove the environment after recovery is completed, leaving creation of the correctly sized environment to a subsequent call to the **DB_ENV->open()** method.

All Berkeley DB recovery processing must be single-threaded; that is, only a single thread of control may perform recovery or access a Berkeley DB environment while recovery is being performed. Because it is not an error to specify **DB_RECOVER** for an environment for which no recovery is required, it is reasonable programming practice for the thread of control responsible for performing recovery and creating the environment to always specify the **DB_CREATE** and **DB_RECOVER** flags during startup.

The third group of flags govern file-naming extensions in the environment:

- **DB_USE_ENVIRON**

  The Berkeley DB process’ environment may be permitted to specify information to be used when naming files; see Berkeley DB File Naming. Because permitting users to specify which files are used can create security problems, environment information will be used in file naming for all users only if the **DB_USE_ENVIRON** flag is set.

- **DB_USE_ENVIRON_ROOT**

  The Berkeley DB process’ environment may be permitted to specify information to be used when naming files; see Berkeley DB File Naming. Because permitting users to specify which files are used can create security problems, if the **DB_USE_ENVIRON_ROOT** flag is set, environment information will be used in file naming only for users with appropriate permissions (for example, users with a user-ID of 0 on UNIX systems).

Finally, there are a few additional unrelated flags:

- **DB_CREATE**

  Cause Berkeley DB subsystems to create any underlying files, as necessary.
• **DB_LOCKDOWN**

Lock shared Berkeley DB environment files and memory-mapped databases into memory. If the operating systems does not support the `mlock()` system call, then this flag has no effect.

• **DB_FAILCHK**

Internally call the `DB_ENV->failchk()` (page 232) method as part of opening the environment. When `DB_FAILCHK` is specified, a check is made to ensure all `DB_ENV->failchk()` prerequisites are meet.

If the `DB_FAILCHK` flag is used in conjunction with the `DB_REGISTER` flag, then a check will be made to see if the environment needs recovery. If recovery is needed, a call will be made to the `DB_ENV->failchk()` method to release any database reads locks held by the thread of control that exited and, if needed, to abort the unresolved transaction. If `DB_ENV->failchk()` determines environment recovery is still required, the recovery actions for `DB_REGISTER` will be followed.

If the `DB_FAILCHK` flag is not used in conjunction with the `DB_REGISTER` flag, then make an internal call to `DB_ENV->failchk()` as the last step of opening the environment. If `DB_ENV->failchk()` determines database environment recovery is required, `DB_RUNRECOVERY` will be returned.

• **DB_PRIVATE**

Allocate region memory from the heap instead of from memory backed by the filesystem or system shared memory.

**Note**

Use of this flag means that the environment can only be accessed by one environment handle. The environment cannot be accessed by multiple processes. This is true even if one of those processes is one of the the Berkeley DB utilities. (For example, `db_archive`, `db_checkpoint` or `db_stat`) Nor can a single process open multiple handles to the environment.

This flag has two effects on the Berkeley DB environment. First, all underlying data structures are allocated from per-process memory instead of from shared memory that is accessible to more than a single process. Second, mutexes are only configured to work between threads.

See Shared Memory Regions for more information.

You can also specify this flag in the `DB_CONFIG` configuration file. The syntax is a single line with the string "set_open_flags", one or more whitespace characters, the string "DB_PRIVATE", optionally one or more whitespace characters and the string "on" or "off". If the optional string is omitted, the default is "on"; for example, "set_open_flags DB_PRIVATE" or 'set_open_flags DB_PRIVATE on". Because the `DB_CONFIG` file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.
• **DB_REGISTER**

Check to see if recovery needs to be performed before opening the database environment. (For this check to be accurate, all processes using the environment must specify DB_REGISTER when opening the environment.) If recovery needs to be performed for any reason (including the initial use of the DB_REGISTER flag), and DB_RECOVER is also specified, recovery will be performed and the open will proceed normally. If recovery needs to be performed and DB_RECOVER is not specified, DB_RUNRECOVERY will be returned. If recovery does not need to be performed, the DB_RECOVER flag will be ignored. See Architecting Transactional Data Store applications for more information.

• **DB_SYSTEM_MEM**

Allocate region memory from system shared memory instead of from heap memory or memory backed by the filesystem.

See Shared Memory Regions for more information.

• **DB_THREAD**

Cause the DB_ENV handle returned by DB_ENV->open() to be free-threaded; that is, concurrently usable by multiple threads in the address space. The DB_THREAD flag should be specified if the DB_ENV handle will be concurrently used by more than one thread in the process, or if any DB handles opened in the scope of the DB_ENV handle will be concurrently used by more than one thread in the process.

If this flag is specified, then any database opened using this environment handle will also be free-threaded.

Be aware that enabling this flag will serialize calls to DB when using the handle across threads. If concurrent scaling is important to your application we recommend opening separate handles for each thread (and not specifying this flag), rather than sharing handles between threads.

This flag is required when using the Replication Manager.

You can also specify this flag in the DB_CONFIG configuration file. The syntax is a single line with the string "set_open_flags", one or more whitespace characters, the string "DB_THREAD", optionally one or more whitespace characters and the string “on” or “off”. If the optional string is omitted, the default is “on”; for example, "set_open_flags DB_THREAD" or "set_open_flags DB_THREAD on". Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

**mode**

On Windows systems, the mode parameter is ignored.

On UNIX systems or in IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) environments, files created by Berkeley DB are created with mode `mode` (as described in chmod(2)) and modified by the process’ umask value at the time of creation (see umask(2)). Created files are owned by the process owner; the group ownership of created files is based on the system and directory defaults,
and is not further specified by Berkeley DB. System shared memory segments created by Berkeley DB are created with mode `mode`, unmodified by the process' umask value. If `mode` is 0, Berkeley DB will use a default mode of readable and writable by both owner and group.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->open()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_RUNRECOVERY**

Either the `DB_REGISTER` flag was specified, a failure occurred, and no recovery flag was specified, or the `DB_FAILCHK` flag was specified and recovery was deemed necessary.

**DB_VERSION_MISMATCH**

The version of the Berkeley DB library doesn't match the version that created the database environment.

**EAGAIN**

The shared memory region was locked and (repeatedly) unavailable.

**EINVAL**

If the `DB_THREAD` flag was specified and fast mutexes are not available for this architecture; The `DB_HOME` or `TMPDIR` environment variables were set, but empty; An incorrectly formatted `NAME VALUE` entry or line was found; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**ENOENT**

The file or directory does not exist.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

[Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)]
The DB_ENV->remove() method destroys a Berkeley DB environment if it is not currently in use. The environment regions, including any backing files, are removed. Any log or database files and the environment directory are not removed.

If there are processes that have called DB_ENV->open() (page 271) without calling DB_ENV->close() (page 221) (that is, there are processes currently using the environment), DB_ENV->remove() will fail without further action unless the DB_FORCE flag is set, in which case DB_ENV->remove() will attempt to remove the environment, regardless of any processes still using it.

The result of attempting to forcibly destroy the environment when it is in use is unspecified. Processes using an environment often maintain open file descriptors for shared regions within it. On UNIX systems, the environment removal will usually succeed, and processes that have already joined the region will continue to run in that region without change. However, processes attempting to join the environment will either fail or create new regions. On other systems in which the unlink(2) system call will fail if any process has an open file descriptor for the file (for example Windows/NT), the region removal will fail.

Calling DB_ENV->remove() should not be necessary for most applications because the Berkeley DB environment is cleaned up as part of normal database recovery procedures. However, applications may want to call DB_ENV->remove() as part of application shut down to free up system resources. For example, if the DB_SYSTEM_MEM flag was specified to DB_ENV->open() (page 271), it may be useful to call DB_ENV->remove() in order to release system shared memory segments that have been allocated. Or, on architectures in which mutexes require allocation of underlying system resources, it may be useful to call DB_ENV->remove() in order to release those resources. Alternatively, if recovery is not required because no database state is maintained across failures, and no system resources need to be released, it is possible to clean up an environment by simply removing all the Berkeley DB files in the database environment’s directories.

In multithreaded applications, only a single thread may call the DB_ENV->remove() method.

A DB_ENV handle that has already been used to open an environment should not be used to call the DB_ENV->remove() method; a new DB_ENV handle should be created for that purpose.

After DB_ENV->remove() has been called, regardless of its return, the Berkeley DB environment handle may not be accessed again.

The DB_ENV->remove() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.
Parameters

**db_home**

The `db_home` parameter names the database environment to be removed.

When using a Unicode build on Windows (the default), the `db_home` argument will be interpreted as a UTF-8 string, which is equivalent to ASCII for Latin characters.

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

- **DB_FORCE**

  If set, the environment is removed, regardless of any processes that may still using it, and no locks are acquired during this process. (Generally, this flag is specified only when applications were unable to shut down cleanly, and there is a risk that an application may have died holding a Berkeley DB lock.)

- **DB_USE_ENVIRON**

  The Berkeley DB process' environment may be permitted to specify information to be used when naming files; see Berkeley DB File Naming. Because permitting users to specify which files are used can create security problems, environment information will be used in file naming for all users only if the `DB_USE_ENVIRON` flag is set.

- **DB_USE_ENVIRON_ROOT**

  The Berkeley DB process' environment may be permitted to specify information to be used when naming files; see Berkeley DB File Naming. Because permitting users to specify which files are used can create security problems, if the `DB_USE_ENVIRON_ROOT` flag is set, environment information will be used in file naming only for users with appropriate permissions (for example, users with a user-ID of 0 on UNIX systems).

Errors

The `DB_ENV->remove()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EBUSY**

The shared memory region was in use and the force flag was not set.

Class

**DB_ENV**

See Also

- Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->set_alloc()

#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_alloc(DB_ENV *dbenv,
        void *(*app_malloc)(size_t),
        void *(*app_realloc)(void *, size_t),
        void (*app_free)(void *))

Set the allocation functions used by the DB_ENV and DB methods to allocate or free memory owned by the application.

There are a number of interfaces in Berkeley DB where memory is allocated by the library and then given to the application. For example, the DB_DBT_MALLOC flag, when specified in the DBT object, will cause the DB methods to allocate and reallocate memory which then becomes the responsibility of the calling application. Other examples are the Berkeley DB interfaces which return statistical information to the application: DB->stat() (page 150), DB_ENV->lock_stat() (page 380), DB_ENV->log_archive() (page 399), DB_ENV->log_stat() (page 414), DB_ENV->memp_stat() (page 448), and DB_ENV->txn_stat() (page 654). There is one method in Berkeley DB where memory is allocated by the application and then given to the library: the callback specified to DB->associate() (page 6).

On systems in which there may be multiple library versions of the standard allocation routines (notably Windows NT), transferring memory between the library and the application will fail because the Berkeley DB library allocates memory from a different heap than the application uses to free it. To avoid this problem, the DB_ENV->set_alloc() and DB->set_alloc() (page 87) methods can be used to pass Berkeley DB references to the application's allocation routines.

It is not an error to specify only one or two of the possible allocation function parameters to these interfaces; however, in that case the specified interfaces must be compatible with the standard library interfaces, as they will be used together. The functions specified must match the calling conventions of the ANSI C X3.159-1989 (ANSI C) library routines of the same name.

The DB_ENV->set_alloc() method configures operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The DB_ENV->set_alloc() method may not be called after the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called.

The DB_ENV->set_alloc() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

app_malloc

The app_malloc parameter is the application-specified malloc function.

app_realloc

The app_realloc parameter is the application-specified realloc function.
The application-specified free function.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->set_alloc() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  
  If the method was called after DB_ENV->open() (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
**DB_ENV->set_app_dispatch()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_app_dispatch(DB_ENV *dbenv,
    int (*tx_recover)(DB_ENV *dbenv,
    DBT *log_rec, DB_LSN *lsn, db_recops op));
```

Declare a function to be called during transaction abort and recovery to process application-specific log records.

The **DB_ENV->set_app_dispatch()** method configures operations performed using the specified **DB_ENV** handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The **DB_ENV->set_app_dispatch()** method may not be called after the **DB_ENV->open()** (page 271) method is called. If the database environment already exists when **DB_ENV->open()** (page 271) is called, the information specified to **DB_ENV->set_app_dispatch()** must be consistent with the existing environment or corruption can occur.

The **DB_ENV->set_app_dispatch()** method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**tx_recover**

The **tx_recover** parameter is the application's abort and recovery function. The function takes four parameters:

- **dbenv**
  
  The **dbenv** parameter is the enclosing database environment handle.

- **log_rec**
  
  The **log_rec** parameter is a log record.

- **lsn**
  
  The **lsn** parameter is a log sequence number.

- **op**
  
  The **op** parameter is one of the following values:

  - **DB_TXN_BACKWARD_ROLL**
    
    The log is being read backward to determine which transactions have been committed and to abort those operations that were not; undo the operation described by the log record.
• **DB_TXN_FORWARD_ROLL**
  
  The log is being played forward; redo the operation described by the log record.

• **DB_TXN_ABORT**
  
  The log is being read backward during a transaction abort; undo the operation described by the log record.

• **DB_TXN_APPLY**
  
  The log is being applied on a replica site; redo the operation described by the log record.

• **DB_TXN_PRINT**
  
  The log is being printed for debugging purposes; print the contents of this log record in the desired format.

The **DB_TXN_FORWARD_ROLL** and **DB_TXN_APPLY** operations frequently imply the same actions, redoing changes that appear in the log record, although if a recovery function is to be used on a replication client where reads may be taking place concurrently with the processing of incoming messages, **DB_TXN_APPLY** operations should also perform appropriate locking. The macro **DB_REDO(op)** checks that the operation is one of **DB_TXN_FORWARD_ROLL** or **DB_TXN_APPLY**, and should be used in the recovery code to refer to the conditions under which operations should be redone. Similarly, the macro **DB_UNDO(op)** checks if the operation is one of **DB_TXN_BACKWARD_ROLL** or **DB_TXN_ABORT**.

The function must return 0 on success and either **errno** or a value outside of the Berkeley DB error name space on failure.

**Errors**

The **DB_ENV->set_app_dispatch()** method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after **DB_ENV->open()** (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

**DB_ENV, DB_TXN**

**See Also**

*Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)*
DB_ENV->set_backup_callbacks()

```c
#include <db.h>

DB_ENV->set_backup_callbacks(DB_ENV,
    int (*open_func)(DB_ENV *, const char *dbname,
                     const char *target, void **handle),
    int (*write_func)(DB_ENV *, u_int32_t offset_gbytes,
                      u_int32_t offset_bytes, u_int32_t size,
                      u_int8_t *buf, void *handle),
    int (*close_func)(DB_ENV *, const char *dbname, void *handle));
```

The DB_ENV->set_backup_callbacks() method configures three callback functions which can be used by the DB_ENV->backup() (page 218) or DB_ENV->dbbackup() (page 224) methods to override their default behavior. If one callback is configured, then all three callbacks must be configured. These callbacks are required if the target parameter is set to NULL for the DB_ENV->backup() (page 218) or DB_ENV->dbbackup() (page 224) methods.

The DB_ENV->set_backup_callbacks() method configures operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The DB_ENV->set_backup_callbacks() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->set_backup_callbacks() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**open_func**

The open_func parameter is the function used when a target location is opened during a backup. This function should do whatever is necessary to prepare the backup destination for writing the data.

This function takes four parameters:

- dbenv
  
  The dbenv parameter is the enclosing database environment handle.

- dbname
  
  The dbname parameter is the name of the database being backed up.

- target
  
  The target parameter is the backup's directory destination.

- handle

This method configures the specified callback functions for the given DB_ENV handle.
The handle parameter references the handle (usually a file handle) to which the backup will be written.

**write_func**

The write_func parameter is the function used to write data during a backup. The function takes six parameters:

- **dbenv**
  
  The dbenv parameter is the enclosing database environment handle.

- **offset_gbytes**
  
  The offset_gbytes parameter specifies the number of gigabytes into the output handle where the data can should be written. This value, plus the value specified on offset_bytes, indicates the offset within the output handle where the backup should begin.

- **offset_bytes**
  
  The offset_bytes parameter specifies the number of bytes into the output handle where the data can be located. This value, plus the value specified on offset_gbytes, indicates the offset within the output handle where the backup should begin.

- **size**
  
  The size parameter specifies the number of bytes to back up from the buffer.

- **buf**
  
  The buf parameter is the buffer which contains the data to be backed up.

- **handle**
  
  The handle parameter references the handle (usually a file handle) to which the backup will be written.

**close_func**

The close_func parameter is the function used when ending a backup and closing a backup target. The function takes three parameters:

- **dbenv**
  
  The dbenv parameter is the enclosing database environment handle.

- **dbname**
  
  The dbname parameter is the name of the database that has now been backed up.

- **handle**
  
  The handle parameter references the handle (usually a file handle) to which the backup will be written.
The **handle** parameter references the handle (usually a file handle) to which the backup was written, and which now must be closed or otherwise discarded.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213), DB_ENV->get_backup_callbacks() (page 244), DB_ENV->backup() (page 218), and DB_ENV->dbbackup() (page 224).
DB_ENV->set_backup_config()

```c
#include <db.h>

DB_ENV->set_backup_config(DB_ENV, DB_BACKUP_CONFIG option, u_int32_t value);
```

The `DB_ENV->set_backup_config()` method configures tuning parameters for the hot backup APIs. See the `DB_ENV->backup()` (page 218) and `DB_ENV->dbbackup()` (page 224) methods for a description of the hot backup APIs.

The `DB_ENV->set_backup_config()` method configures operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The `DB_ENV->set_backup_config()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->set_backup_config()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**option**

The `option` parameter identifies the backup parameter to be modified. It must be one of the following:

- **DB_BACKUP_WRITE_DIRECT**
  
  Turning this on causes direct I/O to be used when writing pages to the disk. For some environments, direct I/O can provide faster write throughput, but usually it is slower because the OS buffer pool offers asynchronous activity.

  By default, this option is turned off.

- **DB_BACKUP_READ_COUNT**
  
  Configures the number of pages to read before pausing. Increasing this value increases the amount of I/O the backup process performs for any given time interval. If your application is already heavily I/O bound, setting this value to a lower number may help to improve your overall data throughput by reducing the I/O demands placed on your system.

  By default, all pages are read without a pause.

- **DB_BACKUP_READ_SLEEP**
  
  Configures the number of microseconds to sleep between batches of reads. Increasing this value decreases the amount of I/O the backup process performs for any given time interval. If your application is already heavily I/O bound, setting this value to a higher number may help to improve your overall data throughput by reducing the I/O demands placed on your system.
• **DB_BACKUP_SIZE**

  Configures the size of the buffer, in bytes, to read from the database. Default is 1 megabyte.

  **value**

  The value parameter sets the configuration value for the option identified by the option parameter. For those options which can only be turned on or off, this parameter should be set to 0 for off and 1 for on. Otherwise, set this parameter to an integer value that represents the number of units for which you are configuring the backup APIs.

**Class**

**DB_ENV**,

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213), `DB_ENV->get_backup_config()` (page 245), `DB_ENV->backup()` (page 218), `DB_ENV->dbbackup()` (page 224)
DB_ENV->set_data_dir()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->set_data_dir(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char *dir);
```

**Note**

This interface has been deprecated. You should use DB_ENV->add_data_dir() (page 216) and DB_ENV->set_create_dir() (page 291) instead.

Set the path of a directory to be used as the location of the access method database files. Paths specified to the DB->open() (page 74) function will be searched relative to this path. Paths set using this method are additive, and specifying more than one will result in each specified directory being searched for database files. If any directories are specified, database files will always be created in the first path specified.

If no database directories are specified, database files must be named either by absolute paths or relative to the environment home directory. See Berkeley DB File Naming for more information.

The database environment’s data directories may also be configured using the environment’s DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string “set_data_dir”, one or more whitespace characters, and the directory name. Note that if you use this method for your application, and you also want to use the db_recover (page 721) or db_archive (page 695) utilities, then you should create a DB_CONFIG file and set the “set_data_dir” parameter in it.

The DB_ENV->set_data_dir() method configures operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The DB_ENV->set_data_dir() method may not be called after the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called. If the database environment already exists when DB_ENV->open() (page 271) is called, the information specified to DB_ENV->set_data_dir() must be consistent with the existing environment or corruption can occur.

The DB_ENV->set_data_dir() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**dir**

The dir parameter is a directory to be used as a location for database files. This directory must currently exist at environment open time.

When using a Unicode build on Windows (the default), this argument will be interpreted as a UTF-8 string, which is equivalent to ASCII for Latin characters.
Errors

The DB_ENV->set_data_dir() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after DB_ENV->open() (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
**DB_ENV->set_data_len()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_data_len(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t bytes);
```

Limits the amount of data displayed when `DB_ENV->lock_stat_print()` (page 386) is called with the `DB_STAT_ALL` or `DB_STAT_LOCK_OBJECTS` flag.

This method is explicitly called in the `db_printlog` (page 719) and `db_dump` (page 703) utilities when using the `-D` command line option. When used in this manner it will set the maximum number of bytes to display for each key/data item. These utilities run in their own environment context.

If you want to call this method from the primary application and have it set the maximum number of bytes to display for each key/data item, then you must bring the `db_dump/db_printlog` code into the primary application and ensure that the same environment handle is used throughout.

This limit may also be configured using the environment's `DB_CONFIG` file. In this case, the limit will equally affect your application code, as well as the command line utilities noted above without modification to their code. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_data_len", one or more whitespace characters, and the limit in bytes that you want to set.

The `DB_ENV->set_data_len()` method configures operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The `DB_ENV->set_data_len()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->set_data_len()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**bytes**

The `bytes` parameter identifies the maximum number of bytes to display when dumping the database or printing the log. The value specified here must be greater than 0.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

* Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->set_create_dir()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->set_create_dir(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char *dir);
```

Sets the path of a directory to be used as the location to create the access method database files. When the DB->open() (page 74) function is used to create a file it will be created relative to this path.

If no database directories are specified, database files will be created either by absolute paths or relative to the environment home directory. See Berkeley DB File Naming for more information.

The database environment's create directory may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_create_dir", one or more whitespace characters, and the directory name.

The DB_ENV->set_create_dir() method configures operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The DB_ENV->set_create_dir() method may be called at any time.

The DB_ENV->set_create_dir() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**dir**

The `dir` parameter is a directory to be used to create database files. This directory must be one of the directories specified via a call to DB_ENV->add_data_dir() (page 216)

When using a Unicode build on Windows (the default), this argument will be interpreted as a UTF-8 string, which is equivalent to ASCII for Latin characters.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->set_create_dir() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after DB_ENV->open() (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB_ENV
See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
**DB_ENV->set_encrypt()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_encrypt(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char *passwd, u_int32_t flags);
```

Set the password used by the Berkeley DB library to perform encryption and decryption.

The `DB_ENV->set_encrypt()` method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle.

The `DB_ENV->set_encrypt()` method may not be called after the `DB_ENV->open()` method is called. If the database environment already exists when `DB_ENV->open()` is called, the information specified to `DB_ENV->set_encrypt()` must be consistent with the existing environment or an error will be returned.

The `DB_ENV->set_encrypt()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **passwd**
  
  The `passwd` parameter is the password used to perform encryption and decryption.

- **flags**
  
  The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

  - **DB_ENCRYPT_AES**

    Use the Rijndael/AES (also known as the Advanced Encryption Standard and Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) 197) algorithm for encryption or decryption.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->set_encrypt()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  If the method was called after `DB_ENV->open()` was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

- **EOPNOTSUPP**

  Cryptography is not available in this Berkeley DB release.

**Class**

- **DB_ENV**
See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
The `DB_ENV->set_event_notify()` method configures a callback function which is called to notify the process of specific Berkeley DB events.

### Note

Berkeley DB is not re-entrant. Callback functions should not attempt to make library calls (for example, to release locks or close open handles). Re-entering Berkeley DB is not guaranteed to work correctly, and the results are undefined.

The `DB_ENV->set_event_notify()` method configures operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The `DB_ENV->set_event_notify()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->set_event_notify()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**db_event_fcn**

The `db_event_fcn` parameter is the application's event notification function. The function takes three parameters:

- `dbenv`

  The `dbenv` parameter is the enclosing database environment handle.

- `event`

  The `event` parameter is one of the following values:

  - `DB_EVENT_FAILCHK_PANIC`

    The thread is about to return a `DB_RUNRECOVERY` error because a prior panic event has occurred and the thread has been marked by `DB_ENV->failchk()` (page 232) as being held by a crashed process.

  The `event_info` parameter is a pointer to a `DB_FAILCHK_PANIC_INFO` structure, which contains these fields:

  ```
  int error;
  ```
char symptom[DB_FAILURE_SYMPTOM_SIZE];

When this event is seen, the database environment has failed. All threads of control in the database environment should exit, and recovery should be run.

This event is generated only when failchk broadcasting is configured. You configured broadcasting by specifying --enable-failchk_broadcast when you compile your Berkeley DB library.

• **DB_EVENT_MUTEX_DIED**

The thread is about to return a DB_RUNRECOVERY error because a mutex it requires has been marked by DB_ENV->failchk() (page 232) as being held by a crashed process.

The event_info parameter is a pointer to a DB_MUTEX_DIED_INFO structure, which contains these fields:

- pid_t mtxdied_pid;
- db_threadid_t mtxdied_tid;
- db_mutex_t mtxdied_mtx;
- char mtxdied_desc[DB_MUTEX_DESCRIBE_STRLEN];

When this event is seen, the database environment has failed. All threads of control in the database environment should exit, and recovery should be run.

This event is generated only when failchk broadcasting is configured. You configured broadcasting by specifying --enable-failchk_broadcast when you compile your Berkeley DB library.

• **DB_EVENT_PANIC**

Errors can occur in the Berkeley DB library where the only solution is to shut down the application and run recovery (for example, if Berkeley DB is unable to allocate heap memory). In such cases, the Berkeley DB methods will return DB_RUNRECOVERY. It is often easier to simply exit the application when such errors occur rather than gracefully return up the stack.

When event is set to DB_EVENT_PANIC, the database environment has failed. All threads of control in the database environment should exit the environment, and recovery should be run.

• **DB_EVENT_REG_ALIVE**

Recovery is needed in an environment where the DB_REGISTER flag was specified on the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method and there is a process attached to the environment. The callback function is triggered once for each process attached.

The event_info parameter points to a pid_t value containing the process identifier (pid) of the process the Berkeley DB library detects is attached to the environment.

• **DB_EVENT_REG_PANIC**
Recovery is needed in an environment where the `DB_REGISTER` flag was specified on the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method. All threads of control in the database environment should exit the environment.

This event is different than the `DB_EVENT_PANIC` event because it can only be triggered when `DB_REGISTER` was specified. It can be used to distinguish between the case when a process dies in the environment and recovery is initiated versus the case when an error happened (for example, if Berkeley DB is unable to allocate heap memory).

- **DB_EVENT_REP_AUTOTAKEOVER_FAILED**

  The current subordinate process attempted to take over as the replication process, but the attempt failed.

  The replication process is the main Replication Manager process which is responsible for sending and processing most Replication Manager messages. Normally this is the first process started in a replication group, but when that process shuts down cleanly, a subordinate process will take over if one is available.

  This event means that this Replication Manager subordinate process attempted to take over as the replication process, but it failed. Replication Manager is not running locally but may be restarted by invoking `DB_ENV->repmgr_start()` (page 603).

  The `DB_EVENT_REP_AUTOTAKEOVER_FAILED` event is provided only to applications configured for the Replication Manager.

- **DB_EVENT_REP_CLIENT**

  The local site is now a replication client.

  This event is generated when the replication role changes to client, either from master or from being unset. The role is unset when an environment is first created and after an environment is recovered. This event is not generated when restarting replication in an environment that was previously a client and was opened without recovery.

- **DB_EVENT_REP_CONNECT_BROKEN**

  A previously established Replication Manager message connection between the local site and a remote site has been broken. This event supplies the EID of the remote site, and an integer error code that identifies the reason the connection was broken.

  A non-zero error code indicates an unexpected condition such as a hardware failure or a protocol error. An application might respond by emitting an informational message or passing this information to other parts of the application using the `app_private` field. A zero error code indicates that the connection was cleanly closed by the other end. Replication Manager retries broken connections periodically until they are restored.

  The `DB_EVENT_REP_CONNECT_BROKEN` event is provided only to applications configured for the Replication Manager.
- **DB_EVENT_REP_CONNECT_ESTD**
  
  A Replication Manager message connection has been established between the local site and a remote site. This event supplied the EID of the remote site.

  The `DB_EVENT_REP_CONNECT_ESTD` event is provided only to applications configured for the Replication Manager.

- **DB_EVENT_REP_CONNECT_TRY_FAILED**
  
  A Replication Manager attempt to establish a connection between the local site and a remote site has failed. This event supplies the EID of the remote site, and an integer error code that identifies the reason the connection attempt failed.

  The `DB_EVENT_REP_CONNECT_TRY_FAILED` event is provided only to applications configured for the Replication Manager.

- **DB_EVENT_REP_DUPMASTER**
  
  Replication Manager has detected a duplicate master situation, and has changed the local site to the client role as a result. If the `DB_REPMGR_CONF_ELECTIONS` (page 555) configuration parameter has been turned off, the application should now choose and assign the correct master site. If `DB_REPMGR_CONF_ELECTIONS` is turned on, the application may ignore this event.

  The `DB_EVENT_REP_DUPMASTER` event is provided only to applications configured for the Replication Manager.

- **DB_EVENT_REP_ELECTED**
  
  The local replication site has just won an election. A Base API application should call the `DB_ENV->rep_start()` (page 574) method after receiving this event, to reconfigure the local environment as a replication master.

  Replication Manager applications may safely ignore this event. The Replication Manager calls `DB_ENV->rep_start()` (page 574) automatically on behalf of the application when appropriate (resulting in firing of the `DB_EVENT_REP_MASTER` event).

- **DB_EVENT_REP_ELECTION_FAILED**
  
  Replication Manager tried to run an election to choose a master site, but the election failed due to lack of timely participation by a sufficient number of other sites. Replication Manager will automatically retry the election later. This event is for information only.

  The `DB_EVENT_REP_ELECTION_FAILED` event is provided only to applications configured for the Replication Manager.

- **DB_EVENT_REP_INIT_DONE**
  
  The local client site has completed an internal initialization procedure.
• **DB_EVENT_REP_INQUEUE_FULL**

Incoming messages will be dropped because the Replication Manager incoming queue has reached its maximum threshold.

• **DB_EVENT_REP_JOIN_FAILURE**

The local client site is unable to synchronize with a new master, possibly because the client has turned off automatic internal initialization by setting the `DB_REP_CONF_AUTOINIT` flag to 0.

• **DB_EVENT_REP_LOCAL_SITE_REMOVED**

The local site has been removed from the replication group.

The `DB_EVENT_REP_LOCAL_SITE_REMOVED` event is provided only to applications configured for the Replication Manager.

• **DB_EVENT_REP_MASTER**

The local site is now the master site of its replication group. It is the application’s responsibility to begin acting as the master environment.

This event is generated when the replication role changes to master, either from client or from being unset. The role is unset when an environment is first created and after an environment is recovered. This event is not generated when restarting replication in an environment that was previously a master and was opened without recovery.

• **DB_EVENT_REP_MASTER_FAILURE**

A Replication Manager client site has detected the loss of connection to the master site. If the `DB_REPMGR_CONF_ELECTIONS` configuration parameter is turned on, Replication Manager will automatically start an election in order to choose a new master. In this case, this event may be ignored.

When `DB_REPMGR_CONF_ELECTIONS` is turned off, the application should choose and assign a new master. Failure to do so means that your replication group has no master, and so it cannot service write requests.

The `DB_EVENT_REP_MASTER_FAILURE` event is provided only to applications configured for the Replication Manager.

• **DB_EVENT_REP_NEWMASTER**

The replication group of which this site is a member has just established a new master; the local site is not the new master. The `event_info` parameter points to an integer containing the environment ID of the new master.

• **DB_EVENT_REP_PERM_FAILED**
The Replication Manager did not receive enough acknowledgements (based on the acknowledgement policy configured with `DB_ENV->repmgr_set_ack_policy()` (page 592)) to ensure a transaction's durability within the replication group. The transaction will be flushed to the master's local disk storage for durability.

The `DB_EVENT_REP_PERM_FAILED` event is provided only to applications configured for the Replication Manager.

- **DB_EVENT_REP_SITE_ADDED**

  A new site has joined the replication group. The `event_info` parameter points to an integer containing the environment ID of the new site.

  The `DB_EVENT_REP_SITE_ADDED` event is provided only to applications configured for the Replication Manager.

- **DB_EVENT_REP_SITE_REMOVED**

  An existing remote site has been removed from the replication group. The `event_info` parameter points to an integer containing the environment ID of the site that was removed.

  The `DB_EVENT_REP_SITE_REMOVED` event is provided only to applications configured for the Replication Manager.

- **DB_EVENT_REP_STARTUPDONE**

  The replication client has completed startup synchronization and is now processing live log records received from the master.

- **DB_EVENT_WRITE_FAILED**

  A Berkeley DB write to stable storage failed.

  - **event_info**

    The `event_info` parameter may reference memory which contains additional information describing an event. By default, `event_info` is NULL; specific events may pass non-NULL values, in which case the event will also describe the memory's structure.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->set_errcall()

```c
#include <db.h>

void
DB_ENV->set_errcall(DB_ENV *dbenv, void (*db_errcall_fcn)(const DB_ENV *dbenv, const char *errpfx, const char *msg));
```

When an error occurs in the Berkeley DB library, a Berkeley DB error or an error return value is returned by the interface. In some cases, however, the errno value may be insufficient to completely describe the cause of the error, especially during initial application debugging.

The DB_ENV->set_errcall() and DB_ENV->set_errcall() (page 301) methods are used to enhance the mechanism for reporting error messages to the application. In some cases, when an error occurs, Berkeley DB will call db_errcall_fcn with additional error information. It is up to the db_errcall_fcn function to display the error message in an appropriate manner.

Setting db_errcall_fcn to NULL unconfigures the callback interface.

Alternatively, you can use the DB->set_errfile() (page 107) or DB->set_errfile() (page 303) methods to display the additional information via a C library FILE *.

This error-logging enhancement does not slow performance or significantly increase application size, and may be run during normal operation as well as during application debugging.

The DB_ENV->set_errcall() method configures operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The DB_ENV->set_errcall() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Note**

Berkeley DB is not re-entrant. Callback functions should not attempt to make library calls (for example, to release locks or close open handles). Re-entering Berkeley DB is not guaranteed to work correctly, and the results are undefined.

**Parameters**

**db_errcall_fcn**

The db_errcall_fcn parameter is the application-specified error reporting function. The function takes three parameters:

- dbenv

  The dbenv parameter is the enclosing database environment.

- errpfx
The `errpfx` parameter is the prefix string (as previously set by `DB->set_errpfx()` (page 109) or `DB_ENV->set_errpfx()` (page 305)).

- `msg`

  The `msg` parameter is the error message string.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->set_errfile()

#include <db.h>

void
DB_ENV->set_errfile(DB_ENV *dbenv, FILE *errfile);

When an error occurs in the Berkeley DB library, a Berkeley DB error or an error return value is returned by the interface. In some cases, however, the return value may be insufficient to completely describe the cause of the error especially during initial application debugging.

The DB_ENV->set_errfile() and DB->set_errfile() (page 107) methods are used to enhance the mechanism for reporting error messages to the application by setting a C library FILE * to be used for displaying additional Berkeley DB error messages. In some cases, when an error occurs, Berkeley DB will output an additional error message to the specified file reference.

Alternatively, you can use the DB_ENV->set_errcall() (page 301) or DB->set_errcall() (page 105) methods to capture the additional error information in a way that does not use C library FILE *'s.

The error message will consist of the prefix string and a colon (":") (if a prefix string was previously specified using DB->set_errpfx() (page 109) or DB_ENV->set_errpfx() (page 305) ), an error string, and a trailing <newline> character.

The default configuration when applications first create DB or DB_ENV handles is as if the DB->set_errfile() (page 107) or DB_ENV->set_errfile() methods were called with the standard error output (stderr) specified as the FILE * argument. Applications wanting no output at all can turn off this default configuration by calling the DB->set_errfile() (page 107) or DB_ENV->set_errfile() methods with NULL as the FILE * argument. Additionally, explicitly configuring the error output channel using any of the following methods will also turn off this default output for the application:

• DB_ENV->set_errfile()

• DB->set_errfile() (page 107)

• DB_ENV->set_errcall() (page 301)

• DB->set_errcall() (page 105)

This error logging enhancement does not slow performance or significantly increase application size, and may be run during normal operation as well as during application debugging.

The DB_ENV->set_errfile() method configures operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The DB_ENV->set_errfile() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.
Parameters

errmsg

The errmsg parameter is a C library FILE * to be used for displaying additional Berkeley DB error information.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->set_errpfx()

```c
#include <db.h>

void
DB_ENV->set_errpfx(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char *errpfx);
```

Set the prefix string that appears before error messages issued by Berkeley DB. The length of this string can be no longer than 200.

The DB->set_errpfx() (page 109) and DB_ENV->set_errpfx() methods do not copy the memory to which the errpfx parameter refers; rather, they maintain a reference to it. Although this allows applications to modify the error message prefix at any time (without repeatedly calling the interfaces), it means the memory must be maintained until the handle is closed.

The DB_ENV->set_errpfx() method configures operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The DB_ENV->set_errpfx() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Parameters**

- **errpfx**

  The errpfx parameter is the application-specified error prefix for additional error messages.

**Class**

- DB_ENV

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
The `DB_ENV->set_feedback()` method can be used by applications to monitor progress within these operations. When an operation is likely to take a long time, Berkeley DB will call the specified callback function with progress information.

Note

Berkeley DB is not re-entrant. Callback functions should not attempt to make library calls (for example, to release locks or close open handles). Re-entering Berkeley DB is not guaranteed to work correctly, and the results are undefined.

It is up to the callback function to display this information in an appropriate manner.

The `DB_ENV->set_feedback()` method configures operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle.

The `DB_ENV->set_feedback()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->set_feedback()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

`db_feedback_fcn`

The `db_feedback_fcn` parameter is the application-specified feedback function called to report Berkeley DB operation progress. The callback function must take three parameters:

- `dbenv`
  
  The `dbenv` parameter is a reference to the enclosing database environment.

- `opcode`
  
  The `opcode` parameter is an operation code. The `opcode` parameter may take on any of the following values:

  - `DB_RECOVER`
    
    The environment is being recovered.

- `percent`

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->set_feedback(DB_ENV *dbenv,
                       void (*db_feedback_fcn)(DB_ENV *dbenv, int opcode, int percent));
```
The `percent` parameter is the percent of the operation that has been completed, specified as an integer value between 0 and 100.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->set_flags()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->set_flags(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t flags, int onoff);
```

Configure a database environment.

The database environment's flag values may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_flags", one or more whitespace characters, and the method flag parameter as a string, and optionally one or more whitespace characters, and the string "on" or "off". If the optional string is omitted, the default is "on"; for example, "set_flags DB_TXN_NOSYNC" or "set_flags DB_TXN_NOSYNC on". Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->set_flags() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

flags

The flags parameter must be set by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

- **DB_AUTO_COMMIT**

  If set, DB handle operations for which no explicit transaction handle was specified, and which modify databases in the database environment, will be automatically enclosed within a transaction.

  Calling DB_ENV->set_flags() with this flag only affects the specified DB_ENV handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle). For consistent behavior across the environment, all DB_ENV handles opened in the environment must either set this flag or the flag should be specified in the DB_CONFIG configuration file.

  This flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life of the application.

- **DB_CDB_ALLDB**

  If set, Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store applications will perform locking on an environment-wide basis rather than on a per-database basis.

  Calling DB_ENV->set_flags() with the DB_CDB_ALLDB flag only affects the specified DB_ENV handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle). For consistent behavior across the environment, all DB_ENV handles opened in the environment must either set the DB_CDB_ALLDB flag or the flag should be specified in the DB_CONFIG configuration file.
The DB_CDB_ALLDB flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB only before the DB_ENV-
>open() (page 271) method is called.

• DB_DIRECT_DB

Turn off system buffering of Berkeley DB database files to avoid double caching.

Calling DB_ENV->set_flags() with the DB_DIRECT_DB flag only affects the specified DB_ENV handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle). For consistent behavior across the environment, all DB_ENV handles opened in the environment must either set the DB_DIRECT_DB flag or the flag should be specified in the DB_CONFIG configuration file.

The DB_DIRECT_DB flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life of the application.

• DB_HOTBACKUP_IN_PROGRESS

Set this flag prior to creating a hot backup of a database environment. If a transaction with the bulk insert optimization enabled (with the DB_TXN_BULK (page 649) flag) is in progress, setting the DB_HOTBACKUP_IN_PROGRESS flag forces a checkpoint in the environment. After this flag is set in the environment, the bulk insert optimization is disabled, until the flag is reset. Using this protocol allows a hot backup procedure to make a consistent copy of the database even when bulk transactions are ongoing. For more information, see the section on Hot Backup in the Getting Started With Transaction Processing Guide and the description of the DB_TXN_BULK (page 649) flag in the DB_ENV-
txn_begin() (page 648) method.

The db_hotbackup (page 707) utility implements the protocol described above.

• DB_DSYNC_DB

Configure Berkeley DB to flush database writes to the backing disk before returning from the write system call, rather than flushing database writes explicitly in a separate system call, as necessary. This is only available on some systems (for example, systems supporting the IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) standard O_DSYNC flag, or systems supporting the Windows FILE_FLAG_WRITE_THROUGH flag). This flag may result in inaccurate file modification times and other file-level information for Berkeley DB database files. This flag will almost certainly result in a performance decrease on most systems. This flag is only applicable to certain filesystems (for example, the Veritas VxFS filesystem), where the filesystem’s support for trickling writes back to stable storage behaves badly (or more likely, has been misconfigured).

Calling DB_ENV->set_flags() with the DB_DSYNC_DB flag only affects the specified DB_ENV handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle). For consistent behavior across the environment, all DB_ENV handles opened in the environment must either set the DB_DSYNC_DB flag or the flag should be specified in the DB_CONFIG configuration file.
The DB_DSYNC_DB flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life of
the application.

- **DB_MULTIVERSION**

  If set, all databases in the environment will be opened as if DB_MULTIVERSION is passed to
  the `DB->open()` (page 74) method. This flag will be ignored for queue databases for which
  DB_MULTIVERSION is not supported.

  Calling `DB_ENV->set_flags()` with the DB_MULTIVERSION flag only affects the specified
  `DB_ENV` handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that
  handle). For consistent behavior across the environment, all `DB_ENV` handles opened in the
  environment must either set the DB_MULTIVERSION flag or the flag should be specified in
  the `DB_CONFIG` configuration file.

  The DB_MULTIVERSION flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life
  of the application.

- **DB_NOLOCKING**

  If set, Berkeley DB will grant all requested mutual exclusion mutexes and database locks
  without regard for their actual availability. This functionality should never be used for
  purposes other than debugging.

  Calling `DB_ENV->set_flags()` with the DB_NOLOCKING flag only affects the specified
  `DB_ENV` handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that
  handle).

  The DB_NOLOCKING flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life
  of the application.

- **DB_NOMMAP**

  If set, Berkeley DB will copy read-only database files into the local cache instead of
  potentially mapping them into process memory (see the description of the `DB_ENV-
  >set_mp_mmapsize()` (page 464) method for further information).

  Calling `DB_ENV->set_flags()` with the DB_NOMMAP flag only affects the specified `DB_ENV`
  handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle). For
  consistent behavior across the environment, all `DB_ENV` handles opened in the environment
  must either set the DB_NOMMAP flag or the flag should be specified in the `DB_CONFIG`
  configuration file.

  The DB_NOMMAP flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life
  of the application.

- **DB_NOPANIC**

  If set, Berkeley DB will ignore any panic state in the database environment. (Database
  environments in a panic state normally refuse all attempts to call Berkeley DB functions,
returning DB_RUNRECOVERY.) This functionality should never be used for purposes other than debugging.

Calling DB_ENV->set_flags() with the DB_NOPANIC flag only affects the specified DB_ENV handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle).

The DB_NOPANIC flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life of the application.

- **DB_OVERWRITE**

  Overwrite files stored in encrypted formats before deleting them. Berkeley DB overwrites files using alternating 0xff, 0x00 and 0xff byte patterns. For file overwriting to be effective, the underlying file must be stored on a fixed-block filesystem. Systems with journaling or logging filesystems will require operating system support and probably modification of the Berkeley DB sources.

  Calling DB_ENV->set_flags() with the DB_OVERWRITE flag only affects the specified DB_ENV handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle).

  The DB_OVERWRITE flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life of the application.

- **DB_PANIC_ENVIRONMENT**

  If set, Berkeley DB will set the panic state for the database environment. (Database environments in a panic state normally refuse all attempts to call Berkeley DB functions, returning DB_RUNRECOVERY.) This flag may not be specified using the environment's DB_CONFIG file.

  Calling DB_ENV->set_flags() with the DB_PANIC_ENVIRONMENT flag affects the database environment, including all threads of control accessing the database environment.

  The DB_PANIC_ENVIRONMENT flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB only after the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called.

- **DB_REGION_INIT**

  In some applications, the expense of page-faulting the underlying shared memory regions can affect performance. (For example, if the page-fault occurs while holding a lock, other lock requests can convoy, and overall throughput may decrease.) If set, Berkeley DB will page-fault shared regions into memory when initially creating or joining a Berkeley DB environment. In addition, Berkeley DB will write the shared regions when creating an environment, forcing the underlying virtual memory and filesystems to instantiate both the necessary memory and the necessary disk space. This can also avoid out-of-disk space failures later on.

  Calling DB_ENV->set_flags() with the DB_REGION_INIT flag only affects the specified DB_ENV handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle). For consistent behavior across the environment, all DB_ENV handles opened in the
environment must either set the DB_REGION_INIT flag or the flag should be specified in the
DB_CONFIG configuration file.

The DB_REGION_INIT flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life
of the application.

- **DB_TIME_NOTGRANTED**

If set, database calls timing out based on lock or transaction timeout values will return
DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED instead of DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK. This allows applications to
distinguish between operations which have deadlocked and operations which have exceeded
their time limits.

Calling DB_ENV->set_flags() with the DB_TIME_NOTGRANTED flag only affects the
specified DB_ENV handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of
that handle). For consistent behavior across the environment, all DB_ENV handles opened
in the environment must either set the DB_TIME_NOTGRANTED flag or the flag should be
specified in the DB_CONFIG configuration file.

The DB_TIME_NOTGRANTED flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the
life of the application.

Note that the DB_ENV->lock_get() (page 374) and DB_ENV->lock_vec() (page 388)
methods are unaffected by this flag.

- **DB_TXN_NOSYNC**

If set, Berkeley DB will not write or synchronously flush the log on transaction commit. This
means that transactions exhibit the ACI (atomicity, consistency, and isolation) properties,
but not D (durability); that is, database integrity will be maintained, but if the application
or system fails, it is possible some number of the most recently committed transactions may
be undone during recovery. The number of transactions at risk is governed by how many log
updates can fit into the log buffer, how often the operating system flushes dirty buffers to
disk, and how often the log is checkpointed.

Calling DB_ENV->set_flags() with the DB_TXN_NOSYNC flag only affects the specified
DB_ENV handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that
handle). For consistent behavior across the environment, all DB_ENV handles opened in the
environment must either set the DB_TXN_NOSYNC flag or the flag should be specified in the
DB_CONFIG configuration file.

The DB_TXN_NOSYNC flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life
of the application.

- **DB_TXN_NOWAIT**

If set and a lock is unavailable for any Berkeley DB operation performed in the context of a
transaction, cause the operation to return DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK (or DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED
if configured using the DB_TIME_NOTGRANTED flag).
Calling `DB_ENV->set_flags()` with the `DB_TXN_NOWAIT` flag only affects the specified `DB_ENV` handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle). For consistent behavior across the environment, all `DB_ENV` handles opened in the environment must either set the `DB_TXN_NOWAIT` flag or the flag should be specified in the `DB_CONFIG` configuration file.

The `DB_TXN_NOWAIT` flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life of the application.

- **DB_TXN_SNAPSHOT**

If set, all transactions in the environment will be started as if `DB_TXN_SNAPSHOT` were passed to the `DB_ENV->txn_begin()` (page 648) method, and all non-transactional cursors will be opened as if `DB_TXN_SNAPSHOT` were passed to the `DB->cursor()` (page 171) method.

Calling `DB_ENV->set_flags()` with the `DB_TXN_SNAPSHOT` flag only affects the specified `DB_ENV` handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle). For consistent behavior across the environment, all `DB_ENV` handles opened in the environment must either set the `DB_TXN_SNAPSHOT` flag or the flag should be specified in the `DB_CONFIG` configuration file.

The `DB_TXN_SNAPSHOT` flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life of the application.

- **DB_TXN_WRITE_NOSYNC**

If set, Berkeley DB will write, but will not synchronously flush, the log on transaction commit. This means that transactions exhibit the ACI (atomicity, consistency, and isolation) properties, but not D (durability); that is, database integrity will be maintained, but if the system fails, it is possible some number of the most recently committed transactions may be undone during recovery. The number of transactions at risk is governed by how often the system flushes dirty buffers to disk and how often the log is checkpointed.

Calling `DB_ENV->set_flags()` with the `DB_TXN_WRITE_NOSYNC` flag only affects the specified `DB_ENV` handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle). For consistent behavior across the environment, all `DB_ENV` handles opened in the environment must either set the `DB_TXN_WRITE_NOSYNC` flag or the flag should be specified in the `DB_CONFIG` configuration file.

The `DB_TXN_WRITE_NOSYNC` flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life of the application.

- **DB_YIELDCPU**

If set, Berkeley DB will yield the processor immediately after each page or mutex acquisition. This functionality should never be used for purposes other than stress testing.

Calling `DB_ENV->set_flags()` with the `DB_YIELDCPU` flag only affects the specified `DB_ENV` handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle). For consistent behavior across the environment, all `DB_ENV` handles opened in the environment...
must either set the DB_YIELDCPU flag or the flag should be specified in the DB_CONFIG configuration file.

The DB_YIELDCPU flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life of the application.

**onoff**

If the **onoff** parameter is zero, the specified flags are cleared; otherwise they are set.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->set_flags()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->set_intermediate_dir_mode()

#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->set_intermediate_dir_mode(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char *mode);

By default, Berkeley DB does not create intermediate directories needed for recovery, that is, if the file /a/b/c/mydatabase is being recovered, and the directory path b/c does not exist, recovery will fail. This default behavior is because Berkeley DB does not know what permissions are appropriate for intermediate directory creation, and creating the directory might result in a security problem.

The DB_ENV->set_intermediate_dir_mode() method causes Berkeley DB to create any intermediate directories needed during recovery, using the specified permissions.

On UNIX systems or in IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) environments, created directories are owned by the process owner; the group ownership of created directories is based on the system and directory defaults, and is not further specified by Berkeley DB.

The database environment's intermediate directory permissions may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_intermediate_dir_mode", one or more whitespace characters, and the directory permissions. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->set_intermediate_dir_mode() method configures operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The DB_ENV->set_intermediate_dir_mode() method may not be called after the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called.

The DB_ENV->set_intermediate_dir_mode() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

mode

The mode parameter specifies the directory permissions.

Directory permissions are interpreted as a string of nine characters, using the character set r (read), w (write), x (execute or search), and - (none). The first character is the read permissions for the directory owner (set to either r or -). The second character is the write permissions for the directory owner (set to either w or -). The third character is the execute permissions for the directory owner (set to either x or -).

Similarly, the second set of three characters are the read, write and execute/search permissions for the directory group, and the third set of three characters are the read, write and execute/search permissions for all others. For example, the string rwx------ would
configure read, write and execute/search access for the owner only. The string `rwxrwx---` would configure read, write and execute/search access for both the owner and the group. The string `rwxr-----` would configure read, write and execute/search access for the directory owner and read-only access for the directory group.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->set_intermediate_dir_mode()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->set_isalive()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_isalive(DB_ENV *dbenv, int (*is_alive)(DB_ENV *dbenv,
    pid_t pid, db_threadid_t tid, u_int32_t flags));
```

Declare a function that returns if a thread of control (either a true thread or a process) is still running. The DB_ENV->set_isalive() method supports the DB_ENV->failchk() (page 232) method. For more information, see Architecting Data Store and Concurrent Data Store applications, and Architecting Transactional Data Store applications, both in the Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide.

The DB_ENV->set_isalive() method configures operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The DB_ENV->set_isalive() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->set_isalive() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**is_alive**

The is_alive parameter is a function which returns non-zero if the thread of control, identified by the pid and tid arguments, is still running. The function takes four arguments:

- **dbenv**
  
The dbenv parameter is the enclosing database environment handle, allowing application access to the application-private fields of that object.

- **pid**
  
The pid parameter is a process ID returned by the function specified to the DB_ENV->set_thread_id() (page 332) method.

- **tid**
  
The tid parameter is a thread ID returned by the function specified to the DB_ENV->set_thread_id() (page 332) method.

- **flags**
  
The flags parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

    - **DB_MUTEX_PROCESS_ONLY**
      
      Return only if the process is alive, the thread ID should be ignored.
Errors

The `DB_ENV->set_isalive()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

**DB_ENV**

See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
The DB_ENV Handle

DB_ENV->set_memory_init()

#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->set_memory_init(DB_ENV *dbenv, DB_MEM_CONFIG type, u_int32_t count);

This method sets the number of objects to allocate and initialize for a specified structure when an environment is created. Doing this helps avoid memory contention after startup. Using this method is optional; failure to use this method causes BDB to allocate a minimal number of structures that will grow dynamically. These structures are all allocated from the main environment region. The amount of memory in this region can be set via the DB_ENV->set_memory_max() (page 321) method. If this method is not called then memory will be limited to the initial settings or by the (deprecated) set maximum interfaces.

The database environment's initialization may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_memory_init", one or more whitespace characters, followed by the struct specification, more white space and the count to be allocated. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->set_memory_init() method must be called prior to opening the database environment. It may be called as often as needed to set the different configurations.

Parameters

type

The type parameter must be set to one of the following:

- DB_MEM_LOCK

  Initialize locks. A thread uses this structure to lock a page (or record for the QUEUE access method) and hold it to the end of a transaction.

- DB_MEM_LOCKOBJECT

  Initialize lock objects. For each page (or record) which is locked in the system, a lock object will be allocated.

- DB_MEM_LOCKER

  Initialize lockers. Each thread which is active in a transactional environment will use a locker structure either for each transaction which is active, or for each non-transactional cursor that is active.

- DB_MEM_LOGID

  Initialize the log fileid structures. For each database handle which is opened for writing in a transactional environment, a log fileid structure is used.
• **DB_MEM_TRANSACTION**

  Initialize transaction structures. Each active transaction uses a transaction structure until it either commits or aborts.

  **Note**

  Currently transaction structures are not preallocated. This setting will be used to preallocate memory and objects related to transactions such as locker structures and mutexes.

• **DB_MEM_THREAD**

  Initialize thread identification structures. If thread tracking is enabled then each active thread will use a structure. Note that since a thread does not signal the BDB library that it will no longer be making calls, unused structures may accumulate until a cleanup is triggered either using a high water mark or by running `DB_ENV->failchk()` (page 232).

  **count**

  The `count` parameter sets the number of specified objects to initialize.

  The `count` specified for locks and lock objects should be at least 5 times the number of lock table partitions. You can examine the current number of lock table partitions configured for your environment using the `DB_ENV->get_lk_partitions()` (page 354) method.

  **Errors**

  The `DB_ENV->set_memory_init()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

  **EINVAL**

  If the method was called after `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

  **Class**

  `DB_ENV`

  **See Also**

  Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->set_memory_max()

#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_memory_max(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t gbytes, u_int32_t bytes);

This method sets the maximum amount of memory to be used by shared structures in the main environment region. These are the structures used to coordinate access to the environment other than mutexes and those in the page cache (memory pool). If the region files are in memory mapped files, or if DB_PRIVATE is specified, the memory specified by this method is not allocated completely at startup. As memory is needed, the shared region will be extended or, in the case of DB_PRIVATE, more memory will be allocated using the system malloc call. For memory mapped files, a mapped region will be allocated to this size but the underlying file will only be allocated sufficient memory to hold the initial allocation of shared memory structures as set by DB_ENV->set_memory_init() (page 319).

If no memory maximum is specified then it is calculated from defaults, initial settings or (deprecated) maximum settings of the various shared structures. In the case of environments created with DB_PRIVATE, no maximum need be set and the shared structure allocation will grow as needed until the process memory limit is exhausted.

The database environment’s maximum memory may also be configured using the environment’s DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string “set_memory_max”, one or more whitespace characters, followed by the maximum to be allocated. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->set_memory_max() method must be called prior to opening the database environment.

Parameters

  gbytes

  The maximum memory is set to gbytes gigabytes plus bytes.

  bytes

  The maximum memory is set to gbytes gigabytes plus bytes.

Errors

The DB_ENV->set_memory_max() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

  EINVAL

If the method was called after DB_ENV->open() (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.
Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->set_metadata_dir()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->set_metadata_dir(DB_ENV *envp, const char *dir);
```

The `DB_ENV->set_metadata_dir()` method sets the directory where persistent metadata is stored. By default, persistent metadata is stored in the environment home directory.

When used in a replicated application, the metadata directory must be the same location for all sites within a replication group.

The `DB_ENV->set_metadata_dir()` method may not be called after the `DB_ENV->open()` method is called. The directory identified by this method must already exist when the `DB_ENV->open()` method is called. The directory identified by this method is added to the environment's list of data directories, if this directory is not already included on that list.

The database environment's metadata directory may also be configured using the environment's `DB_CONFIG` file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_metadata_dir", one or more whitespace characters, followed by the directory location. Because the `DB_CONFIG` file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The `DB_ENV->set_metadata_dir()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

```
dir
```

The `dir` parameter identifies the directory used to store persistent metadata files.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213), `DB_ENV->get_metadata_dir()` (page 252)
DB_ENV->set_msgcall()

```c
#include <db.h>

void
DB_ENV->set_msgcall(DB_ENV *dbenv,
                     void (*db_msgcall_fcn)(const DB_ENV *dbenv,
                                             const char *msgpfx,
                                             const char *msg));
```

There are interfaces in the Berkeley DB library which either directly output informational
messages or statistical information, or configure the library to output such messages when
performing other operations, for example, DB_ENV->set_verbose() (page 341) and DB_ENV-
>->stat_print() (page 344).

The DB_ENV->set_msgcall() and DB->set_msgcall() (page 129) methods are used to pass
these messages to the application, and Berkeley DB will call db_msgcall_fcn with each
message. It is up to the db_msgcall_fcn function to display the message in an appropriate
manner.

Setting db_msgcall_fcn to NULL unconfigures the callback interface.

Alternatively, you can use the DB->set_msgfile() (page 131) or DB->set_msgfile() (page 326)
methods to display the messages via a C library FILE *.

The DB_ENV->set_msgcall() method configures operations performed using the specified
DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The DB_ENV->set_msgcall() method may be called at any time during the life of the
application.

Note

Berkeley DB is not re-entrant. Callback functions should not attempt to make library
calls (for example, to release locks or close open handles). Re-entering Berkeley DB is
not guaranteed to work correctly, and the results are undefined.

Parameters

**db_msgcall_fcn**

The db_msgcall_fcn parameter is the application-specified message reporting function. The
function takes three parameters:

- **dbenv**
  
The dbenv parameter is the enclosing database environment.

- **msgpfx**
  
The msgpfx parameter is the message prefix string that appears before informational
messages. This value is the environmental default, and can be changed at any time using
DB_ENV->set_msgpfx() (page 327) or DB->set_msgpfx() (page 132).
• msg

   The msg parameter is the message string.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
There are interfaces in the Berkeley DB library which either directly output informational messages or statistical information, or configure the library to output such messages when performing other operations, for example, `DB_ENV->set_verbose()` (page 341) and `DB_ENV->stat_print()` (page 344).

The `DB_ENV->set_msgfile()` and `DB->set_msgfile()` (page 131) methods are used to display these messages for the application. In this case the message will include a trailing <newline>character.

Setting `msgfile` to NULL unconfigures the interface.

Alternatively, you can use the `DB_ENV->set_msgcall()` (page 324) or `DB->set_msgcall()` (page 129) methods to capture the additional error information in a way that does not use C library FILE *s.

The `DB_ENV->set_msgfile()` method configures operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The `DB_ENV->set_msgfile()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Parameters**

**msgfile**

The `msgfile` parameter is a C library FILE * to be used for displaying messages.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->set_msgpfx()

```
#include <db.h>

void
DB_ENV->set_msgpfx(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char *msgpfx);
```

Set the prefix string that appears before informational messages issued by Berkeley DB. The length of this string can be no longer than 200.

The DB->set_msgpfx() (page 132) and DB_ENV->set_msgpfx() methods do not copy the memory to which the msgpfx parameter refers; rather, they maintain a reference to it. Although this allows applications to modify the informational message prefix at any time (without repeatedly calling the interfaces), it means the memory must be maintained until the handle is closed.

The DB_ENV->set_msgpfx() method configures operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The DB_ENV->set_msgpfx() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Parameters**

**msgpfx**

The msgpfx parameter is the application-specified informational prefix for additional informational messages.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->set_shm_key()

#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->set_shm_key(DB_ENV *dbenv, long shm_key);

Specify a base segment ID for Berkeley DB environment shared memory regions created in
system memory on VxWorks or systems supporting X/Open-style shared memory interfaces; for
example, UNIX systems supporting `shmget(2)` and related System V IPC interfaces.

This base segment ID will be used when Berkeley DB shared memory regions are first created.
It will be incremented a small integer value each time a new shared memory region is
created; that is, if the base ID is 35, the first shared memory region created will have a
segment ID of 35, and the next one will have a segment ID between 36 and 40 or so. A
Berkeley DB environment always creates a master shared memory region; an additional shared
memory region for each of the subsystems supported by the environment (Locking, Logging,
Memory Pool and Transaction); plus an additional shared memory region for each additional
memory pool cache that is supported. Already existing regions with the same segment IDs will
be removed. See Shared Memory Regions for more information.

The intent behind this method is two-fold: without it, applications have no way to ensure
that two Berkeley DB applications don't attempt to use the same segment IDs when creating
different Berkeley DB environments. In addition, by using the same segment IDs each time
the environment is created, previously created segments will be removed, and the set of
segments on the system will not grow without bound.

The database environment’s base segment ID may also be configured using the environment's
DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string
“set_shm_key”, one or more whitespace characters, and the ID. Because the DB_CONFIG file
is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done
before that time.

The DB_ENV->set_shm_key() method configures operations performed using the specified
DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The DB_ENV->set_shm_key() method may not be called after the DB_ENV->open() (page 271)
method is called. If the database environment already exists when DB_ENV->open() (page 271)
is called, the information specified to DB_ENV->set_shm_key() must be consistent with the
existing environment or corruption can occur.

The DB_ENV->set_shm_key() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on
success.

Parameters

shm_key

The shm_key parameter is the base segment ID for the database environment.
Errors

The DB_ENV->set_shm_key() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after DB_ENV->open() (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

**DB_ENV**

See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->set_thread_count()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->set_thread_count(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t count);
```

Declare an approximate number of threads in the database environment. This method allocates resources in your environment for the threads your application will use. If you fail to properly estimate the number of threads your application will use, your application will run out of resources and errors will be returned when the application attempts to start one too many threads.

The DB_ENV->set_thread_count() method does not set the maximum number of threads but is used to determine memory sizing and the thread control block reclamation policy.

The DB_ENV->set_thread_count() method must be called prior to opening the database environment. In addition, this method must be used with the DB_ENV->failchk() (page 232) method.

If a process invokes this method without the use of DB_ENV->failchk() (page 232) the program may be unable to allocate a thread control block. This is true of the standalone Berkeley DB utility programs.

If a process has not configured an is_alive function from the DB_ENV->set_isalive() (page 317) method, and then attempts to join a database environment configured for failure checking with the DB_ENV->failchk() (page 232), DB_ENV->set_thread_id() (page 332), DB_ENV->set_isalive() (page 317) and DB_ENV->set_thread_count() methods, the program may be unable to allocate a thread control block and fail to join the environment. This is true of the standalone Berkeley DB utility programs. To avoid problems when using the standalone Berkeley DB utility programs with environments configured for failure checking, incorporate the utility's functionality directly in the application, or call the DB_ENV->failchk() (page 232) method before running the utility.

The database environment's thread count may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_thread_count", one or more whitespace characters, and the thread count. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->set_thread_count() method configures operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The DB_ENV->set_thread_count() method may not be called after the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called.

The DB_ENV->set_thread_count() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.
Parameters

- **count**

  The `count` parameter is an approximate thread count for the database environment.

Errors

The `DB_ENV->set_thread_count()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  If the method was called after `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

- **DB_ENV**

See Also

- Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->set_thread_id()

#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_thread_id(DB_ENV *dbenv,
                            void (*thread_id)(DB_ENV *dbenv, pid_t *pid, db_threadid_t *tid));

Declare a function that returns a unique identifier pair for the current thread of control. The DB_ENV->set_thread_id() method supports the DB_ENV->failchk() (page 232) method. For more information, see Architecting Data Store and Concurrent Data Store applications, and Architecting Transactional Data Store applications, both in the Berkeley DB Programmer’s Reference Guide.

The DB_ENV->set_thread_id() method configures operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The DB_ENV->set_thread_id() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->set_thread_id() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

thread_id

The thread_id parameter is a function which returns a unique identifier pair for a thread of control in a Berkeley DB application. The function takes three arguments:

• dbenv

  The dbenv parameter is the enclosing database environment handle, allowing application access to the application-private fields of that object.

• pid

  The pid points to a memory location of type pid_t, or NULL. The process ID of the current thread of control may be returned in this memory location, if it is not NULL.

• tid

  The tid points to a memory location of type db_threadid_t, or NULL. The thread ID of the current thread of control may be returned in this memory location, if it is not NULL.

Errors

The DB_ENV->set_thread_id() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.
Assigning Thread IDs

The standard system library calls to return process and thread IDs are often sufficient for this purpose (for example, getpid() and pthread_self() on POSIX systems or GetCurrentThreadID on Windows systems). However, if the Berkeley DB application dynamically creates processes or threads, some care may be necessary in assigning unique IDs. In most threading systems, process and thread IDs are available for re-use as soon as the process or thread exits. If a new process or thread is created between the time of process or thread exit, and the DB_ENV->failchk() (page 232) method is run, it may be possible for DB_ENV->failchk() (page 232) to not detect that a thread of control exited without properly releasing all Berkeley DB resources.

It may be possible to handle this problem by inhibiting process or thread creation between thread of control exit and calling the DB_ENV->failchk() (page 232) method. Alternatively, the thread_id function must be constructed to not re-use pid/tid pairs. For example, in a single process application, the returned process ID might be used as an incremental counter, with the returned thread ID set to the actual thread ID. Obviously, the is_alive function specified to the DB_ENV->set_isalive() (page 317) method must be compatible with any thread_id function specified to DB_ENV->set_thread_id().

The db_threadid_t type is configured to be the same type as a standard thread identifier, in Berkeley DB configurations where this type is known (for example, systems supporting pthread_t or thread_t, or DWORD on Windows). If the Berkeley DB configuration process is unable to determine the type of a standard thread identifier, the db_thread_t type is set to uintmax_t (or the largest available unsigned integral type, on systems lacking the uintmax_t type). Applications running on systems lacking a detectable standard thread type, and which are also using thread APIs where a thread identifier is not an integral value and so will not fit into the configured db_threadid_t type, must either translate between the db_threadid_t type and the thread identifier (mapping the thread identifier to a unique identifier of the appropriate size), or modify the Berkeley DB sources to use an appropriate db_threadid_t type. Note: we do not currently know of any systems where this is necessary. If your application has to solve this problem, please contact our support group and let us know.

If no thread_id function is specified by the application, the Berkeley DB library will identify threads of control by using the taskIdSelf() call on VxWorks, the getpid() and GetCurrentThreadID() calls on Windows, the getpid() and pthread_self() calls when the Berkeley DB library has been configured for POSIX pthreads or Solaris LWP threads, the getpid() and thr_self() calls when the Berkeley DB library has been configured for UI threads, and otherwise getpid().

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->set_thread_id_string()

#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_thread_id_string(DB_ENV *dbenv, 
    char *(*thread_id_string)(DB_ENV *dbenv, 
    pid_t pid, db_threadid_t tid, char *buf));

Declare a function that formats a process ID and thread ID identifier pair for display into a 
caller-supplied buffer. The function must return a reference to the caller-specified buffer. The 
DB_ENV->set_thread_id_string() method supports the DB_ENV->set_thread_id() (page 332) 
method.

The DB_ENV->set_thread_id_string() method configures operations performed using 
the specified DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database 
environment.

The DB_ENV->set_thread_id_string() method may be called at any time during the life of 
the application.

The DB_ENV->set_thread_id_string() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 
0 on success.

Parameters

thread_id_string

The thread_id_string parameter is a function which returns a buffer in which is an identifier 
pair formatted for display. The function takes four arguments:

• dbenv

The dbenv parameter is the enclosing database environment handle, allowing application 
access to the application-private fields of that object.

• pid

The pid argument is a process ID.

• tid

The tid argument is a thread ID.

• buf

The buf argument is character array of at least DB_THREADID_STRLEN bytes in length, into 
which the identifier pair should be formatted.

If no thread_id_string function is specified, the default routine displays the identifier pair 
as "pid/tid", that is, the process ID represented as an unsigned integer value, a slash ('/') 
character, then the thread ID represented as an unsigned integer value.
Errors

The DB_ENV->set_thread_id_string() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
The DB_ENV->set_timeout() method sets timeout values for locks or transactions in the database environment, and the wait time for a process to exit the environment when DB_REGISTER recovery is needed.

DB_SET_LOCK_TIMEOUT and DB_SET_TXN_TIMEOUT timeouts are checked whenever a thread of control blocks on a lock or when deadlock detection is performed. In the case of DB_SET_LOCK_TIMEOUT, the lock is one requested explicitly through the Lock subsystem interfaces. In the case of DB_SET_TXN_TIMEOUT, the lock is one requested on behalf of a transaction. In either case, it may be a lock requested by the database access methods underlying the application. These timeouts are only checked when the lock request first blocks or when deadlock detection is performed. The accuracy of the timeout depends on how often deadlock detection is performed.

Lock and transaction timeout values specified for the database environment may be overridden on a per-lock or per-transaction basis. See DB_ENV->lock_vec() (page 388) and DB_TXN->set_timeout() (page 671) for more information.

The DB_ENV->set_timeout() method may not be used in a database environment without a locking subsystem.

The DB_ENV->set_timeout() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->set_timeout() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

timeout

The timeout parameter is the timeout value. It must be specified as an unsigned 32-bit number of microseconds, limiting the maximum timeout to roughly 71 minutes.

flags

The flags parameter must be set to one of the following values:

- DB_SET_LOCK_TIMEOUT

  Set the timeout value for locks in this database environment.

  The database environment’s lock timeout value may also be configured using the environment’s DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_lock_timeout", one or more whitespace characters, and the lock timeout value specified as an unsigned 32-bit number of microseconds.
value. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

This flag configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

- **DB_SET_MUTEX_FAILCHK_TIMEOUT**

  If failchk broadcasting has been configured, then set the timeout value on how long a thread will wait for a mutex lock before checking whether DB_ENV->failchk() (page 232) has marked the mutex as failed. The default is to check once every second.

  This wait timeout value may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string “set_mutex_failchk_timeout”, one or more whitespace characters, and the wait timeout value. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

  This flag configures operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

- **DB_SET_REG_TIMEOUT**

  Set the timeout value on how long to wait for processes to exit the environment before recovery is started when the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method was called with the DB_REGISTER flag and recovery must be performed.

  This wait timeout value may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string “set_reg_timeout”, one or more whitespace characters, and the wait timeout value. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

  This flag configures operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

- **DB_SET_TXN_TIMEOUT**

  Set the timeout value for transactions in this database environment.

  The database environment’s transaction timeout value may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string “set_txn_timeout”, one or more whitespace characters, and the transaction timeout value. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

  This flag configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->set_timeout() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:
EINVAL

DB_SET_MUTEX_FAILCHK_TIMEOUT was specified even though Berkeley DB was not configured with --enable-failchk_broadcast; an invalid flag value or parameter was specified;

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->set_tmp_dir()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_tmp_dir(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char *dir);
```

Specify the path of a directory to be used as the location of temporary files. The files created to back in-memory access method databases will be created relative to this path. These temporary files can be quite large, depending on the size of the database.

If no directories are specified, the following alternatives are checked in the specified order. The first existing directory path is used for all temporary files.

1. The value of the environment variable `TMPDIR`.
2. The value of the environment variable `TEMP`.
3. The value of the environment variable `TMP`.
4. The value of the environment variable `TempFolder`.
5. The value returned by the `GetTempPath` interface.
6. The directory `/var/tmp`.
7. The directory `/usr/tmp`.
8. The directory `/temp`.
9. The directory `/tmp`.
10. The directory `C:/temp`.
11. The directory `C:/tmp`.

**Note**

Environment variables are only checked if one of the `DB_USE_ENVIRON` or `DB_USE_ENVIRON_ROOT` flags were specified.

**Note**

The `GetTempPath` interface is only checked on Win/32 platforms.

The database environment's temporary file directory may also be configured using the environment's `DB_CONFIG` file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_tmp_dir", one or more whitespace characters, and the directory name. Because the `DB_CONFIG` file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The `DB_ENV->set_tmp_dir()` method configures operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.
The DB_ENV->set_tmp_dir() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**dir**

The `dir` parameter is the directory to be used to store temporary files. This directory must currently exist at environment open time.

When using a Unicode build on Windows (the default), the this argument will be interpreted as a UTF-8 string, which is equivalent to ASCII for Latin characters.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->set_tmp_dir() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after DB_ENV->open() (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
The DB_ENV->set_verbose() method turns specific additional informational and debugging messages in the Berkeley DB message output on and off. To see the additional messages, verbose messages must also be configured for the application. For more information on verbose messages, see the DB_ENV->set_msgfile() (page 326) method.

The database environment's messages may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_verbose", one or more whitespace characters, and the method which parameter as a string and optionally one or more whitespace characters, and the string "on" or "off". If the optional string is omitted, the default is "on"; for example, "set_verbose DB_VERB_RECOVERY" or "set_verbose DB_VERB_RECOVERY on". Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->set_verbose() method configures operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The DB_ENV->set_verbose() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->set_verbose() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**which**

The which parameter must be set to one of the following values:

- **DB_VERB_DEADLOCK**
  
  Display additional information when doing deadlock detection.

- **DB_VERB_FILEOPS**
  
  Display additional information when performing filesystem operations such as open, close or rename. May not be available on all platforms.

- **DB_VERB_FILEOPS_ALL**
  
  Display additional information when performing all filesystem operations, including read and write. May not be available on all platforms.

- **DB_VERB_RECOVERY**
  
  Display additional information when performing recovery.
• **DB_VERB_REGISTER**
  Display additional information concerning support for the `DB_REGISTER` flag to the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method.

• **DB_VERB_REPLICATION**
  Display all detailed information about replication. This includes the information displayed by all of the other `DB_VERB_REP_*` and `DB_VERB_REPMGR_*` values.

• **DB_VERB_REP_ELECT**
  Display detailed information about replication elections.

• **DB_VERB_REP_LEASE**
  Display detailed information about replication master leases.

• **DB_VERB_REP_MISC**
  Display detailed information about general replication processing not covered by the other `DB_VERB_REP_*` values.

• **DB_VERB_REP_MSGS**
  Display detailed information about replication message processing.

• **DB_VERB_REP_SYNC**
  Display detailed information about replication client synchronization.

• **DB_VERB_REP_SYSTEM**
  Saves replication system information to a system-owned file. This value is on by default.

• **DB_VERB_REPMGR_CONNFAIL**
  Display detailed information about Replication Manager connection failures.

• **DB_VERB_REPMGR_MISC**
  Display detailed information about general Replication Manager processing.

• **DB_VERB_SLICE**
  Display detailed information about sliced databases.

• **DB_VERB_WAITSFOR**
  Display the waits-for table when doing deadlock detection.

**onoff**

If the **onoff** parameter is set to non-zero, the additional messages are output.
Errors

The `DB_ENV->setVerbose()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
### DB_ENV->stat_print()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->stat_print(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t flags);
```

The DB_ENV->stat_print() method displays the default statistical information. The information is printed to a specified output channel (see the DB_ENV->set_msgfile() (page 326) method for more information), or passed to an application callback function (see the DB_ENV->set_msgcall() (page 324) method for more information).

The DB_ENV->stat_print() method may not be called before the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called.

The DB_ENV->stat_print() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

For Berkeley DB SQL environment statistics, see Command Line Features Unique to dbsql (page 733).

#### Parameters

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

- **DB_STAT_ALL**
  
  Display all available information.

- **DB_STATALLOC**
  
  Display allocation information. To display allocation information, both DB_STAT_ALLOC and DB_STAT_ALL need to be set.

- **DB_STAT_CLEAR**
  
  Reset statistics after displaying their values.

- **DB_STAT_SUBSYSTEM**
  
  Display information for all configured subsystems.

#### Class

DB_ENV

#### See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
db_strerror

```c
#include <db.h>

char *
db_strerror(int error);
```

The `db_strerror()` method returns an error message string corresponding to the error number `error` parameter.

This function is a superset of the ANSI C X3.159-1989 (ANSI C) `strerror(3)` function. If the error number `error` is greater than or equal to 0, then the string returned by the system function `strerror(3)` is returned. If the error number is less than 0, an error string appropriate to the corresponding Berkeley DB library error is returned. See Error returns to applications for more information.

**Parameters**

- `error`

The `error` parameter is the error number for which an error message string is wanted.

**Class**

- `DB_ENV`

**See Also**

- Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
**db_version**

```c
#include <db.h>

char *
db_version(int *major, int *minor, int *patch);
```

The `db_version()` method returns a pointer to a string, suitable for display, containing Berkeley DB version information. For a method that returns this information as well as Oracle release numbers, see `db_full_version (page 236).

**Parameters**

**major**

If `major` is non-NULL, the major version of the Berkeley DB release is copied to the memory to which it refers.

**minor**

If `minor` is non-NULL, the minor version of the Berkeley DB release is copied to the memory to which it refers.

**patch**

If `patch` is non-NULL, the patch version of the Berkeley DB release is copied to the memory to which it refers.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

`Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)`
Chapter 6. The DB_LOCK Handle

```c
#include <db.h>

typedef struct __db_lock_u DB_LOCK;
```

The locking interfaces for the Berkeley DB database environment are methods of the DB_ENV handle. The DB_LOCK object is the handle for a single lock, and has no methods of its own.
Locking Subsystem and Related Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Locking Subsystem and Related Methods</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;lock_detect()</td>
<td>Perform deadlock detection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;lock_get()</td>
<td>Acquire a lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;lock_id()</td>
<td>Acquire a locker ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;lock_id_free()</td>
<td>Release a locker ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;lock_put()</td>
<td>Release a lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;lock_stat()</td>
<td>Return lock subsystem statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;lock_stat_print()</td>
<td>Print lock subsystem statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;lock_vec()</td>
<td>Acquire/release locks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;cdsgroup_begin()</td>
<td>Get a locker ID in Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Locking Subsystem Configuration

| DB_ENV->set_timeout(), DB_ENV->get_timeout() | Set/get lock and transaction timeout |
| DB_ENV->set_lk_conflicts(), DB_ENV->get_lk_conflicts() | Set/get lock conflicts matrix |
| DB_ENV->set_lk_detect(), DB_ENV->get_lk_detect() | Set/get automatic deadlock detection |
| DB_ENV->set_lk_max_lockers(), DB_ENV->get_lk_max_lockers() | Set/get maximum number of lockers |
| DB_ENV->set_lk_max_locks(), DB_ENV->get_lk_max_locks() | Set/get maximum number of locks |
| DB_ENV->set_lk_max_objects(), DB_ENV->get_lk_max_objects() | Set/get maximum number of lock objects |
| DB_ENV->set_lk_partitions(), DB_ENV->get_lk_partitions() | Set/get number of lock partitions |
| DB_ENV->set_lk_priority(), DB_ENV->get_lk_priority() | Set/get a locker's deadlock priority |
| DB_ENV->set_lk_tablesize(), DB_ENV->get_lk_tablesize() | Set/get size of the lock object hash table |
DB_ENV->get_lk_conflicts()

#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_lk_conflicts(DB_ENV *dbenv,
     const u_int8_t **lk_conflictsp, int *lk_modesp);

The DB_ENV->get_lk_conflicts() method returns the current conflicts array. You can specify a conflicts array using DB_ENV->set_lk_conflicts() (page 357).

The DB_ENV->get_lk_conflicts() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->get_lk_conflicts() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

lk_conflictsp
The lk_conflictsp parameter references memory into which a pointer to the current conflicts array is copied.

lk_modesp
The lk_modesp parameter references memory into which the size of the current conflicts array is copied.

Errors

The DB_ENV->get_lk_conflicts() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL
The method was called on an environment which had been opened without being configured for locking.

Class

DB_ENV, DB_LOCK

See Also

Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348), DB_ENV->set_lk_conflicts() (page 357)
**DB_ENV->get_lk_detect()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_lk_detect(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t *lk_detectp);
```

The `DB_ENV->get_lk_detect()` method returns the deadlock detector configuration. You can manage this using the `DB_ENV->set_lk_detect()` (page 359) method.

The `DB_ENV->get_lk_detect()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->get_lk_detect()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`lk_detectp`  
The `DB_ENV->get_lk_detect()` method returns the deadlock detector configuration in `lk_detectp`.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->get_lk_detect()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**  
The method was called on an environment which had been opened without being configured for locking.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_LOCK`

**See Also**

Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348), `DB_ENV->set_lk_detect()` (page 359)
The DB_ENV->get_lk_max_lockers() method returns the maximum number of potential lockers. You can configure this using the DB_ENV->set_lk_max_lockers() (page 361) method.

The DB_ENV->get_lk_max_lockers() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->get_lk_max_lockers() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

lk_maxp

The DB_ENV->get_lk_max_lockers() method returns the maximum number of lockers in lk_maxp.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->get_lk_max_lockers() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

The method was called on an environment which had been opened without being configured for locking.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_LOCK

**See Also**

Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348), DB_ENV->set_lk_max_lockers() (page 361)
The `DB_ENV->get_lk_max_locks()` method returns the maximum number of potential locks. You can configure this using the `DB_ENV->set_lk_max_locks()` (page 363) method.

The `DB_ENV->get_lk_max_locks()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->get_lk_max_locks()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

- **lk_maxp**

  The `DB_ENV->get_lk_max_locks()` method returns the maximum number of locks in `lk_maxp`.

### Errors

The `DB_ENV->get_lk_max_locks()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  The method was called on an environment which had been opened without being configured for locking.

### Class

- `DB_ENV`, `DB_LOCK`

### See Also

- Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348), `DB_ENV->set_lk_max_locks()` (page 363)
The DB_ENV->get_lk_max_objects() method returns the maximum number of locked objects. You can configure this using the DB_ENV->set_lk_max_objects() (page 365) method.

The DB_ENV->get_lk_max_objects() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->get_lk_max_objects() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

lk_maxp

The DB_ENV->get_lk_max_objects() method returns the maximum number of potentially locked objects in lk_maxp.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->get_lk_max_objects() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

The method was called on an environment which had been opened without being configured for locking.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_LOCK

**See Also**

Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348), DB_ENV->set_lk_max_objects() (page 365)
**DB_ENV->get_lk_partitions()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_lk_partitions(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t *lk_partitions);
```

The `DB_ENV->get_lk_partitions()` method returns the number of lock table partitions used in the Berkeley DB environment. You can configure this using the `DB_ENV->set_lk_partitions()` method.

The `DB_ENV->get_lk_partitions()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->get_lk_partitions()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **lk_partitions**

The `DB_ENV->get_lk_partitions()` method returns the number of partitions in `lk_partitions`.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->get_lk_partitions()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  The method was called on an environment which had been opened without being configured for locking.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_LOCK`

**See Also**

- [Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348)]
- [DB_ENV->set_lk_partitions() (page 367)]
DB_ENV->get_lk_priority()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->get_lk_priority(DB_ENV *dbenv,
            u_int32_t lockerid, u_int32_t *priority);
```

Get the deadlock priority for the given locker.

**Parameters**

**lockerid**

The `lockerid` parameter represents a locker returned by `envM;lock_id()`.

**priority**

Upon return, the `priority` parameter will point to a value between 0 and 2^32-1.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->get_lk_priority()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_LOCK`

**See Also**

Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348), `DB_ENV->set_lk_priority()` (page 369)
The `DB_ENV->get_lk_tablesize()` method returns the size of the lock object hash table in the Berkeley DB environment. This value is set using the `DB_ENV->set_lk_tablesize()` (page 370) method.

The `DB_ENV->get_lk_tablesize()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->get_lk_tablesize()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`tablesizep`

The `tablesizep` parameter references memory into which is copied the size of the lock object hash table configured for the Berkeley DB environment.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_LOCK`

**See Also**

`Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348)`
DB_ENV->set_lk_conflicts()

#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->set_lk_conflicts(DB_ENV *dbenv,
               u_int8_t *conflicts, int nmodes);

Set the locking conflicts matrix.

If DB_ENV->set_lk_conflicts() is never called, a standard conflicts array is used; see
Standard Lock Modes for more information.

The DB_ENV->set_lk_conflicts() method configures a database environment, not only
operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

The DB_ENV->set_lk_conflicts() method may not be called after the DB_ENV-
>open() (page 271) method is called. If the database environment already exists
when DB_ENV->open() (page 271) is called, the information specified to DB_ENV-
>set_lk_conflicts() will be ignored.

The DB_ENV->set_lk_conflicts() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on
success.

Parameters

conflicts

The conflicts parameter is the new locking conflicts matrix. The conflicts parameter is an
nmodes by nmodes array. A non-0 value for the array element indicates that requested_mode
and held_mode conflict:

conflicts[requested_mode][held_mode]

The not-granted mode must be represented by 0.

nmodes

The nmodes parameter is the size of the lock conflicts matrix.

Errors

The DB_ENV->set_lk_conflicts() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero
errors:

EINVAL

If the method was called after DB_ENV->open() (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag
value or parameter was specified.

ENOMEM

The conflicts array could not be copied.
Class

DB_ENV, DB_LOCK

See Also

Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348)
DB_ENV->set_lk_detect()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_lk_detect(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t detect);
```

Set if the deadlock detector is to be run whenever a lock conflict occurs, and specify what lock request(s) should be rejected. As transactions acquire locks on behalf of a single locker ID, rejecting a lock request associated with a transaction normally requires the transaction be aborted.

The database environment's deadlock detector configuration may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_lk_detect", one or more whitespace characters, and the method `detect` parameter as a string; for example, "set_lk_detect DB_LOCK_OLDEST". Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->set_lk_detect() method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

The DB_ENV->set_lk_detect() method may be called either before or after environment open, but once it is set it may not be changed again during the environment's lifetime.

The DB_ENV->set_lk_detect() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`detect`

The `detect` parameter configures the deadlock detector. The deadlock detector will reject the lock request with the lowest priority. If multiple lock requests have the lowest priority, then the `detect` parameter is used to select which of those lock requests to reject. The specified value must be one of the following list:

- **DB_LOCK_DEFAULT**
  
  Use whatever lock policy was specified when the database environment was created. If no lock policy has yet been specified, set the lock policy to DB_LOCK_RANDOM.

- **DB_LOCK_EXPIRE**
  
  Reject lock requests which have timed out. No other deadlock detection is performed.

- **DB_LOCK_MAXLOCKS**
  
  Reject the lock request for the locker ID with the most locks.

- **DB_LOCK_MAXWRITE**
Reject the lock request for the locker ID with the most write locks.

- DB_LOCK_MINLOCKS
  Reject the lock request for the locker ID with the fewest locks.

- DB_LOCK_MINWRITE
  Reject the lock request for the locker ID with the fewest write locks.

- DB_LOCK_OLDEST
  Reject the lock request for the locker ID with the oldest lock.

- DB_LOCK_RANDOM
  Reject the lock request for a random locker ID.

- DB_LOCK_YOUNGEST
  Reject the lock request for the locker ID with the youngest lock.

Errors

The DB_ENV->set_lk_detect() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL
An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV, DB_LOCK

See Also

Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348)
**DB_ENV->set_lk_max_lockers()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->set_lk_max_lockers(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t max);
```

This method is deprecated. Instead, use `DB_ENV->set_memory_init()` (page 319), `DB_ENV->set_memory_max()` (page 321), and `DB_ENV->set_lk_tablesize()` (page 370).

Sets the maximum number of locking entities supported by the Berkeley DB environment. This value is used by `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) to estimate how much space to allocate for various lock-table data structures. The default value is 1000 lockers. For specific information on configuring the size of the lock subsystem, see Configuring locking: sizing the system.

The database environment's maximum number of lockers may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_lk_max_lockers", one or more whitespace characters, and the number of lockers. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The `DB_ENV->set_lk_max_lockers()` method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle.

The `DB_ENV->set_lk_max_lockers()` method may not be called after the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method is called. If the database environment already exists when `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) is called, the information specified to `DB_ENV->set_lk_max_lockers()` will be ignored.

The `DB_ENV->set_lk_max_lockers()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **max**

  The `max` parameter is the maximum number simultaneous locking entities supported by the Berkeley DB environment.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->set_lk_max_lockers()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  If the method was called after `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_LOCK`
See Also

Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348)
DB_ENV->set_lk_max_locks()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_lk_max_locks(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t max);
```

This method is deprecated. Instead, use DB_ENV->set_memory_init() (page 319), DB_ENV->set_memory_max() (page 321), and DB_ENV->set_lk_tablesize() (page 370).

Set the maximum number of locks supported by the Berkeley DB environment. This value is used by DB_ENV->open() (page 271) to estimate how much space to allocate for various lock-table data structures. The default value is 1000 locks. The final value specified for the locks should be more than or equal to the number of lock table partitions. For specific information on configuring the size of the lock subsystem, see Configuring locking: sizing the system.

The database environment's maximum number of locks may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_lk_max_locks", one or more whitespace characters, and the number of locks. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->set_lk_max_locks() method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

The DB_ENV->set_lk_max_locks() method may not be called after the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called. If the database environment already exists when DB_ENV->open() (page 271) is called, the information specified to DB_ENV->set_lk_max_locks() will be ignored.

The DB_ENV->set_lk_max_locks() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **max**
  
The `max` parameter is the maximum number of locks supported by the Berkeley DB environment.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->set_lk_max_locks() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  
If the method was called after DB_ENV->open() (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

- DB_ENV, DB_LOCK
See Also

Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348)
DB_ENV->set_lk_max_objects()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_lk_max_objects(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t max);
```

This method is deprecated. Instead, use DB_ENV->set_memory_init() (page 319), DB_ENV->set_memory_max() (page 321), and DB_ENV->set_lk_tablesize() (page 370).

Set the maximum number of locked objects supported by the Berkeley DB environment. This value is used by DB_ENV->open() (page 271) to estimate how much space to allocate for various lock-table data structures. The default value is 1000 objects. The final value specified for the lock objects should be more than or equal to the number of lock table partitions. For specific information on configuring the size of the lock subsystem, see Configuring locking: sizing the system.

The database environment's maximum number of objects may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_lk_max_objects", one or more whitespace characters, and the number of objects. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->set_lk_max_objects() method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

The DB_ENV->set_lk_max_objects() method may not be called after the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called. If the database environment already exists when DB_ENV->open() (page 271) is called, the information specified to DB_ENV->set_lk_max_objects() will be ignored.

The DB_ENV->set_lk_max_objects() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**max**

The `max` parameter is the maximum number of locked objects supported by the Berkeley DB environment.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->set_lk_max_objects() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after DB_ENV->open() (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.
Class

DB_ENV, DB_LOCK

See Also

Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348)
The DB_ENV->set_lk_partitions() method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

The DB_ENV->set_lk_partitions() method may not be called after the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called. If the database environment already exists when DB_ENV->open() (page 271) is called, the information specified to DB_ENV->set_lk_partitions() will be ignored.

The DB_ENV->set_lk_partitions() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

partitions

The partitions parameter is the number of partitions to be configured in the Berkeley DB environment.

Errors

The DB_ENV->set_lk_partitions() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL

If the method was called after DB_ENV->open() (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV, DB_LOCK
See Also

Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348)
**DB_ENV->set_lk_priority()**

```
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_lk_priority(DB_ENV *dbenv,
                            u_int32_t lockerid, u_int32_t priority);
```

Set the priority of the given locker. This value is used when resolving deadlocks, the deadlock resolution algorithm will reject a lock request from a locker with a lower priority before a request from a locker with a higher priority.

By default, all lockers are created with a priority of 100.

The `DB_ENV->set_lk_priority()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->set_lk_priority()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **lockerid**
  The `lockerid` parameter represents a locker returned by `DB_ENV->lock_id()`.

- **priority**
  The `priority` parameter must be a value between 0 and $2^{32}-1$.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->set_lk_priority()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

- `DB_ENV`, `DB_LOCK`

**See Also**

- Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348)
DB_ENV->set_lk_tablesize()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_lk_tablesize(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t tablesiz);
```

Sets the number of buckets in the lock object hash table in the Berkeley DB environment. The default value is estimated based on defaults, initial and (deprecated) maximum settings of the number of lock objects allocated. The maximum memory allocation is also considered. The table is generally set to be close to the number of lock objects in the system to avoid collisions and delay in processing lock operations.

The database environment's tablesiz may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_lk_tablesize", one or more whitespace characters, and the size of the table. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->set_lk_tablesize() method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

The DB_ENV->set_lk_tablesize() method may not be called after the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called. If the database environment already exists when DB_ENV->open() (page 271) is called, the information specified to DB_ENV->set_lk_tablesize() will be ignored.

The DB_ENV->set_lk_tablesize() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **tablesiz**

  The tablesiz parameter provides the size of the lock object hash table to be configured in the Berkeley DB environment.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->set_lk_tablesize() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  If the method was called after DB_ENV->open() (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_LOCK
See Also

Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348)
The DB_ENV->lock_detect() method runs one iteration of the deadlock detector. The deadlock detector traverses the lock table and marks one of the participating lock requesters for rejection in each deadlock it finds.

The DB_ENV->lock_detect() method is the underlying method used by the db_deadlock utility. See the db_deadlock utility source code for an example of using DB_ENV->lock_detect() in a IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) environment.

The DB_ENV->lock_detect() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

flags

The flags parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

atype

The atype parameter specifies which lock request(s) to reject. The deadlock detector will reject the lock request with the lowest priority. If multiple lock requests have the lowest priority, then the atype parameter is used to select which of those lock requests to reject. It must be set to one of the following list:

- DB_LOCK_DEFAULT
  Use the default lock policy, which is DB_LOCK_RANDOM.
- DB_LOCK_EXPIRE
  Reject lock requests which have timed out. No other deadlock detection is performed.
- DB_LOCK_MAXLOCKS
  Reject the lock request for the locker ID with the most locks.
- DB_LOCK_MAXWRITE
  Reject the lock request for the locker ID with the most write locks.
- DB_LOCK_MINLOCKS
  Reject the lock request for the locker ID with the fewest locks.
• **DB_LOCK_MINWRITE**
  Reject the lock request for the locker ID with the fewest write locks.

• **DB_LOCK_OLDEST**
  Reject the lock request for the locker ID with the oldest lock.

• **DB_LOCK_RANDOM**
  Reject the lock request for a random locker ID.

• **DB_LOCK_YOUNGEST**
  Reject the lock request for the locker ID with the youngest lock.

**rejected**
If the `rejected` parameter is non-NULL, the memory location to which it refers will be set to the number of lock requests that were rejected.

**Errors**
The `DB_ENV->lock_detect()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**
An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`, `DB_LOCK`

**See Also**
Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348)
DB_ENV->lock_get()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->lock_get(DB_ENV *env, u_int32_t locker,
                     u_int32_t flags, const DBT *object,
                     const db_lockmode_t lock_mode, DB_LOCK *lock);
```

The `DB_ENV->lock_get()` method acquires a lock from the lock table, returning information about it in the `lock` parameter.

The `DB_ENV->lock_get()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**locker**

The `locker` parameter is an unsigned 32-bit integer quantity. It represents the entity requesting the lock.

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

- `DB_LOCK_NOWAIT`

  If a lock cannot be granted because the requested lock conflicts with an existing lock, return `DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED` immediately instead of waiting for the lock to become available.

**object**

The `object` parameter is an untyped byte string that specifies the object to be locked. Applications using the locking subsystem directly while also doing locking via the Berkeley DB access methods must take care not to inadvertently lock objects that happen to be equal to the unique file IDs used to lock files. See Access method locking conventions in the Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide for more information.

**lock_mode**

The `lock_mode` parameter is used as an index into the environment's lock conflict matrix. When using the default lock conflict matrix, `lock_mode` must be set to one of the following values:

- `DB_LOCK_READ`
  read (shared)

- `DB_LOCK_WRITE`
  write (exclusive)
- **DB_LOCK_IWRITE**
  intention to write (shared)

- **DB_LOCK_IREAD**
  intention to read (shared)

- **DB_LOCK_IWR**
  intention to read and write (shared)

See `DB_ENV->set_lk_conflicts()` (page 357) and Standard Lock Modes for more information on the lock conflict matrix.

### lock

The `DB_ENV->lock_get()` method returns the lock information in `lock`.

### Errors

The `DB_ENV->lock_get()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**
  A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.

- **DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**
  A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.
  
  You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See `DB->set_lk_exclusive()` (page 126) for more information.

- **DB_LOCK_NOWAIT**
  The `DB_LOCK_NOWAIT` flag or lock timers were configured and the lock could not be granted before the wait-time expired.

- **EINVAL**
  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

- **EINVAL**
  The method was called on an environment which had been opened without being configured for locking.

- **ENOMEM**
  The maximum number of locks has been reached.
Class

DB_ENV, DB_LOCK

See Also

Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348)
DB_ENV->lock_id()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->lock_id(DB_ENV *env, u_int32_t *idp);
```

The `DB_ENV->lock_id()` method copies a locker ID, which is guaranteed to be unique in the environment’s lock table, into the memory location to which `idp` refers.

Note that lockers are not free-threaded; lockers can not be used by more than one thread at the same time.

The `DB_ENV->lock_id_free()` (page 378) method should be called to return the locker ID to the Berkeley DB library when it is no longer needed.

The `DB_ENV->lock_id()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- `idp`

  The `idp` parameter references memory into which the allocated locker ID is copied.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_LOCK

**See Also**

Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348)
**DB_ENV->lock_id_free()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->lock_id_free(DB_ENV *env, u_int32_t id);
```

The `DB_ENV->lock_id_free()` method frees a locker ID allocated by the `DB_ENV->lock_id()` method.

The `DB_ENV->lock_id_free()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

*id*

The *id* parameter is the locker id to be freed.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->lock_id_free()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the locker ID is invalid or locks are still held by this locker ID; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_LOCK`

**See Also**

`Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348)`
**DB_ENV->lock_put()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->lock_put(DB_ENV *env, DB_LOCK *lock);
```

The DB_ENV->lock_put() method releases lock.

The DB_ENV->lock_put() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **lock**
  
The lock parameter is the lock to be released.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->lock_put() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  
  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_LOCK

**See Also**

Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348)
The DB_ENV->lock_stat() method returns the locking subsystem statistics.

The DB_ENV->lock_stat() method creates a statistical structure of type DB_LOCK_STAT and copies a pointer to it into a user-specified memory location.

Statistical structures are stored in allocated memory. If application-specific allocation routines have been declared (see DB_ENV->set_alloc() (page 279) for more information), they are used to allocate the memory; otherwise, the standard C library malloc(3) is used. The caller is responsible for deallocating the memory. To deallocate the memory, free the memory reference; references inside the returned memory need not be individually freed.

The following DB_LOCK_STAT fields will be filled in:

- **u_int32_t st_cur_maxid;**
  The current maximum unused locker ID.

- **u_int32_t st_hash_len;**
  Maximum length of a lock hash bucket.

- **u_int32_t st_id;**
  The last allocated locker ID.

- **u_int32_t st_initlocks;**
  The initial number of locks allocated in the lock table.

- **u_int32_t st_initlockers;**
  The initial number of lockers allocated in the lock table.

- **u_int32_t st_initobjects;**
  The initial number of lock objects allocated in the lock table.

- **uintmax_t st_lock_nowait;**
  The number of lock requests not immediately available due to conflicts, for which the thread of control did not wait.

- **uintmax_t st_lock_wait;**
  The number of lock requests not immediately available due to conflicts, for which the thread of control waited.

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->lock_stat(DB_ENV *env, DB_LOCK_STAT **statp, u_int32_t flags);
```
- `uintmax_t st_lockers_nowait;`
  The number of requests to allocate or deallocate a locker for which the thread of control did not wait.

- `uintmax_t st_lockers_wait;`
  The number of requests to allocate or deallocate a locker for which the thread of control waited.

- `u_int32_t st_lockers;`
  The current number of lockers allocated in the lock table.

- `u_int32_t st_locks;`
  The current number of locks allocated in the lock table.

- `uintmax_t st_locksteals;`
  The maximum number of locks stolen by an empty partition.

- `db_timeout_t st_locktimeout;`
  Lock timeout value.

- `u_int32_t st_maxhlocks;`
  The maximum number of locks in any hash bucket at any one time.

- `u_int32_t st_maxhobjects;`
  The maximum number of objects in any hash bucket at any one time.

- `u_int32_t st_maxlockers;`
  The maximum number of lockers possible.

- `u_int32_t st_maxlocks;`
  The maximum number of locks possible.

- `uintmax_t st_maxlsteals;`
  The maximum number of lock steals for any one partition.

- `u_int32_t st_maxnlockers;`
  The maximum number of lockers at any one time.

- `u_int32_t st_maxnobjects;`
  The maximum number of lock objects at any one time. Note that if there is more than one partition this is the sum of the maximum across all partitions.
• u_int32_t st_maxnlocks;
The maximum number of locks at any one time. Note that if there is more than one
partition, this is the sum of the maximum across all partitions.

• u_int32_t st_maxobjects;
The maximum number of lock objects possible.

• uintmax_t st_maxsteals;
The maximum number of object steals for any one partition.

• uintmax_t st_ndeadlocks;
The number of deadlocks.

• uintmax_t st_n downgrade;
The total number of locks downgraded.

• u_int32_t st_nlockers;
The number of current lockers.

• uintmax_t st_nlockers_hit;
The number of hits in the thread locker cache.

• uintmax_t st_nlockers_reused;
Total number of lockers reused.

• u_int32_t st_nlocks;
The number of current locks.

• uintmax_t st_nlocktimeouts;
The number of lock requests that have timed out.

• int st_nmodes;
The number of lock modes.

• u_int32_t st_nobjects;
The number of current lock objects.

• uintmax_t st_nreleases;
The total number of locks released.

• uintmax_t st_nrequests;
The total number of locks requested.

- `uintmax_t st_ntxntimeouts;`
  The number of transactions that have timed out. This value is also a component of `st_ndeadlocks`, the total number of deadlocks detected.

- `uintmax_t st_nupgrade;`
  The total number of locks upgraded.

- `u_int32_t st_objects;`
  The current number of lock objects allocated in the lock table.

- `uintmax_t st_objectsteals;`
  The maximum number of objects stolen by an empty partition.

- `uintmax_t st_objs_nowait;`
  The number of requests to allocate or deallocate an object for which the thread of control did not wait.

- `uintmax_t st_objs_wait;`
  The number of requests to allocate or deallocate an object for which the thread of control waited.

- `uintmax_t st_part_max_nowait;`
  The number of times that a thread of control was able to obtain any one lock partition mutex without waiting.

- `uintmax_t st_part_max_wait;`
  The maximum number of times that a thread of control was forced to wait before obtaining any one lock partition mutex.

- `uintmax_t st_part_nowait;`
  The number of times that a thread of control was able to obtain the lock partition mutex without waiting.

- `uintmax_t st_part_wait;`
  The number of times that a thread of control was forced to wait before obtaining the lock partition mutex.

- `u_int32_t st_partitions;`
  The number of lock table partitions.
• `uintmax_t st_region_nowait;`
  The number of times that a thread of control was able to obtain the lock region mutex without waiting.

• `uintmax_t st_region_wait;`
  The number of times that a thread of control was forced to wait before obtaining the lock region mutex.

• `roff_t st_regsize;`
  The region size, in bytes.

• `u_int32_t st_tablesize;`
  The size of the object hash table.

• `db_timeout_t st_txntimeout;`
  Transaction timeout value.

The `DB_ENV->lock_stat()` method may not be called before the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method is called.

The `DB_ENV->lock_stat()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`statp`

The `statp` parameter references memory into which a pointer to the allocated statistics structure is copied.

`flags`

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

• `DB_STAT_CLEAR`

  Reset statistics after returning their values.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->lock_stat()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`, `DB_LOCK`
See Also

Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348)
The DB_ENV->lock_stat_print() method displays the locking subsystem statistical information, as described for the DB_ENV->lock_stat() method. The information is printed to a specified output channel (see the DB_ENV->set_msgfile() (page 326) method for more information), or passed to an application callback function (see the DB_ENV->set_msgcall() (page 324) method for more information).

The DB_ENV->lock_stat_print() method may not be called before the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called.

The DB_ENV->lock_stat_print() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

flags

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

• DB_STAT_ALL

Display all available information. For each object, the amount of data displayed is limited to 100 bytes, unless some other limit is set by calling DB_ENV->set_data_len() (page 290), or by using the DB_CONFIG "set_data_len" parameter.

• DB_STAT_ALLOC

Display allocation information. To display allocation information, both DB_STAT_ALLOC and DB_STAT_ALL need to be set.

• DB_STAT_CLEAR

Reset statistics after displaying their values.

• DB_STAT_LOCK_CONF

Display the lock conflict matrix.

• DB_STAT_LOCK_LOCKERS

Display the lockers within hash chains.

• DB_STAT_LOCK_OBJECTS
Display the lock objects within hash chains. For each object, the amount of data displayed is limited to 100 bytes, unless some other limit is set by calling `DB_ENV->set_data_len()` (page 290), or by using the `DB_CONFIG "set_data_len"` parameter.

- **DB_STAT_LOCK_Params**
  Display the locking subsystem parameters.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_LOCK

**See Also**

Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348)
The DB_ENV->lock_vec() method atomically obtains and releases one or more locks from the lock table. The DB_ENV->lock_vec() method is intended to support acquisition or trading of multiple locks under one lock table semaphore, as is needed for lock coupling or in multigranularity locking for lock escalation.

If any of the requested locks cannot be acquired, or any of the locks to be released cannot be released, the operations before the failing operation are guaranteed to have completed successfully, and DB_ENV->lock_vec() returns a non-zero value. In addition, if elistp is not NULL, it is set to point to the DB_LOCKREQ entry that was being processed when the error occurred.

Unless otherwise specified, the DB_ENV->lock_vec() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

locker

The locker parameter is an unsigned 32-bit integer quantity. It represents the entity requesting or releasing the lock.

flags

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

• DB_LOCK_NOWAIT

If a lock cannot be granted because the requested lock conflicts with an existing lock, return DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED immediately instead of waiting for the lock to become available. In this case, if non-NULL, elistp identifies the request that was not granted.

list

The list array provided to DB_ENV->lock_vec() is typedef’d as DB_LOCKREQ.

To ensure compatibility with future releases of Berkeley DB, all fields of the DB_LOCKREQ structure that are not explicitly set should be initialized to 0 before the first time the structure is used. Do this by declaring the structure external or static, or by calling memset(3).

A DB_LOCKREQ structure has at least the following fields:

• lockop_t op;
The operation to be performed, which must be set to one of the following values:

- **DB_LOCK_GET**
  
  Get the lock defined by the values of the `mode` and `obj` structure fields, for the specified `locker`. Upon return from `DB_ENV->lock_vec()`, if the `lock` field is non-NULL, a reference to the acquired lock is stored there. (This reference is invalidated by any call to `DB_ENV->lock_vec()` or `DB_ENV->lock_put()` (page 379) that releases the lock.)

- **DB_LOCK_GET_TIMEOUT**
  
  Identical to `DB_LOCK_GET` except that the value in the `timeout` structure field overrides any previously specified timeout value for this lock. A value of 0 turns off any previously specified timeout.

- **DB_LOCK_PUT**
  
  The lock to which the `lock` structure field refers is released. The `locker` parameter, and `mode` and `obj` fields are ignored.

- **DB_LOCK_PUT_ALL**
  
  All locks held by the specified `locker` are released. The `lock`, `mode`, and `obj` structure fields are ignored. Locks acquired in operations performed by the current call to `DB_ENV->lock_vec()` which appear before the `DB_LOCK_PUT_ALL` operation are released; those acquired in operations appearing after the `DB_LOCK_PUT_ALL` operation are not released.

- **DB_LOCK_PUT_OBJ**
  
  All locks held on `obj` are released. The `locker` parameter and the `lock` and `mode` structure fields are ignored. Locks acquired in operations performed by the current call to `DB_ENV->lock_vec()` that appear before the `DB_LOCK_PUT_OBJ` operation are released; those acquired in operations appearing after the `DB_LOCK_PUT_OBJ` operation are not released.

- **DB_LOCK_TIMEOUT**
  
  Cause the specified `locker` to timeout immediately. If the database environment has not configured automatic deadlock detection, the transaction will timeout the next time deadlock detection is performed. As transactions acquire locks on behalf of a single locker ID, timing out the locker ID associated with a transaction will time out the transaction itself.

- **DB_LOCK lock;**
  
  A lock reference.

- **const lockmode_t mode;**
  
  The lock mode, used as an index into the environment's lock conflict matrix. When using the default lock conflict matrix, `mode` must be set to one of the following values:
• DB_LOCK_READ
  read (shared)
• DB_LOCK_WRITE
  write (exclusive)
• DB_LOCK_IWRITE
  intention to write (shared)
• DB_LOCK_IREAD
  intention to read (shared)
• DB_LOCK_IWR
  intention to read and write (shared)

See DB_ENV->set_lk_conflicts() (page 357) and Standard Lock Modes for more information on the lock conflict matrix.

• const DBT obj;

  An untyped byte string that specifies the object to be locked or released. Applications using the locking subsystem directly while also doing locking via the Berkeley DB access methods must take care not to inadvertently lock objects that happen to be equal to the unique file IDs used to lock files. See Access method locking conventions in the Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide for more information.

• u_int32_t timeout;

  The lock timeout value.

nlist

The nlist parameter specifies the number of elements in the list array.

elistp

If an error occurs, and the elistp parameter is non-NULL, it is set to point to the DB_LOCKREQ entry that was being processed when the error occurred.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->lock_vec() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**

A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.
**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**

A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.

You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See `DB->set_lk_exclusive()` (page 126) for more information.

**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**

The `DB_LOCK_NOWAIT` flag or lock timers were configured and the lock could not be granted before the wait-time expired.

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**ENOMEM**

The maximum number of locks has been reached.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_LOCK`

**See Also**

`Locking Subsystem and Related Methods (page 348)`
Chapter 7. The DB_LSN Handle

#include <db.h>

typedef struct __db_lsn DB_LSN;

The DB_LSN object is a log sequence number which specifies a unique location in a log file. A DB_LSN consists of two unsigned 32-bit integers -- one specifies the log file number, and the other specifies an offset in the log file.
## Logging Subsystem and Related Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Logging Subsystem and Related Methods</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;log_archive()</td>
<td>List log and database files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;log_file()</td>
<td>Map Log Sequence Numbers to log files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;log_flush()</td>
<td>Flush log records</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;log_printf()</td>
<td>Append informational message to the log</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;log_put()</td>
<td>Write a log record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;log_stat()</td>
<td>Return log subsystem statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;log_stat_print()</td>
<td>Print log subsystem statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>log_compare</td>
<td>Compare two Log Sequence Numbers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Logging Subsystem Cursors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;log_cursor()</td>
<td>Create a log cursor handle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### The DB_LOGC Handle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A log cursor handle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB_LOGC-&gt;close()</td>
<td>Close a log cursor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB_LOGC-&gt;get()</td>
<td>Retrieve a log record</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Logging Subsystem Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;log_set_config(), DB_ENV-&gt;log_get_config()</td>
<td>Configure the logging subsystem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_lg_bsize(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_lg_bsize()</td>
<td>Set/get log buffer size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_lg_dir(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_lg_dir()</td>
<td>Set/get the environment logging directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_lg_filemode(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_lg_filemode()</td>
<td>Set/get log file mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_lg_max(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_lg_max()</td>
<td>Set/get log file size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_lg_regionmax(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_lg_regionmax()</td>
<td>Set/get logging region size</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The DB_ENV->get_lg_bsize() method returns the size of the log buffer, in bytes. You can manage this value using the DB_ENV->set_lg_bsize() (page 419) method.

The DB_ENV->get_lg_bsize() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->get_lg_bsize() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

lg_bsizep

The DB_ENV->get_lg_bsize() method returns the size of the log buffer, in bytes in lg_bsizep.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_LOGC, DB_LSN

**See Also**

Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393), DB_ENV->set_lg_bsize() (page 419)
DB_ENV->get_lg_dir()

```
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->get_lg_dir(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char **dirp);
```

The DB_ENV->get_lg_dir() method returns the log directory, which is the location for logging files. You can manage this value using the DB_ENV->set_lg_dir() (page 421) method.

The DB_ENV->get_lg_dir() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->get_lg_dir() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **dirp**

  The DB_ENV->get_lg_dir() method returns a reference to the log directory in dirp.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_LOGC, DB_LSN

**See Also**

Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393), DB_ENV->set_lg_dir() (page 421)
DB_ENV->get_lg_filemode()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->get_lg_filemode(DB_ENV *dbenv, int *lg_modep);
```

The `DB_ENV->get_lg_filemode()` method returns the log file mode. You can manage this value using the `DB_ENV->set_lg_filemode()` (page 423) method.

The `DB_ENV->set_lg_filemode()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->set_lg_filemode()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **lg_modep**

  The `DB_ENV->set_lg_filemode()` method returns the log file mode in `lg_modep`.

**Class**

- `DB_ENV, DB_LOGC, DB_LSN`

**See Also**

- Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393), `DB_ENV->set_lg_filemode()` (page 423)
**DB_ENV->get_lg_max()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->get_lg_max(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t *lg_maxp);
```

The `DB_ENV->get_lg_max()` method returns the maximum log file size. You can manage this value using the `DB_ENV->set_lg_max()` (page 424) method.

The `DB_ENV->get_lg_max()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->get_lg_max()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **lg_maxp**

  The `DB_ENV->get_lg_max()` method returns the maximum log file size in `lg_maxp`.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_LOGC, DB_LSN`

**See Also**

- Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393), `DB_ENV->set_lg_max()` (page 424)
The DB_ENV->get_lg_regionmax() method returns the size of the underlying logging subsystem region. You can manage this value using the DB_ENV->set_lg_regionmax() (page 426) method.

The DB_ENV->get_lg_regionmax() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->get_lg_regionmax() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- `lg_regionmaxp`

  The DB_ENV->get_lg_regionmax() method returns the size of the underlying logging subsystem region in `lg_regionmaxp`.

**Class**

- DB_ENV, DB_LOGC, DB_LSN

**See Also**

- Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393), DB_ENV->set_lg_regionmax() (page 426)
DB_ENV->log_archive()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->log_archive(DB_ENV *env, char *(*listp)[], u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB_ENV->log_archive()` method returns an array of log or database filenames.

By default, `DB_ENV->log_archive()` returns the names of all of the log files that are no longer in use (for example, that are no longer involved in active transactions), and that may safely be archived for catastrophic recovery and then removed from the system. If there are no filenames to return, the memory location to which `listp` refers will be set to NULL.

When Replication Manager is in use, log archiving is performed in a replication group-aware manner such that the log file status of other sites in the group is considered to determine if a log file is in use.

Arrays of log filenames are stored in allocated memory. If application-specific allocation routines have been declared (see `DB_ENV->set_alloc()` (page 279) for more information), they are used to allocate the memory; otherwise, the standard C library `malloc(3)` is used. The caller is responsible for deallocating the memory. To deallocate the memory, free the memory reference; references inside the returned memory need not be individually freed.

Log cursor handles (returned by the `DB_ENV->log_cursor()` (page 402) method) may have open file descriptors for log files in the database environment. Also, the Berkeley DB interfaces to the database environment logging subsystem (for example, `DB_ENV->log_put()` (page 408) and `DB_TXN->abort()` (page 659) ) may allocate log cursors and have open file descriptors for log files as well. On operating systems where filesystem related system calls (for example, rename and unlink on Windows/NT) can fail if a process has an open file descriptor for the affected file, attempting to move or remove the log files listed by `DB_ENV->log_archive()` may fail. All Berkeley DB internal use of log cursors operates on active log files only and furthermore, is short-lived in nature. So, an application seeing such a failure should be restructured to close any open log cursors it may have, and otherwise to retry the operation until it succeeds. (Although the latter is not likely to be necessary; it is hard to imagine a reason to move or rename a log file in which transactions are being logged or aborted.)

See `db_archive` for more information on database archival procedures.

The `DB_ENV->log_archive()` method is the underlying method used by the `db_archive` utility. See the `db_archive` utility source code for an example of using `DB_ENV->log_archive()` in a IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) environment.

The `DB_ENV->log_archive()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.
Parameters

listp

The listp parameter references memory into which the allocated array of log or database filenames is copied. If there are no filenames to return, the memory location to which listp refers will be set to NULL.

flags

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

- DB_ARCH_ABS
  
  All pathnames are returned as absolute pathnames, instead of relative to the database home directory.

- DB_ARCH_DATA
  
  Return the database files that need to be archived in order to recover the database from catastrophic failure. If any of the database files have not been accessed during the lifetime of the current log files, DB_ENV->log_archive() will not include them in this list. It is also possible that some of the files referred to by the log have since been deleted from the system.

  The DB_ARCH_DATA and DB_ARCH_LOG flags are mutually exclusive.

- DB_ARCH_LOG
  
  Return all the log filenames, regardless of whether or not they are in use.

  The DB_ARCH_DATA and DB_ARCH_LOG flags are mutually exclusive.

- DB_ARCH_REMOVE
  
  Remove log files that are no longer needed; no filenames are returned. Automatic log file removal is likely to make catastrophic recovery impossible.

  The DB_ARCH_REMOVE flag may not be specified with any other flag.

Errors

The DB_ENV->log_archive() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV, DB_LOGC, DB_LSN
See Also

Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393)
DB_ENV->log_cursor()

#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->log_cursor(DB_ENV *dbenv, DB_LOGC **cursorp, u_int32_t flags);

The DB_ENV->log_cursor() method returns a created log cursor.

The DB_ENV->log_cursor() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

  cursorp

The cursorp parameter references memory into which a pointer to the created log cursor is copied.

  flags

The flags parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

Errors

The DB_ENV->log_cursor() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

  EINVAL

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

  DB_ENV, DB_LOGC, DB_LSN

See Also

Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393)
# DB_ENV->log_file()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->log_file(DB_ENV *env, 
    const DB_LSN *lsn, char *namep, size_t len);
```

The `DB_ENV->log_file()` method maps `DB_LSN` structures to filenames, returning the name of the file containing the record named by `lsn`.

This mapping of `DB_LSN` structures to files is needed for database administration. For example, a transaction manager typically records the earliest `DB_LSN` needed for restart, and the database administrator may want to archive log files to tape when they contain only `DB_LSN` entries before the earliest one needed for restart.

The `DB_ENV->log_file()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

## Parameters

### lsn

The `lsn` parameter is the `DB_LSN` structure for which a filename is wanted.

### namep

The `namep` parameter references memory into which the name of the file containing the record named by `lsn` is copied.

### len

The `len` parameter is the length of the `namep` buffer in bytes. If `namep` is too short to hold the filename, `DB_ENV->log_file()` will fail. (Log filenames are always 14 characters long.)

## Errors

The `DB_ENV->log_file()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the supplied buffer was too small to hold the log filename; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

## Class

`DB_ENV, DB_LOGC, DB_LSN`

## See Also

[Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393)]
DB_ENV->log_flush()

#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->log_flush(DB_ENV *env, const DB_LSN *lsn);

The DB_ENV->log_flush() method writes log records to disk.

The DB_ENV->log_flush() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

Isn

All log records with DB_LSN values less than or equal to the Isn parameter are written to disk. If Isn is NULL, all records in the log are flushed.

Errors

The DB_ENV->log_flush() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV, DB_LOGC, DB_LSN

See Also

Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393)
DB_ENV->log_get_config()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->log_get_config(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t which, int *onoffp);
```

The `DB_ENV->log_get_config()` method returns whether the specified `which` parameter is currently set or not. You can manage this value using the `DB_ENV->log_set_config()` method.

The `DB_ENV->log_get_config()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->log_get_config()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**which**

The `which` parameter is the message value for which configuration is being checked. Must be set to one of the following values:

- **DB_LOG_EXT_FILE**
  
  Enables full logging of external file data.

- **DB_LOG_DIRECT**
  
  System buffering is turned off for Berkeley DB log files to avoid double caching.

- **DB_LOG_DSYNC**
  
  Berkeley DB is configured to flush log writes to the backing disk before returning from the write system call, rather than flushing log writes explicitly in a separate system call, as necessary.

- **DB_LOG_AUTO_REMOVE**
  
  Berkeley DB automatically removes log files that are no longer needed.

- **DB_LOG_IN_MEMORY**
  
  Transaction logs are maintained in memory rather than on disk. This means that transactions exhibit the ACI (atomicity, consistency, and isolation) properties, but not D (durability).

- **DB_LOG_NOSYNC**
  
  The transaction log is not flushed from the operating system cache to stable storage when the logging system switches log files or a durable transaction commits. This means that transactions exhibit the ACI (atomicity, consistency, and isolation) properties, but
only partially support D (durability); that is, database integrity will be maintained if the application fails and the environment is recovered, but not if the system fails. All database files must be verified and/or restored from a replication group master or archival backup after system failure.

• DB_LOG_ZERO

All pages of a log file are zeroed when that log file is created.

onoffp

The onoffp parameter references memory into which the configuration of the specified which parameter is copied.

If the returned onoff value is zero, the parameter is off; otherwise, on.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393), DB_ENV->log_set_config() (page 410)
DB_ENV->log_printf()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->log_printf(DB_ENV *env, DB_TXN *txnid, const char *fmt, ...);
```

The DB_ENV->log_printf() method appends an informational message to the Berkeley DB database environment log files.

The DB_ENV->log_printf() method allows applications to include information in the database environment log files, for later review using the db_printlog utility. This method is intended for debugging and performance tuning.

The DB_ENV->log_printf() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**txnid**

If the logged message refers to an application-specified transaction, the txnid parameter is a transaction handle returned from DB_ENV->txn_begin() (page 648); otherwise NULL.

**fmt**

A format string that specifies how subsequent arguments (or arguments accessed via the variable-length argument facilities of stdarg(3)) are converted for output. The format string may contain any formatting directives supported by the underlying C library vsnprintf(3) function.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->log_printf() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_LOGC, DB_LSN

**See Also**

Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393)
DB_ENV->log_put()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->log_put(DB_ENV *env,
                  DB_LSN *lsn, const DBT *data, u_int32_t flags);
```

The DB_ENV->log_put() method appends records to the log. The DB_LSN of the put record is returned in the lsn parameter.

The DB_ENV->log_put() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**lsn**

The lsn parameter references memory into which the DB_LSN of the put record is copied.

**data**

The data parameter is the record to write to the log.

The caller is responsible for providing any necessary structure to data. (For example, in a write-ahead logging protocol, the application must understand what part of data is an operation code, what part is redo information, and what part is undo information. In addition, most transaction managers will store in data the DB_LSN of the previous log record for the same transaction, to support chaining back through the transaction's log records during undo.)

**flags**

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

- `DB_FLUSH`

  The log is forced to disk after this record is written, guaranteeing that all records with DB_LSN values less than or equal to the one being "put" are on disk before DB_ENV->log_put() returns.

### Errors

The DB_ENV->log_put() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  If the record to be logged is larger than the maximum log record; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

### Class

`DB_ENV, DB_LOGC, DB_LSN`
See Also

Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393)
The DB_ENV->log_set_config() method configures the Berkeley DB logging subsystem.

The DB_ENV->log_set_config() method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

The DB_ENV->log_set_config() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->log_set_config() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**flags**

The flags parameter must be set by bitwise inclusively OR’ing together one or more of the following values:

- **DB_LOG_AUTO_REMOVE**

  If set, Berkeley DB will automatically remove log files that are no longer needed.

  Automatic log file removal is likely to make catastrophic recovery impossible.

  Replication Manager applications operate in a group-aware manner for log file removal, and automatic log file removal simplifies the application.

  Replication Base API applications will rarely want to configure automatic log file removal as it increases the likelihood a master will be unable to satisfy a client’s request for a recent log record.

  Calling DB_ENV->log_set_config() with the DB_LOG_AUTO_REMOVE flag affects the database environment, including all threads of control accessing the database environment.

  The DB_LOG_AUTO_REMOVE flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life of the application.

- **DB_LOG_EXT_FILE**

  Enables full logging of external file data. Only use this flag if using replication or running a hot backup; otherwise, it will impose a performance penalty on external file operations.

  This flag is off by default, unless Replication is enabled for the environment. In that case, it is on by default.
The DB_LOG_EXT_FILE flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life of the application.

- **DB_LOG_DIRECT**

  Turn off system buffering of Berkeley DB log files to avoid double caching.

  Calling `DB_ENV->log_set_config()` with the DB_LOG_DIRECT flag only affects the specified DB_ENV handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle). For consistent behavior across the environment, all DB_ENV handles opened in the environment must either set the DB_LOG_DIRECT flag or the flag should be specified in the DB_CONFIG configuration file.

  The DB_LOG_DIRECT flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life of the application.

- **DB_LOG_DSYNC**

  Configure Berkeley DB to flush log writes to the backing disk before returning from the write system call, rather than flushing log writes explicitly in a separate system call, as necessary. This is only available on some systems (for example, systems supporting the IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) standard O_DSYNC flag, or systems supporting the Windows FILE_FLAG_WRITE_THROUGH flag). This flag may result in inaccurate file modification times and other file-level information for Berkeley DB log files. This flag may offer a performance increase on some systems and a performance decrease on others.

  Calling `DB_ENV->log_set_config()` with the DB_LOG_DSYNC flag only affects the specified DB_ENV handle (and any other Berkeley DB handles opened within the scope of that handle). For consistent behavior across the environment, all DB_ENV handles opened in the environment must either set the DB_LOG_DSYNC flag or the flag should be specified in the DB_CONFIG configuration file.

  The DB_LOG_DSYNC flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life of the application.

- **DB_LOG_IN_MEMORY**

  If set, maintain transaction logs in memory rather than on disk. This means that transactions exhibit the ACI (atomicity, consistency, and isolation) properties, but not D (durability); that is, database integrity will be maintained, but if the application or system fails, integrity will not persist. All database files must be verified and/or restored from a replication group master or archival backup after application or system failure.

  When in-memory logs are configured and no more log buffer space is available, Berkeley DB methods may return an additional error value, DB_LOG_BUFFER_FULL. When choosing log buffer and file sizes for in-memory logs, applications should ensure the in-memory log buffer size is large enough that no transaction will ever span the entire buffer, and avoid a state where the in-memory buffer is full and no space can be freed because a transaction that started in the first log “file” is still active.
Calling `DB_ENV->log_set_config()` with the `DB_LOG_IN_MEMORY` flag affects the database environment, including all threads of control accessing the database environment.

The `DB_LOG_IN_MEMORY` flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB only before the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method is called.

- **DB_LOG_NOSYNC**

  If set, the transaction log is not flushed from the operating system cache to stable storage when a transaction commits or the logging system switches log files. This can further increase performance when all of the applications in an environment use less-than-durable transactions (DB_TXN_NOSYNC and DB_TXN_WRITE_NOSYNC).

  Turning on `DB_LOG_NOSYNC` removes the durability guarantee of current or future `DB_TXN_SYNC` transactions, as well as any transactions which have been active since the last checkpoint. All database files must be verified and/or restored from a replication group master or archival backup after system failure.

  Turning off `DB_LOG_NOSYNC` may be done at any time. Current and future `DB_TXN_SYNC` transactions will return to full ACID characteristics once a checkpoint or log file switch occurs.

  Calling `DB_ENV->log_set_config()` with the `DB_LOG_NOSYNC` flag affects the database environment, including all threads of control accessing the database environment.

  The `DB_LOG_NOSYNC` flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time. `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method is called.

- **DB_LOG_ZERO**

  If set, zero all pages of a log file when that log file is created. This has shown to provide greater transaction throughput in some environments. The log file will be zeroed by the thread which needs to re-create the new log file. Other threads may not write to the log file while this is happening.

  Calling `DB_ENV->log_set_config()` with the `DB_LOG_ZERO` flag affects only the current environment handle.

  The `DB_LOG_ZERO` flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time.

  **onoff**

  If the `onoff` parameter is zero, the specified flags are cleared; otherwise they are set.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->log_set_config()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:
EINVAL

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393)
DB_ENV->log_stat()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->log_stat(DB_ENV *env, DB_LOG_STAT **statp, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB_ENV->log_stat()` method returns the logging subsystem statistics.

The `DB_ENV->log_stat()` method creates a statistical structure of type `DB_LOG_STAT` and copies a pointer to it into a user-specified memory location.

Statistical structures are stored in allocated memory. If application-specific allocation routines have been declared (see `DB_ENV->set_alloc()` (page 279) for more information), they are used to allocate the memory; otherwise, the standard C library `malloc()` is used. The caller is responsible for deallocating the memory. To deallocate the memory, free the memory reference; references inside the returned memory need not be individually freed.

The following `DB_LOG_STAT` fields will be filled in:

- `u_int32_t st_cur_file;`
  The current log file number.

- `u_int32_t st_cur_offset;`
  The byte offset in the current log file.

- `u_int32_t st_disk_file;`
  The log file number of the last record known to be on disk.

- `u_int32_t st_disk_offset;`
  The byte offset of the last record known to be on disk.

- `u_int32_t st_fileid_init;`
  The initial allocated file logging identifiers.

- `u_int32_t st_lg_bsize;`
  The in-memory log record cache size.

- `u_int32_t st_lg_size;`
  The log file size.

- `u_int32_t st_magic;`
  The magic number that identifies a file as a log file.

- `u_int32_t st_maxcommitperflush;`
The maximum number of commits contained in a single log flush.

- `u_int32_t st_maxnfileid;`
  The maximum number of file logging identifiers used.

- `u_int32_t st_mincommitperflush;`
  The minimum number of commits contained in a single log flush that contained a commit.

- `int st_mode;`
  The mode of any created log files.

- `u_int32_t st_nfileid;`
  The current number of file logging identifiers.

- `uintmax_t st_record;`
  The number of records written to this log.

- `roff_t st_regsize;`
  The region size, in bytes.

- `uintmax_t st_region_wait;`
  The number of times that a thread of control was forced to wait before obtaining the log region mutex.

- `uintmax_t st_region_nowait;`
  The number of times that a thread of control was able to obtain the log region mutex without waiting.

- `uintmax_t st_scount;`
  The number of times the log has been flushed to disk.

- `u_int32_t st_version;`
  The version of the log file type.

- `u_int32_t st_w_bytes;`
  The number of bytes over and above `st_w_mbytes` written to this log.

- `u_int32_t st_w_mbytes;`
The number of megabytes written to this log.

- `u_int32_t st_wc_bytes;`
  The number of bytes over and above `st_wc_mbytes` written to this log since the last checkpoint.

- `u_int32_t st_wc_mbytes;`
  The number of megabytes written to this log since the last checkpoint.

- `uintmax_t st_wcount_fill;`
  The number of times the log has been written to disk because the in-memory log record cache filled up.

- `uintmax_t st_wcount;`
  The number of times the log has been written to disk.

The `DB_ENV->log_stat()` method may not be called before the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method is called.

The `DB_ENV->log_stat()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- `statp`
  The `statp` parameter references memory into which a pointer to the allocated statistics structure is copied.

- `flags`
  The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:
  - `DB_STAT_CLEAR`
    Reset statistics after returning their values.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->log_stat()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- `EINVAL`
  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_LOGC, DB_LSN`
See Also

Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393)
DB_ENV->log_stat_print()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->log_stat_print(DB_ENV *env, u_int32_t flags);
```

The DB_ENV->log_stat_print() method displays the logging subsystem statistical information, as described for the DB_ENV->log_stat() method. The information is printed to a specified output channel (see the DB_ENV->set_msgfile() (page 326) method for more information), or passed to an application callback function (see the DB_ENV->set_msgcall() (page 324) method for more information).

The DB_ENV->log_stat_print() method may not be called before the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called.

The DB_ENV->log_stat_print() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**flags**

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR’ing together one or more of the following values:

- **DB_STAT_ALL**
  
  Display all available information.

- **DB_STAT_CLEAR**
  
  Reset statistics after displaying their values.

- **DB_STAT_ALLOC**
  
  Display allocation information. To display allocation information, both DB_STAT_ALLOC and DB_STAT_ALL need to be set.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_LOGC, DB_LSN

**See Also**

Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393)
DB_ENV->set_lg_bsize()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_lg_bsize(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t lg_bsize);
```

Sets the size of the in-memory log buffer, in bytes.

When the logging subsystem is configured for on-disk logging, the default size of the in-memory log buffer is approximately 32KB. Log information is stored in-memory until the storage space fills up or transaction commit forces the information to be flushed to stable storage. In the presence of long-running transactions or transactions producing large amounts of data, larger buffer sizes can increase throughput.

When the logging subsystem is configured for in-memory logging, the default size of the in-memory log buffer is 1MB. Log information is stored in-memory until the storage space fills up or transaction abort or commit frees up the memory for new transactions. In the presence of long-running transactions or transactions producing large amounts of data, the buffer size must be sufficient to hold all log information that can accumulate during the longest running transaction. When choosing log buffer and file sizes for in-memory logs, applications should ensure the in-memory log buffer size is large enough that no transaction will ever span the entire buffer, and avoid a state where the in-memory buffer is full and no space can be freed because a transaction that started in the first log "file" is still active.

The database environment’s log buffer size may also be configured using the environment’s DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_lg_bsize", one or more whitespace characters, and the size in bytes. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->set_lg_bsize() method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

The DB_ENV->set_lg_bsize() method may not be called after the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called. If the database environment already exists when DB_ENV->open() (page 271) is called, the information specified to DB_ENV->set_lg_bsize() will be ignored.

The DB_ENV->set_lg_bsize() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

*lg_bsize*

The *lg_bsize* parameter is the size of the in-memory log buffer, in bytes.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->set_lg_bsize() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:
EINVAL

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV, DB_LOGC, DB_LSN

See Also

Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393)
The path of a directory to be used as the location of logging files. Log files created by the Log Manager subsystem will be created in this directory.

If no logging directory is specified, log files are created in the environment home directory. See Berkeley DB File Naming for more information.

For the greatest degree of recoverability from system or application failure, database files and log files should be located on separate physical devices.

The database environment's logging directory may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_lg_dir", one or more whitespace characters, and the directory name. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time. Note that if you use this method for your application, and you also want to use the db_recover (page 721), db_printlog (page 719), db_archive (page 695), or db_log_verify (page 716) utilities, then you should set create a DB_CONFIG file and set the "set_lg_dir" parameter in it.

The DB_ENV->set_lg_dir() method configures operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The DB_ENV->set_lg_dir() method may not be called after the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called. If the database environment already exists when DB_ENV->open() (page 271) is called, the information specified to DB_ENV->set_lg_dir() must be consistent with the existing environment or corruption can occur.

The DB_ENV->set_lg_dir() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**dir**

The **dir** parameter is the directory used to store the logging files. This directory must currently exist at environment open time.

When using a Unicode build on Windows (the default), the **dir** argument will be interpreted as a UTF-8 string, which is equivalent to ASCII for Latin characters.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->set_lg_dir() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:
EINVAL

If the method was called after DB_ENV->open() (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV, DB_LOGC, DB_LSN

See Also

Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393)
DB_ENV->set_lg_filemode()

#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->set_lg_filemode(DB_ENV *dbenv, int lg_filemode);

Set the absolute file mode for created log files. This method is only useful for the rare Berkeley DB application that does not control its umask value.

Normally, if Berkeley DB applications set their umask appropriately, all processes in the application suite will have read permission on the log files created by any process in the application suite. However, if the Berkeley DB application is a library, a process using the library might set its umask to a value preventing other processes in the application suite from reading the log files it creates. In this rare case, the DB_ENV->set_lg_filemode() method can be used to set the mode of created log files to an absolute value.

The database environment's log file mode may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_lg_filemode", one or more whitespace characters, and the absolute mode of created log files. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->set_lg_filemode() method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

The DB_ENV->set_lg_filemode() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->set_lg_filemode() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

lg_filemode

The lg_filemode parameter is the absolute mode of the created log file.

Class

DB_ENV, DB_LOGC, DB_LSN

See Also

Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393)
DB_ENV->set_lg_max()

#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_lg_max(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t lg_max);

Sets the maximum size of a single file in the log, in bytes. Because DB_LSN file offsets are unsigned four-byte values, the set value may not be larger than the maximum unsigned four-byte value.

When the logging subsystem is configured for on-disk logging, the default size of a log file is 10MB.

When the logging subsystem is configured for in-memory logging, the default size of a log file is 256KB. In addition, the configured log buffer size must be larger than the log file size.

The logging subsystem divides memory configured for in-memory log records into “files”, as database environments configured for in-memory log records may exchange log records with other members of a replication group, and those members may be configured to store log records on-disk.) When choosing log buffer and file sizes for in-memory logs, applications should ensure the in-memory log buffer size is large enough that no transaction will ever span the entire buffer, and avoid a state where the in-memory buffer is full and no space can be freed because a transaction that started in the first log “file” is still active.

See Log File Limits for more information.

The database environment’s log file size may also be configured using the environment’s DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string “set_lg_max”, one or more whitespace characters, and the size in bytes. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->set_lg_max() method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

The DB_ENV->set_lg_max() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

If no size is specified by the application, the size last specified for the database region will be used, or if no database region previously existed, the default will be used.

The DB_ENV->set_lg_max() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

lg_max

The lg_max parameter is the size of a single log file, in bytes.

Errors

The DB_ENV->set_lg_max() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:
EINVAL

If the size of the log file is less than four times the size of the in-memory log buffer; the specified log file size was too large; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV, DB_LOGC, DB_LSN

See Also

Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393)
**DB_ENV->set_lg_regionmax()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->set_lg_regionmax(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t lg_regionmax);
```

Set the size of the underlying logging area of the Berkeley DB environment, in bytes. By default, or if the value is set to 0, the minimum region size is used, approximately 128KB. The log region is used to store filenames, and so may need to be increased in size if a large number of files will be opened and registered with the specified Berkeley DB environment's log manager.

The database environment's log region size may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_lg_regionmax", one or more whitespace characters, and the size in bytes. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->set_lg_regionmax() method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

The DB_ENV->set_lg_regionmax() method may not be called after the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called. If the database environment already exists when DB_ENV->open() (page 271) is called, the information specified to DB_ENV->set_lg_regionmax() will be ignored.

The DB_ENV->set_lg_regionmax() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **lg_regionmax**

  The **lg_regionmax** parameter is the size of the logging area in the Berkeley DB environment, in bytes.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->set_lg_regionmax() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  If the method was called after DB_ENV->open() (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

- DB_ENV, DB_LOGC, DB_LSN
See Also

Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393)
The DB_LOGC Handle

```c
#include <db.h>

typedef struct __db_log_cursor DB_LOGC;
```

The DB_LOGC object is the handle for a cursor into the log files, supporting sequential access to the records stored in log files. The handle is not free-threaded. Once the `DB_LOGC->close()` method is called, the handle may not be accessed again, regardless of that method's return.

For more information, see the DB_LSN handle.
DB_LOGC->close()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_LOGC->close(DB_LOGC *cursor, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB_LOGC->close()` method discards the log cursor. After `DB_LOGC->close()` has been called, regardless of its return, the cursor handle may not be used again.

The `DB_LOGC->close()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **flags**

  The `flags` parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

**Errors**

The `DB_LOGC->close()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  If the cursor is already closed; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

- `DB_ENV`, `DB_LOGC`, `DB_LSN`

**See Also**

- [Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393)](page393)
DB_LOGC->get()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_LOGC->get(DB_LOGC *logc, DB_LSN *lsn, DBT *data, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB_LOGC->get()` method returns records from the log.

Unless otherwise specified, the `DB_LOGC->get()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**lsn**

When the `flag` parameter is set to `DB_CURRENT`, `DB_FIRST`, `DB_LAST`, `DB_NEXT` or `DB_PREV`, the `lsn` parameter is overwritten with the `DB_LSN` value of the record retrieved. When `flag` is set to `DB_SET`, the `lsn` parameter is the `DB_LSN` value of the record to be retrieved.

**data**

The data field of the `data` structure is set to the record retrieved, and the size field indicates the number of bytes in the record. See `DBT` for a description of other fields in the `data` structure. The `DB_DBT_MALLOC`, `DB_DBT_REALLOC` and `DB_DBT_USERMEM` flags may be specified for any `DBT` used for data retrieval.

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to one of the following values:

- **DB_CURRENT**
  
  Return the log record to which the log currently refers.

- **DB_FIRST**
  
  The first record from any of the log files found in the log directory is returned in the `data` parameter. The `lsn` parameter is overwritten with the `DB_LSN` of the record returned.

  The `DB_LOGC->get()` method will return `DB_NOTFOUND` if `DB_FIRST` is set and the log is empty.

- **DB_LAST**
  
  The last record in the log is returned in the `data` parameter. The `lsn` parameter is overwritten with the `DB_LSN` of the record returned.

  The `DB_LOGC->get()` method will return `DB_NOTFOUND` if `DB_LAST` is set and the log is empty.

- **DB_NEXT**
The current log position is advanced to the next record in the log, and that record is returned in the data parameter. The lsn parameter is overwritten with the DB_LSN of the record returned.

If the cursor has not been initialized via DB_FIRST, DB_LAST, DB_SET, DB_NEXT, or DB_PREV, DB_LOGC->get() will return the first record in the log.

The DB_LOGC->get() method will return DB_NOTFOUND if DB_NEXT is set and the last log record has already been returned or the log is empty.

• DB_PREV

The current log position is advanced to the previous record in the log, and that record is returned in the data parameter. The lsn parameter is overwritten with the DB_LSN of the record returned.

If the cursor has not been initialized via DB_FIRST, DB_LAST, DB_SET, DB_NEXT, or DB_PREV, DB_LOGC->get() will return the last record in the log.

The DB_LOGC->get() method will return DB_NOTFOUND if DB_PREV is set and the first log record has already been returned or the log is empty.

• DB_SET

Retrieve the record specified by the lsn parameter.

Errors

The DB_LOGC->get() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL

If the DB_CURRENT flag was set and the log cursor has not yet been initialized; the DB_CURRENT, DB_NEXT, or DB_PREV flags were set and the log was opened with the DB_THREAD flag set; the DB_SET flag was set and the specified log sequence number does not appear in the log; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV, DB_LOGC, DB_LSN

See Also

Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393)
**log_compare**

```c
#include <db.h>

int log_compare(const DB_LSN *lsn0, const DB_LSN *lsn1);
```

The `log_compare()` method allows the caller to compare two `DB_LSN` structures, returning 0 if they are equal, 1 if `lsn0` is greater than `lsn1`, and -1 if `lsn0` is less than `lsn1`.

**Parameters**

- **lsn0**
  The `lsn0` parameter is one of the `DB_LSN` structures to be compared.

- **lsn1**
  The `lsn1` parameter is one of the `DB_LSN` structures to be compared.

**Class**

- `DB_ENV`, `DB_LOGC`, `DB_LSN`

**See Also**

- [Logging Subsystem and Related Methods (page 393)](page393)
Chapter 8. The DB_MPOOLFILE Handle

#include <db.h>

typedef struct __db_mpoolfile DB_MPOOLFILE;

The memory pool interfaces for the Berkeley DB database environment are methods of the DB_ENV handle. The DB_ENV memory pool methods and the DB_MPOOLFILE class provide general-purpose, page-oriented buffer management of files. Although designed to work with the other DB classes, they are also useful for more general purposes. The memory pools are referred to in this document as simply the cache.

The cache may be shared between processes. The cache is usually filled by pages from one or more files. Pages in the cache are replaced in LRU (least-recently-used) order, with each new page replacing the page that has been unused the longest. Pages retrieved from the cache using DB_MPOOLFILE->get() (page 472) are pinned in the cache until they are returned to the control of the cache using the DB_MPOOLFILE->put() (page 477) method.

The DB_MPOOLFILE object is the handle for a file in the cache. The handle is not free-threaded. Once the DB_MPOOLFILE->close() (page 471) method is called, the handle may not be accessed again, regardless of that method's return.
## Memory Pools and Related Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Memory Pools and Related Methods</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;get_mpf()</td>
<td>Return the DB_MPOOLFILE for a DB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;memp_stat()</td>
<td>Return cache statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;memp_stat_print()</td>
<td>Print cache statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;memp_sync()</td>
<td>Flush all pages from the cache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;memp_trickle()</td>
<td>Flush some pages from the cache</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Memory Pool Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;memp_register()</td>
<td>Register a custom file type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_cache_max(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_cache_max()</td>
<td>Set/get the maximum cache size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_cachesize(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_cachesize()</td>
<td>Set/get the environment cache size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_mp_max_openfd(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_mp_max_openfd()</td>
<td>Set/get the maximum number of open file descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_mp_max_write(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_mp_max_write()</td>
<td>Set/get the maximum number of sequential disk writes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_mp_mmapsize(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_mp_mmapsize()</td>
<td>Set/get maximum file size to memory map when opened read-only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_mp_mtxcount(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_mp_mtxcount()</td>
<td>Set/get the number of mutexes allocated to the hash table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_mp_pagesize(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_mp_pagesize()</td>
<td>Set/get page size to configure the buffer pool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_mp_tablesize(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_mp_tablesize()</td>
<td>Set/get the hash table size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_region_dir(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_region_dir()</td>
<td>Set/get the environment region directory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Memory Pool Files

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;close()</td>
<td>Close a file in the cache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;get()</td>
<td>Get page from a file in the cache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;open()</td>
<td>Open a file in the cache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;put()</td>
<td>Return a page to the cache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;sync()</td>
<td>Flush pages from a file from the cache</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Memory Pool File Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;set_clear_len(), DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;get_clear_len()</td>
<td>Set/get number of bytes to clear when creating a new page</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Memory Pools and Related Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;set_fileid()</code>, <code>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;get_fileid()</code></td>
<td>Set/get file unique identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;set_flags()</code>, <code>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;get_flags()</code></td>
<td>Set/get file options</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;set_ftype()</code>, <code>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;get_ftype()</code></td>
<td>Set/get file type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;set_lsn_offset()</code>, <code>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;get_lsn_offset()</code></td>
<td>Set/get file log-sequence-number offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;set_maxsize()</code>, <code>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;get_maxsize()</code></td>
<td>Set/get maximum file size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;set_pgcokie()</code>, <code>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;get_pgcokie()</code></td>
<td>Set/get file cookie for pgin/pgout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;set_priority()</code>, <code>DB_MPOOLFILE-&gt;get_priority()</code></td>
<td>Set/get cache file priority</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**DB->get_mpf()**

```c
#include <db.h>

DB_MPOOLFILE *
DB->get_mpf(DB *db);
```

The DB->get_mpf() method returns the handle for the cache file underlying the database.

The DB->get_mpf() method should be used with caution on a replication client site. This method exposes an internal structure that may not be valid after a client site synchronizes with its master site.

The DB->get_mpf() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

*Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)*
**DB_ENV->get_cache_max()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_cache_max(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t *gbytesp, u_int32_t *bytesp);
```

The `DB_ENV->get_cache_max()` method returns the maximum size of the cache as set using the `DB_ENV->set_cache_max()` (page 457) method.

The `DB_ENV->get_cache_max()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->get_cache_max()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **gbytesp**
  
The `gbytesp` parameter references memory into which the gigabytes of memory in the cache is copied.

- **bytesp**
  
The `bytesp` parameter references memory into which the additional bytes of memory in the cache is copied.

**Class**

- **DB_ENV**

**See Also**

- Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213), `DB_ENV->set_cache_max()` (page 457)
DB_ENV->get_cachesize()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_cachesize(DB_ENV *dbenv,
    u_int32_t *gbytesp, u_int32_t *bytesp, int *ncachep);
```

The `DB_ENV->get_cachesize()` method returns the current size and composition of the
cache, as set using the `DB_ENV->set_cachesize()` (page 459) method.

The `DB_ENV->get_cachesize()` method may be called at any time during the life of the
application.

The `DB_ENV->get_cachesize()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on
success.

**Parameters**

- **gbytesp**
  The `gbytesp` parameter references memory into which the gigabytes of memory in the cache
  is copied.

- **bytesp**
  The `bytesp` parameter references memory into which the additional bytes of memory in the
  cache is copied.

- **ncachep**
  The `ncachep` parameter references memory into which the number of caches is copied.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434), Database Environments and Related
Methods (page 213), DB_ENV->set_cachesize() (page 459)
DB_ENV->get_mp_max_openfd()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_mp_max_openfd(DB_ENV *env, int *maxopenfdp);
```

Returns the maximum number of file descriptors the library will open concurrently when flushing dirty pages from the cache. This value is set by the DB_ENV->set_mp_max_openfd() (page 461) method.

The DB_ENV->get_mp_max_openfd() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->get_mp_max_openfd() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

*maxopenfdp*

The DB_ENV->get_mp_max_openfd() method returns the maximum number of file descriptors open in *maxopenfdp*.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE

**See Also**

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434), DB_ENV->set_mp_max_openfd() (page 461)
DB_ENV->get_mp_max_write()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_mp_max_write(DB_ENV *env, int *maxwritep,
                               db_timeout_t *maxwrite_sleepp);
```

The DB_ENV->get_mp_max_write() method returns the current maximum number of sequential write operations and microseconds to pause that the library can schedule when flushing dirty pages from the cache. These values are set by the DB_ENV->set_mp_max_write() (page 462) method.

The DB_ENV->get_mp_max_write() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->get_mp_max_write() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **maxwritep**
  
  The maxwritep parameter references memory into which the maximum number of sequential write operations is copied.

- **maxwrite_sleepp**
  
  The maxwrite_sleepp parameter references memory into which the microseconds to pause before scheduling further write operations is copied.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE

**See Also**

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434), DB_ENV->set_mp_max_write() (page 462)
DB_ENV->get_mp_mmapsize()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_mp_mmapsize(DB_ENV *dbenv, size_t *mp_mmapsizep);
```

The `DB_ENV->get_mp_mmapsize()` method returns the maximum file size, in bytes, for a file to be mapped into the process address space. This value can be managed using the `DB_ENV->set_mp_mmapsize()` method.

The `DB_ENV->get_mp_mmapsize()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->get_mp_mmapsize()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **mp_mmapsizep**

  The `DB_ENV->get_mp_mmapsize()` method returns the maximum file map size in `mp_mmapsizep`.

**Class**

- `DB_ENV`, `DB_MPOOLFILE`

**See Also**

- Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434), `DB_ENV->set_mp_mmapsize()` (page 464)
The `DB_ENV->get_mp_mtxcount()` method returns the number of mutexes allocated for the hash table in the buffer pool.

**Parameters**

**mtxcount**

This parameter specifies the number of mutexes allocated for the hash table in the buffer pool.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`, `DB_MPOOLFILE`

**See Also**

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434), `DB_ENV->set_mp_mtxcount()` (page 466)
DB_ENV->get_mppagesize()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_mppagesize(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t *pagesizep);
```

The DB_ENV->get_mppagesize() method returns the assumed page size used to configure the buffer pool.

The DB_ENV->get_mppagesize() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Parameters**

pagesizep

This parameter specifies the assumed page size used to configure the buffer pool.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE

**See Also**

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434), DB_ENV->set_mppagesize() (page 467)
**DB_ENV->get_mp_tablesize()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_mp_tablesize(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t *tablesizep);
```

The `DB_ENV->get_mp_tablesize()` method returns the hash table size in the buffer pool.

**Parameters**

*tablesize*

This parameter specifies the hash table size in the buffer pool.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`, `DB_MPOOLFILE`

**See Also**

`Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)`, `DB_ENV->set_mp_tablesize()` (page 468)
DB_ENV->memp_fcreate()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->memp_fcreate(DB_ENV *dbenvp, DB_MPOOLFILE **dbmfp,
                          u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB_ENV->memp_fcreate()` method creates a `DB_MPOOLFILE` structure that is the handle for a Berkeley DB cache (that is, a shared memory buffer pool file). A pointer to this structure is returned in the memory to which `dbmfp` refers. Calling the `DB_MPOOLFILE->close()` (page 471) method will discard the returned handle.

The `DB_ENV->memp_fcreate()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- `dbmfp`
  The `DB_ENV->memp_fcreate()` method returns a pointer to a mpool structure in `dbmfp`.

- `flags`
  The `flags` parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`, `DB_MPOOLFILE`

**See Also**

`Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)`
The DB_ENV->memp_register() method registers page-in and page-out functions for files of type ftype in the cache.

If the pgin_fcn function is non-NULL, it is called each time a page is read into the cache from a file of type ftype, or a page is created for a file of type ftype (see the DB_MPOOL_CREATE flag for the DB_MPOOLFILE->get() (page 472) method).

If the pgout_fcn function is non-NULL, it is called each time a page is written to a file of type ftype.

The purpose of the DB_ENV->memp_register() function is to support processing when pages are entered into, or flushed from, the cache. For example, this functionality might be used to do byte-endian conversion as pages are read from, or written to, the underlying file.

A file type must be specified to make it possible for unrelated threads or processes that are sharing a cache, to evict each other's pages from the cache. During initialization, applications should call DB_ENV->memp_register() for each type of file requiring input or output processing that will be sharing the underlying cache. (No registry is necessary for the standard Berkeley DB access method types because DB->open() (page 74) registers them separately.)

If a thread or process does not call DB_ENV->memp_register() for a file type, it is impossible for it to evict pages for any file requiring input or output processing from the cache. For this reason, DB_ENV->memp_register() should always be called by each application sharing a cache for each type of file included in the cache, regardless of whether or not the application itself uses files of that type.

The DB_ENV->memp_register() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**ftype**

The ftype parameter specifies the type of file for which the page-in and page-out functions will be called.

The ftype value for a file must be a non-zero positive number less than 128 (0 and negative numbers are reserved for internal use by the Berkeley DB library).

**pgin_fcn, pgout_fcn**

The page-in and page-out functions.
The \texttt{pgin\_fcn} and \texttt{pgout\_fcn} functions are called with a reference to the current database environment, the page number being read or written, a pointer to the page being read or written, and any parameter \texttt{pgcookie} that was specified to the \texttt{DB\_MPOOLFILE\_get\_pgcookie()} (page 497) method.

The \texttt{pgin\_fcn} and \texttt{pgout\_fcn} functions should return 0 on success, and a non-zero value on failure, in which case the shared Berkeley DB library function calling it will also fail, returning that non-zero value. The non-zero value should be selected from values outside of the Berkeley DB library namespace.

\textbf{Class}

\texttt{DB\_ENV, DB\_MPOOLFILE}

\textbf{See Also}

\textit{Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)}
The DB_ENV->memp_stat() method returns the memory pool (that is, the buffer cache) subsystem statistics.

The DB_ENV->memp_stat() method creates statistical structures of type DB_MPOOL_STAT and DB_MPOOL_FSTAT, and copy pointers to them into user-specified memory locations. The cache statistics are stored in the DB_MPOOL_STAT structure and the per-file cache statistics are stored the DB_MPOOL_FSTAT structure.

Statistical structures are stored in allocated memory. If application-specific allocation routines have been declared (see DB_ENV->set_alloc() (page 279) for more information), they are used to allocate the memory; otherwise, the standard C library malloc(3) is used. The caller is responsible for deallocating the memory. To deallocate the memory, free the memory reference; references inside the returned memory need not be individually freed.

If gsp is non-NULL, the global statistics for the cache mp are copied into the memory location to which it refers. The following DB_MPOOL_STAT fields will be filled in:

- **u_int32_t st_gbytes;**
  
  Gigabytes of cache (total cache size is st_gbytes + st_bytes).

- **u_int32_t st_bytes;**
  
  Bytes of cache (total cache size is st_gbytes + st_bytes).

- **u_int32_t st_ncache;**
  
  Number of caches.

- **u_int32_t st_max_ncache;**
  
  Maximum number of caches, as configured with the DB_ENV->set_cache_max() (page 457) method.

- **roff_t st_regsize;**
  
  Individual cache size, in bytes.

- **roff_t st_regmax;**
  
  The maximum size, in bytes, of the mutex region.

- **size_t st_mmapsize;**

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->memp_stat(DB_ENV *env, DB_MPOOL_STAT **gsp,
                     DB_MPOOL_FSTAT *(*fsp)[], u_int32_t flags);
```

```c
DB_ENV->memp_stat(DB_ENV *env, DB_MPOOL_STAT **gsp,
                     DB_MPOOL_FSTAT *(*fsp)[], u_int32_t flags);
```
Maximum memory-mapped file size.

- **int st_maxopenfd;**
  Maximum number of open file descriptors.

- **int st_maxwrite;**
  The maximum number of sequential write operations scheduled by the library when flushing dirty pages from the cache.

- **db_timeout_t st_maxwrite_sleep;**
  The number of microseconds the thread of control should pause before scheduling further write operations.

- **u_int32_t st_map;**
  Requested pages mapped into the process’ address space (there is no available information about whether or not this request caused disk I/O, although examining the application page fault rate may be helpful).

- **uintmax_t st_cache_hit;**
  Requested pages found in the cache.

- **uintmax_t st_cache_miss;**
  Requested pages not found in the cache.

- **uintmax_t st_page_create;**
  Pages created in the cache.

- **uintmax_t st_page_in;**
  Pages read into the cache.

- **uintmax_t st_page_out;**
  Pages written from the cache to the backing file.

- **uintmax_t st_ro_evict;**
  Clean pages forced from the cache.

- **uintmax_t st_rw_evict;**
  Dirty pages forced from the cache.

- **uintmax_t st_page_trickle;**
Dirty pages written using the `DB_ENV->memp_trickle()` (page 456) method.

- `u_int32_t st_pages;`
  Pages in the cache.
- `size_t st_pagesize;`
  Page size in bytes.
- `u_int32_t st_page_clean;`
  Clean pages currently in the cache.
- `u_int32_t st_page_dirty;`
  Dirty pages currently in the cache.
- `u_int32_t st_hash_buckets;`
  Number of hash buckets in buffer hash table.
- `uintmax_t st_hash_examined;`
  Total number of hash elements traversed during hash table lookups.
- `u_int32_t st_hash_longest;`
  Longest chain ever encountered in buffer hash table lookups.
- `u_int32_t st_hash_mutexes;`
  The number of hash bucket mutexes in the buffer hash table.
- `uintmax_t st_hash_nowait;`
  Number of times that a thread of control was able to obtain a hash bucket lock without waiting.
- `u_int32_t st_hash_searches;`
  Total number of buffer hash table lookups.
- `uintmax_t st_hash_wait;`
  Number of times that a thread of control was forced to wait before obtaining a hash bucket lock.
- `uintmax_t st_hash_max_nowait;`
  The number of times a thread of control was able to obtain the hash bucket lock without waiting on the bucket which had the maximum number of times that a thread of control needed to wait.
• `uintmax_t st_hash_max_wait;`
  Maximum number of times any hash bucket lock was waited for by a thread of control.

• `uintmax_t st_region_wait;`
  The number of times that a thread of control was forced to wait before obtaining a cache region mutex.

• `uintmax_t st_region_nowait;`
  The number of times that a thread of control was able to obtain a cache region mutex without waiting.

• `uintmax_t st_mvcc_frozen;`
  Number of buffers frozen.

• `uintmax_t st_mvcc_reused;`
  The number of outdated intermediate versions reused.

• `uintmax_t st_mvcc_thawed;`
  Number of buffers thawed.

• `uintmax_t st_mvcc_freed;`
  Number of frozen buffers freed.

• `uintmax_t st_alloc;`
  Number of page allocations.

• `uintmax_t st_alloc_buckets;`
  Number of hash buckets checked during allocation.

• `uintmax_t st_alloc_max_buckets;`
  Maximum number of hash buckets checked during an allocation.

• `uintmax_t st_alloc_pages;`
  Number of pages checked during allocation.

• `uintmax_t st_alloc_max_pages;`
  Maximum number of pages checked during an allocation.

• `uintmax_t st_io_wait;`
  Number of operations blocked waiting for I/O to complete.
uintmax_t st_sync_interrupted;

Number of mpool sync operations interrupted.

If fsp is non-NULL, a pointer to a NULL-terminated variable length array of statistics for individual files, in the cache mp, is copied into the memory location to which it refers. If no individual files currently exist in the cache, fsp will be set to NULL.

The per-file statistics are stored in structures of type DB_MPOOL_FSTAT. The following DB_MPOOL_FSTAT fields will be filled in for each file in the cache; that is, each element of the array:

char * file_name;
The name of the file.

size_t stpagesize;
Page size in bytes.

uintmax_t st_cache_hit;
Requested pages found in the cache.

uintmax_t st_cache_miss;
Requested pages not found in the cache.

u_int32_t st_map;
Requested pages mapped into the process' address space.

uintmax_t st_page_create;
Pages created in the cache.

uintmax_t st_page_in;
Pages read into the cache.

uintmax_t st_page_out;
Pages written from the cache to the backing file.

uintmax_t st_backup_spins;
Spins while trying to back up the file.

The DB_ENV->memp_stat() method may not be called before the DB_ENV->open() method is called.

The DB_ENV->memp_stat() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.
Parameters

**gsp**

The *gsp* parameter references memory into which a pointer to the allocated global statistics structure is copied.

**fsp**

The *fsp* parameter references memory into which a pointer to the allocated per-file statistics structures is copied.

**flags**

The *flags* parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

- **DB_STAT_CLEAR**

  Reset statistics after returning their values.

Errors

The `DB_ENV->memp_stat()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

`DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE`

See Also

`Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)`
The DB_ENV->memp_stat_print() method displays cache subsystem statistical information, as described for the DB_ENV->memp_stat() (page 448) method. The information is printed to a specified output channel (see the DB_ENV->set_msgfile() (page 326) method for more information), or passed to an application callback function (see the DB_ENV->set_msgcall() (page 324) method for more information).

The DB_ENV->memp_stat_print() method may not be called before the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called.

The DB_ENV->memp_stat_print() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

flags

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

- DB_STAT_ALL
  
  Display all available information.

- DB_STAT_ALLOC
  
  Display allocation information. To display allocation information, both DB_STAT_ALLOC and DB_STAT_ALL need to be set.

- DB_STAT_CLEAR
  
  Reset statistics after displaying their values.

- DB_STAT_MEMP_HASH
  
  Display the buffers with hash chains.

Class

DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE

See Also

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)
The DB_ENV->memp_sync() method flushes modified pages in the cache to their backing files.

Pages in the cache that cannot be immediately written back to disk (for example, pages that are currently in use by another thread of control) are waited for and written to disk as soon as it is possible to do so.

The DB_ENV->memp_sync() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

*lsn*

The purpose of the `lsn` parameter is to enable a transaction manager to ensure, as part of a checkpoint, that all pages modified by a certain time have been written to disk.

All modified pages with a a log sequence number (`DB_LSN`) less than the `lsn` parameter are written to disk. If `lsn` is NULL, all modified pages in the cache are written to disk.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE`

**See Also**

* Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)
The DB_ENV->memp_trickle() method ensures that a specified percent of the pages in the cache are clean, by writing dirty pages to their backing files.

The purpose of the DB_ENV->memp_trickle() function is to enable a memory pool manager to ensure that a page is always available for reading in new information without having to wait for a write.

The DB_ENV->memp_trickle() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**percent**

The `percent` parameter is the percent of the pages in the cache that should be clean.

**nwrotep**

The `nwrotep` parameter references memory into which the number of pages written to reach the specified percentage is copied.

### Errors

The DB_ENV->memp_trickle() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors: following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

### Class

DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE

### See Also

*Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)*
DB_ENV->set_cache_max()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_cache_max(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t gbytes, u_int32_t bytes);
```

Sets the maximum cache size in bytes. The specified size is rounded to the nearest multiple of the cache region size, which is the initial cache size divided by the number of regions specified to the DB_ENV->set_cachesize() (page 459) method. If no value is specified, it defaults to the initial cache size.

The database environment’s maximum cache size may also be configured using the environment’s DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string “set_cache_max”, one or more whitespace characters, and the maximum cache size in bytes, specified in two parts: the gigabytes of cache and the additional bytes of cache. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->set_cache_max() method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

The DB_ENV->set_cache_max() method must be called prior to opening the database environment.

The DB_ENV->set_cache_max() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**gbytes**

The `gbytes` parameter specifies the number of bytes which, when added to the `bytes` parameter, specifies the maximum size of the cache.

**bytes**

The `bytes` parameter specifies the number of bytes which, when added to the `gbytes` parameter, specifies the maximum size of the cache.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->set_cache_max() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB_ENV
See Also

Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
Sets the size of the shared memory buffer pool — that is, the cache. The cache should be the size of the normal working data set of the application, with some small amount of additional memory for unusual situations. (Note: the working set is not the same as the number of pages accessed simultaneously, and is usually much larger.)

The default cache size is 256KB, and may not be specified as less than 20KB. Any cache size less than 500MB is automatically increased by 25% to account for cache overhead; cache sizes larger than 500MB are used as specified. The maximum size of a single cache is 4GB on 32-bit systems and 10TB on 64-bit systems. (All sizes are in powers-of-two, that is, 256KB is 2^18 not 256,000.) For information on tuning the Berkeley DB cache size, see Selecting a cache size.

It is possible to specify caches to Berkeley DB large enough they cannot be allocated contiguously on some architectures. For example, some releases of Solaris limit the amount of memory that may be allocated contiguously by a process. If ncache is 0 or 1, the cache will be allocated contiguously in memory. If it is greater than 1, the cache will be split across ncache separate regions, where the region size is equal to the initial cache size divided by ncache.

The cache may be resized by calling DB_ENV->set_cachesize() after the environment is open. The supplied size will be rounded to the nearest multiple of the region size and may not be larger than the maximum size configured with DB_ENV->set_cache_max() (page 457). The ncache parameter is ignored when resizing the cache.

The database environment's initial cache size may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_cachesize", one or more whitespace characters, and the initial cache size specified in three parts: the gigabytes of cache, the additional bytes of cache, and the number of caches, also separated by whitespace characters. For example, "set_cachesize 2 524288000 3" would create a 2.5GB logical cache, split between three physical caches. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->set_cachesize() method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

When used with sliced databases, the DB_ENV->set_cachesize() method must be called for each slice environment. That is, for each slice, there is a sub-environment, and this method must be called on each such environment individually. Use DB_ENV->get_slices() (page 257) to retrieve an array of slice environments.

The DB_ENV->set_cachesize() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->set_cachesize() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.
Parameters

- **gbytes**
  The size of the cache is set to *gbytes* gigabytes plus *bytes*.

- **bytes**
  The size of the cache is set to *gbytes* gigabytes plus *bytes*.

- **ncache**
  The *ncache* parameter is the number of caches to create.

Errors

The `DB_ENV->set_cachesize()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  If the specified cache size was impossibly small; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

- **DB_ENV**

See Also

- Database Environments and Related Methods (page 213)
DB_ENV->set_mp_max_openfd()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->set_mp_max_openfd(DB_ENV *env, int maxopenfd);
```

The `DB_ENV->set_mp_max_openfd()` method limits the number of file descriptors the library will open concurrently when flushing dirty pages from the cache.

The database environment's limit on open file descriptors to flush dirty pages may also be configured using the environment's `DB_CONFIG` file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_mp_max_openfd", one or more whitespace characters, and the number of open file descriptors. Because the `DB_CONFIG` file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The `DB_ENV->set_mp_max_openfd()` (page 461) method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle.

The `DB_ENV->set_mp_max_openfd()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`maxopenfd`

The maximum number of file descriptors that may be concurrently opened by the library when flushing dirty pages from the cache.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->set_mp_max_openfd()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE`

**See Also**

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)
**DB_ENV->set_mp_max_write()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_mp_max_write(DB_ENV *env, int maxwrite,
                               db_timeout_t maxwrite_sleep);
```

The `DB_ENV->set_mp_max_write()` method limits the number of sequential write operations scheduled by the library when flushing dirty pages from the cache.

The database environment's maximum number of sequential write operations may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_mp_max_write", one or more whitespace characters, and the maximum number of sequential writes and the number of microseconds to sleep, also separated by whitespace characters. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The `DB_ENV->set_mp_max_write()` method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle.

The `DB_ENV->set_mp_max_write()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **maxwrite**
  
The maximum number of sequential write operations scheduled by the library when flushing dirty pages from the cache, or 0 if there is no limitation on the number of sequential write operations.

- **maxwrite_sleep**
  
The number of microseconds the thread of control should pause before scheduling further write operations. It must be specified as an unsigned 32-bit number of microseconds, limiting the maximum pause to roughly 71 minutes.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->set_mp_max_write()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE`
See Also

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)
DB_ENV->set_mp_mmapsize()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_mp_mmapsize(DB_ENV *dbenv, size_t mp_mmapsize);
```

Files that are opened read-only in the cache (and that satisfy a few other criteria) are, by default, mapped into the process address space instead of being copied into the local cache. This can result in better-than-usual performance because available virtual memory is normally much larger than the local cache, and page faults are faster than page copying on many systems. However, it can cause resource starvation in the presence of limited virtual memory, and it can result in immense process sizes in the presence of large databases.

The `DB_ENV->set_mp_mmapsize()` method sets the maximum file size, in bytes, for a file to be mapped into the process address space. If no value is specified, it defaults to 10MB.

The database environment’s maximum mapped file size may also be configured using the environment’s DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string “set_mp_mmapsize”, one or more whitespace characters, and the size in bytes. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The `DB_ENV->set_mp_mmapsize()` method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle.

The `DB_ENV->set_mp_mmapsize()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->set_mp_mmapsize()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`mp_mmapsize`

The `mp_mmapsize` parameter is the maximum file size, in bytes, for a file to be mapped into the process address space.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->set_mp_mmapsize()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`, `DB_MPOOLFILE`
See Also

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)
**DB_ENV->set_mp_mtxcount()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->set_mp_mtxcount(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t mtxcount);
```

The DB_ENV->set_mp_mtxcount() method overrides the default number of mutexes for the hash table in each memory pool cache. The default is one mutex per hash bucket. Setting it to a lower number decreases the number of mutexes used and the amount of memory needed to store them at the expense of concurrency in the memory pool. This can also improve startup time. Setting a number greater than the number size of the hash table will waste mutexes and space.

You must call this method only before the environment is opened.

**Parameters**

** mtxcount

Specifies the number of mutexes allocated to the buffer pool hash table.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE

**See Also**

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434), DB_ENV->get_mp_mtxcount() (page 442)
**DB_ENV->set_mp_pagesize()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_mp_pagesize(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t pagesize);
```

The `DB_ENV->set_mp_pagesize()` method sets the pagesize used to allocate the hash table and the number of mutexes expected to be needed by the buffer pool.

This method may be called only before the environment is opened.

**Parameters**

- **pagesize**

  The pagesize parameter specifies expected page size use. Generally, it is set to the expected average page size for all the data pages that are in the buffer pool.

**Class**

  DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE

**See Also**

  Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434), `DB_ENV->get_mp_pagesize()` (page 443)
**DB_ENV->set_mp_tablesize()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->set_mp_tablesize(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t tablesiz
```

The `DB_ENV->set_mp_tablesize()` method overrides the calculated hash table size. This value is then internally adjusted to a nearby prime number in order to enhance the hashing algorithm.

This method may be called only before the environment is opened.

**Parameters**

- **tablesiz**
  
The table size parameter specifies the size of the buffer pool hash table. It is adjusted to a near prime number to enhance the hashing algorithm.

**Class**

- `DB_ENV`, `DB_MPOOLFILE`

**See Also**

- `Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)`, `DB_ENV->get_mp_tablesize()` (page 444)
# DB_ENV->set_region_dir()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->set_region_dir(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char *dir);
```

The path of a directory to be used as the location of disk-backed region files. Region files created by the Memory Pool subsystem will be created in this directory.

If no region directory is specified, region files are created in the environment home directory. See Berkeley DB File Naming for more information.

The database environment's region directory may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_region_dir", one or more whitespace characters, and the directory name. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time. Note that if you use this method for your application, and you also want to use the various utilities like db_recover (page 721), then you should set create a DB_CONFIG file and set the "set_region_dir" parameter in it.

The DB_ENV->set_region_dir() method configures operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The DB_ENV->set_region_dir() method may not be called after the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called. If the database environment already exists when DB_ENV->open() (page 271) is called, the information specified to DB_ENV->set_region_dir() must be consistent with the existing environment or corruption can occur.

The DB_ENV->set_region_dir() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

## Parameters

**dir**

The `dir` parameter is the directory used to store the region files. This directory must currently exist at environment open time.

When using a Unicode build on Windows (the default), the `dir` argument will be interpreted as a UTF-8 string, which is equivalent to ASCII for Latin characters.

## Errors

The DB_ENV->set_region_dir() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after DB_ENV->open() (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.
Class

DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE

See Also

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434), DB_ENV->get_region_dir() (page 488)
DB_MPOOLFILE->close()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_MPOOLFILE->close(DB_MPOOLFILE *mpf, u_int32_t flags);
```

The DB_MPOOLFILE->close() method closes the source file indicated by the DB_MPOOLFILE structure. Calling DB_MPOOLFILE->close() does not imply a call to DB_MPOOLFILE->sync() (page 479); that is, no pages are written to the source file as a result of calling DB_MPOOLFILE->close().

If the DB_MPOOLFILE was temporary, any underlying files created for this DB_MPOOLFILE will be removed.

After DB_MPOOLFILE->close() has been called, regardless of its return, the DB_MPOOLFILE handle may not be accessed again.

The DB_MPOOLFILE->close() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

flags

The flags parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE

**See Also**

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)
DB_MPOOLFILE->get()

#include <db.h>

int DB_MPOOLFILE->get(DB_MPOOLFILE *mpf, 
                      db_pgno_t *pgnoaddr, DB_TXN *txnid, u_int32_t flags, void **pagep);

The DB_MPOOLFILE->get() method returns pages from the cache.

All pages returned by DB_MPOOLFILE->get() will be retained (that is, latched) in the cache until a subsequent call to DB_MPOOLFILE->put() (page 477). There is no deadlock detection among latches so care must be taken in the application if the DB_MPOOL_DIRTY or DB_MPOOL_EDIT flags are used as these get exclusive latches on the pages.

The returned page is size_t type aligned.

Fully or partially created pages have all their bytes set to a null byte, unless the DB_MPOOLFILE->set_clear_len() (page 489) method was called to specify other behavior before the file was opened.

The DB_MPOOLFILE->get() method will return DB_PAGE_NOTFOUND if the requested page does not exist and DB_MPOOL_CREATE was not set. Unless otherwise specified, the DB_MPOOLFILE->get() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

flags

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

- DB_MPOOL_CREATE

  If the specified page does not exist, create it. In this case, the pgin method, if specified, is called.

- DB_MPOOL_DIRTY

  The page will be modified and must be written to the source file before being evicted from the cache. For files open with the DB_MULTIVERSION flag set, a new copy of the page will be made if this is the first time the specified transaction is modifying it. A page fetched with the DB_MPOOL_DIRTY flag will be exclusively latched until a subsequent call to DB_MPOOLFILE->put() (page 477).

- DB_MPOOL_EDIT

  The page will be modified and must be written to the source file before being evicted from the cache. No copy of the page will be made, regardless of the DB_MULTIVERSION setting. This flag is only intended for use in situations where a transaction handle is not available,
such as during aborts or recovery. A page fetched with the DB_MPOOL_EDIT flag will be
exclusively latched until a subsequent call to DB_MPOOLFILE->put() (page 477).

• DB_MPOOL_LAST

Return the last page of the source file, and copy its page number into the memory location
to which pgnoaddr refers.

• DB_MPOOL_NEW

Create a new page in the file, and copy its page number into the memory location to
which pgnoaddr refers. In this case, the pgin_fcn callback, if specified on DB_ENV-
>memp_register() (page 446), is not called.

The DB_MPOOL_CREATE, DB_MPOOL_LAST, and DB_MPOOL_NEW flags are mutually exclusive.

pagep

The pagep parameter references memory into which a pointer to the returned page is copied.

pgnoaddr

If the flags parameter is set to DB_MPOOL_LAST or DB_MPOOL_NEW, the page number of the
created page is copied into the memory location to which the pgnoaddr parameter refers.
Otherwise, the pgnoaddr parameter is the page to create or retrieve.

Note

Page numbers begin at 0; that is, the first page in the file is page number 0, not page
number 1.

txnid

If the operation is part of an application-specified transaction, the txnid parameter is a
transaction handle returned from DB_ENV->txn_begin() (page 648); otherwise NULL. A
transaction is required if the file is open for multiversion concurrency control by passing
DB_MULTIVERSION to DB_MPOOLFILE->open() (page 475) and the DB_MPOOL_DIRTY,
DB_MPOOL_CREATE or DB_MPOOL_NEW flags were specified. Otherwise it is ignored.

Errors

The DB_MPOOLFILE->get() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EACCES

The DB_MPOOL_DIRTY or DB_MPOOL_EDIT flag was set and the source file was not opened for
writing.

EAGAIN

The page reference count has overflowed. (This should never happen unless there is a bug in
the application.)
EINVAL

If the DB_MPOOL_NEW flag was set, and the source file was not opened for writing; more than one of DB_MPOOL_CREATE, DB_MPOOL_LAST, and DB_MPOOL_NEW was set; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK

For transactions configured with DB_TXN_SNAPSHOT, the page has been modified since the transaction began.

ENOMEM

The cache is full, and no more pages will fit in the cache.

Class

DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE

See Also

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)
**DB_MPOOLFILE->open()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_MPOOLFILE->open(DB_MPOOLFILE *mpf,
                     char *file, u_int32_t flags, int mode, size_t pagesize);
```

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->open()` method opens a file in the in-memory cache.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->open()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**file**

The `file` parameter is the name of the file to be opened. If `file` is NULL, a private temporary file is created that cannot be shared with any other process (although it may be shared with other threads of control in the same process).

When using a Unicode build on Windows (the default), the `file` argument will be interpreted as a UTF-8 string, which is equivalent to ASCII for Latin characters.

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to zero or by bitwise inclusively OR’ing together one or more of the following values:

- **DB_CREATE**
  
  Create any underlying files, as necessary. If the database do not already exist and the `DB_CREATE` flag is not specified, the call will fail.

- **DB_DIRECT**
  
  If set and supported by the system, turn off system buffering of the file to avoid double caching.

- **DB_MULTIVERSION**
  
  Open the file with support for multiversion concurrency control. Calls to `DB_MPOOLFILE->get()` (page 472) with dirty pages will cause copies to be made in the cache.

- **DB_NOMMAP**
  
  Always copy this file into the local cache instead of potentially mapping it into process memory (see the `DB_ENV->set_mp_mmapsize()` (page 464) method for further information).

- **DB_ODDFILESIZE**
Attempts to open files which are not a multiple of the page size in length will fail, by default. If the DB_ODDFILESIZE flag is set, any partial page at the end of the file will be ignored and the open will proceed.

- **DB_RDONLY**

  Open any underlying files for reading only. Any attempt to modify the file using the memory pool (cache) functions will fail, regardless of the actual permissions of the file.

**mode**

On Windows systems, the mode parameter is ignored.

On UNIX systems or in IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) environments, files created by DB_MPOOLFILE->open() are created with mode `mode` (as described in `chmod(2)`) and modified by the process' umask value at the time of creation (see `umask(2)`). Created files are owned by the process owner; the group ownership of created files is based on the system and directory defaults, and is not further specified by Berkeley DB. System shared memory segments created by DB_MPOOLFILE->open() are created with mode `mode`, unmodified by the process' umask value. If `mode` is 0, DB_MPOOLFILE->open() will use a default mode of readable and writable by both owner and group.

**pagesize**

The `pagesize` parameter is the size, in bytes, of the unit of transfer between the application and the cache, although it is not necessarily the unit of transfer between the cache and the underlying filesystem.

**Errors**

The DB_MPOOLFILE->open() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the file has already been entered into the cache, and the `pagesize` value is not the same as when the file was entered into the cache, or the length of the file is not zero or a multiple of the `pagesize`; the DB_RDONLY flag was specified for an in-memory cache; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**ENOMEM**

The maximum number of open files has been reached.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE

**See Also**

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)
The `DB_MPOOLFILE->put()` method returns a reference to a page in the cache, setting the priority of the page as specified by the `priority` parameter.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->put()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**pgaddr**

The `pgaddr` parameter is the address of the page to be returned to the cache. The `pgaddr` parameter must be a value previously returned by the `DB_MPOOLFILE->get()` method.

**priority**

Set the page's `priority` as follows:

- **DB_PRIORITY_UNCHANGED**
  
The priority is unchanged.

- **DB_PRIORITY_VERY_LOW**
  
The lowest priority: pages are the most likely to be discarded.

- **DB_PRIORITY_LOW**
  
The next lowest priority.

- **DB_PRIORITY_DEFAULT**
  
The default priority.

- **DB_PRIORITY_HIGH**
  
The next highest priority.

- **DB_PRIORITY_VERY_HIGH**
  
The highest priority: pages are the least likely to be discarded.

**flags**

The `flags` parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.
Errors

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->put()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

`DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE`

See Also

`Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)`
DB_MPOOLFILE->sync()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_MPOOLFILE->sync(DB_MPOOLFILE *mpf);
```

The DB_MPOOLFILE->sync() method writes all modified pages associated with the DB_MPOOLFILE back to the source file. If any of the modified pages are pinned (that is, currently in use), DB_MPOOLFILE->sync() will ignore them.

The DB_MPOOLFILE->sync() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE

**See Also**

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)
**DB_MPOOLFILE->get_clear_len()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_MPOOLFILE->get_clear_len(DB_MPOOLFILE *mpf, u_int32_t *lenp);
```

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->get_clear_len()` method returns the bytes to be cleared.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->get_clear_len()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->get_clear_len()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

*lenp*

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->get_clear_len()` method returns the bytes to be cleared in `lenp`.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE`

**See Also**

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)
The `DB_MPOOLFILE->get_fileid()` method copies the file's identifier into the memory location referenced by `fileid`. The fileid specifies a unique identifier for the file, which is used so that the cache functions (that is, the shared memory buffer pool functions) are able to uniquely identify files. This is necessary for multiple processes wanting to share a file to correctly identify the file in the cache.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->get_fileid()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`, `DB_MPOOLFILE`

**See Also**

`Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)`, `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_fileid()` (page 490)
The DB_MPOOLFILE->get_flags() method returns the flags used to configure a file in the cache.

The DB_MPOOLFILE->get_flags() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_MPOOLFILE->get_flags() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

*fflagsp*

The DB_MPOOLFILE->get_flags() method returns the flags in *flagsp*.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE

**See Also**

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434), DB_MPOOLFILE->set_flags() (page 492)
DB_MPOOLFILE->get_ftype()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_MPOOLFILE->get_ftype(DB_MPOOLFILE *mpf, int *ftypep);
```

The DB_MPOOLFILE->get_ftype() method returns the file type. The file type is used for the purposes of file processing, and will be the same as is set using the DB_ENV->memp_register() (page 446) method.

The DB_MPOOLFILE->get_ftype() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_MPOOLFILE->get_ftype() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- `ftypep`

  The DB_MPOOLFILE->get_ftype() method returns the file type in `ftypep`.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE

**See Also**

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434), DB_MPOOLFILE->set_ftype() (page 494)
**DB_MPOOLFILE->get_lsn_offset()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_MPOOLFILE->get_lsn_offset(DB_MPOOLFILE *mpf, int32_t *lsn_offsetp);
```

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->get_lsn_offset()` method returns the log sequence number byte offset configured for a file's pages using the `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_lsn_offset()` (page 495) method.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->get_lsn_offset()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->get_lsn_offset()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**lsn_offsetp**

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->get_lsn_offset()` method returns the log sequence number byte offset in `lsn_offsetp`.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE`

**See Also**

*Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434), DB_MPOOLFILE->set_lsn_offset() (page 495)*
DB_MPOOLFILE->get_maxsize()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_MPOOLFILE->get_maxsize(DB_MPOOLFILE *mpf,
    u_int32_t *gbytesp, u_int32_t *bytesp);
```

Returns the maximum size configured for the file, as configured using the DB_MPOOLFILE->set_maxsize() (page 496) method.

The DB_MPOOLFILE->get_maxsize() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

The DB_MPOOLFILE->get_maxsize() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Parameters**

- **gbytesp**

  The `gbytesp` parameter references memory into which the gigabytes of memory in the maximum file size is copied.

- **bytesp**

  The `bytesp` parameter references memory into which the additional bytes of memory in the maximum file size is copied.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE

**See Also**

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434), DB_MPOOLFILE->set_maxsize() (page 496)
The `DB_MPOOLFILE->get_pgcookie()` method returns the byte string provided to the functions registered to do input or output processing of the file's pages as they are read from or written to, the backing filesystem store. This byte string is configured using the `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_pgcookie()` (page 497) method.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->get_pgcookie()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->get_pgcookie()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **dbt**

  The `DB_MPOOLFILE->get_pgcookie()` method returns a reference to the byte string in `dbt`.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`, `DB_MPOOLFILE`

**See Also**

- `Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)`, `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_pgcookie()` (page 497)`
DB_MPOOLFILE->get_priority()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_MPOOLFILE->get_priority(DB_MPOOLFILE *mpf,
                                DB_CACHE_PRIORITY *priorityp);
```

The DB_MPOOLFILE->get_priority() method returns the cache priority for the file referenced by the DB_MPOOLFILE handle. The priority of a page biases the replacement algorithm to be more or less likely to discard a page when space is needed in the cache. This value is set using the DB_MPOOLFILE->set_priority() (page 498) method.

The DB_MPOOLFILE->get_priority() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_MPOOLFILE->get_priority() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**priorityp**

The DB_MPOOLFILE->get_priority() method returns a reference to the cache priority for the file referenced by the DB_MPOOLFILE handle in priorityp.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE

**See Also**

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434), DB_MPOOLFILE->set_priority() (page 498)
The `DB_ENV->get_region_dir()` method returns the region directory, which is the location for the disk-backed region files. You can manage this value using the `DB_ENV->set_region_dir()` method.

The `DB_ENV->get_region_dir()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->get_region_dir()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`dirp`

The `DB_ENV->get_region_dir()` method returns a reference to the region directory in `dirp`.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE`

**See Also**

`Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434), DB_ENV->set_region_dir()`
DB_MPOOLFILE->set_clear_len()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_MPOOLFILE->set_clear_len(DB_MPOOLFILE *mpf, u_int32_t len);
```

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_clear_len()` method sets the number of initial bytes in a page that should be set to nul when the page is created as a result of the `DB_MPOOL_CREATE` or `DB_MPOOL_NEW` flags specified to `DB_MPOOLFILE->get()` (page 472). If no clear length is specified, the entire page is cleared when it is created.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_clear_len()` method configures a file in the cache, not only operations performed using the specified `DB_MPOOLFILE` handle.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_clear_len()` method may not be called after the `DB_MPOOLFILE->open()` (page 475) method is called. If the file is already open in the cache when `DB_MPOOLFILE->open()` (page 475) is called, the information specified to `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_clear_len()` must be consistent with the existing file or an error will be returned.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_clear_len()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`len`

The `len` parameter is the number of initial bytes in a page that should be set to nul when the page is created. A value of 0 results in the entire page being set to nul bytes.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE`

**See Also**

`Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)`
The DB_MPOOLFILE Handle

DB_MPOOLFILE->set_fileid()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_MPOOLFILE->set_fileid(DB_MPOOLFILE *mpf, u_int8_t *fileid);
```

The DB_MPOOLFILE->set_fileid() method specifies a unique identifier for the file. (The shared memory buffer pool functions must be able to uniquely identify files in order that multiple processes wanting to share a file will correctly identify it in the cache.)

On most UNIX/POSIX systems, the fileid field will not need to be set, and the memory pool functions will use the file's device and inode numbers for this purpose. On Windows systems, the memory pool functions use the values returned by GetFileInformationByHandle() by default — these values are known to be constant between processes and over reboot in the case of NTFS (in which they are the NTFS MFT indices).

On other filesystems (for example, FAT or NFS), these default values are not necessarily unique between processes or across system reboots. Applications wanting to maintain a shared cache between processes or across system reboots, in which the cache contains pages from files stored on such filesystems, must specify a unique file identifier using the DB_MPOOLFILE->set_fileid() method, and each process opening the file must provide the same unique identifier.

This call should not be necessary for most applications. Specifically, it is not necessary if the cache is not shared between processes and is reinstantiated after each system reboot, if the application is using the Berkeley DB access methods instead of calling the pool functions explicitly, or if the files in the cache are stored on filesystems in which the default values as described previously are invariant between process and across system reboots.

The DB_MPOOLFILE->set_fileid() method configures a file in the cache, not only operations performed using the specified DB_MPOOLFILE handle.

The DB_MPOOLFILE->set_fileid() method may not be called after the DB_MPOOLFILE->open() (page 475) method is called. If the mpool file already exists when DB_MPOOLFILE->open() is called, the information specified to DB_MPOOLFILE->set_fileid() must be the same as that historically used to create the mpool file or corruption can occur.

The DB_MPOOLFILE->set_fileid() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**fileid**

The fileid parameter is the unique identifier for the file. Unique file identifiers must be a DB_FILE_ID_LEN length array of bytes.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE
See Also

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)
DB_MPOOLFILE->set_flags()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_MPOOLFILE->set_flags(DB_MPOOLFILE *mpf, u_int32_t flags, int onoff)
```

Configure a file in the cache.

To set the flags for a particular database, call the `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_flags()` method using the `DB_MPOOLFILE` handle stored in the `mpf` field of the `DB` handle.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_flags()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**flags**

The `flags` must be set to one of the following values:

- **DB_MPOOL_NOFILE**
  
  If set, no backing temporary file will be opened for the specified in-memory database, even if it expands to fill the entire cache. Attempts to create new database pages after the cache has been filled will fail.

  The `DB_MPOOL_NOFILE` flag configures a file in the cache, not only operations performed using the specified `DB_MPOOLFILE` handle.

  The `DB_MPOOL_NOFILE` flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life of the application.

- **DB_MPOOL_UNLINK**
  
  If set, remove the file when the last reference to it is closed.

  The `DB_MPOOL_UNLINK` flag configures a file in the cache, not only operations performed using the specified `DB_MPOOLFILE` handle.

  The `DB_MPOOL_UNLINK` flag may be used to configure Berkeley DB at any time during the life of the application.

- **onoff**
  
  If `onoff` is zero, the specified flags are cleared; otherwise they are set.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE`
See Also

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)
DB_MPOOLFILE->set_ftype()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_MPOOLFILE->set_ftype(DB_MPOOLFILE *mpf, int ftype);
```

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_ftype()` method specifies a file type for the purposes of input or output processing of the file's pages as they are read from or written to, the backing filesystem store.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_ftype()` method configures a file in the cache, not only operations performed using the specified `DB_MPOOLFILE` handle.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_ftype()` method may not be called after the `DB_MPOOLFILE->open()` (page 475) method is called. If the file is already open in the cache when `DB_MPOOLFILE->open()` (page 475) is called, the information specified to `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_ftype()` will replace the existing information.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_ftype()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **ftype**

  The `ftype` parameter sets the file's type for the purposes of input and output processing. The `ftype` must be the same as a `ftype` parameter previously specified to the `DB_ENV->memp_register()` (page 446) method.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE`

**See Also**

`Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)`
DB_MPOOLFILE->set_lsn_offset()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_MPOOLFILE->set_lsn_offset(DB_MPOOLFILE *mpf, int32_t lsn_offset);
```

The DB_MPOOLFILE->set_lsn_offset() method specifies the zero-based byte offset of a log sequence number (DB_LSN) on the file's pages, for the purposes of page-flushing as part of transaction checkpoint. (See the DB_ENV->memp_sync() (page 455) documentation for more information.)

The DB_MPOOLFILE->set_lsn_offset() method configures a file in the cache, not only operations performed using the specified DB_MPOOLFILE handle.

The DB_MPOOLFILE->set_lsn_offset() method may not be called after the DB_MPOOLFILE->open() (page 475) method is called. If the file is already open in the cache when DB_MPOOLFILE->open() (page 475) is called, the information specified to DB_MPOOLFILE->set_lsn_offset() must be consistent with the existing file or an error will be returned.

The DB_MPOOLFILE->set_lsn_offset() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**lsn_offset**

The lsn_offset parameter is the zero-based byte offset of the log sequence number on the file's pages.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE

**See Also**

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)
DB_MPOOLFILE->set_maxsize()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_MPOOLFILE->set_maxsize(DB_MPOOLFILE *mpf,
   u_int32_t gbytes, u_int32_t bytes);
```

Set the maximum size for the file to be `gbytes` gigabytes plus `bytes`. Attempts to set the file size smaller than or equal to the page size removes the file size limit. Attempts to allocate new pages in the file after the limit has been reached will fail.

To set the maximum file size for a particular database, call the `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_maxsize()` method using the `DB_MPOOLFILE` handle stored in the `mpf` field of the `DB` handle. Attempts to insert new items into the database after the limit has been reached may fail.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_maxsize()` method configures a file in the cache, not only operations performed using the specified `DB_MPOOLFILE` handle.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_maxsize()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_maxsize()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- `bytes`
  The maximum size of the file is set to `gbytes` gigabytes plus `bytes`.

- `gbytes`
  The maximum size of the file is set to `gbytes` gigabytes plus `bytes`.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE`

**See Also**

`Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)`
DB_MPOOLFILE->set_pgcookie()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_MPOOLFILE->set_pgcookie(DB_MPOOLFILE *mpf, DBT *pgcookie);
```

The DB_MPOOLFILE->set_pgcookie() method specifies a byte string that is provided to the functions registered to do input or output processing of the file's pages as they are read from or written to, the backing filesystem store. (See the DB_ENV->memp_register() (page 446) documentation for more information.)

The DB_MPOOLFILE->set_pgcookie() method configures a file in the cache, not only operations performed using the specified DB_MPOOLFILE handle.

The DB_MPOOLFILE->set_pgcookie() method may not be called after the DB_MPOOLFILE->open() (page 475) method is called. If the file is already open in the cache when DB_MPOOLFILE->open() (page 475) is called, the information specified to DB_MPOOLFILE->set_pgcookie() will replace the existing information.

The DB_MPOOLFILE->set_pgcookie() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **pgcookie**

  The pgcookie parameter is a byte string provided to the functions registered to do input or output processing of the file's pages.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE

**See Also**

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)
**DB_MPOOLFILE->set_priority()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_MPOOLFILE->set_priority(DB_MPOOLFILE *mpf, DB_CACHE_PRIORITY priority);
```

Set the cache priority for pages referenced by the `DB_MPOOLFILE` handle.

The priority of a page biases the replacement algorithm to be more or less likely to discard a page when space is needed in the cache. The bias is temporary, and pages will eventually be discarded if they are not referenced again. The `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_priority()` method is only advisory, and does not guarantee pages will be treated in a specific way.

To set the priority for the pages belonging to a particular database, call the `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_priority()` method using the `DB_MPOOLFILE` handle returned by the `DB_MPOOLFILE->get_mpf()` method.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_priority()` method configures a file in the cache, not only operations performed using the specified `DB_MPOOLFILE` handle.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_priority()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_priority()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`priority`

The `priority` parameter must be set to one of the following values:

- `DB_PRIORITY_VERY_LOW`
  
  The lowest priority: pages are the most likely to be discarded.

- `DB_PRIORITY_LOW`
  
  The next lowest priority.

- `DB_PRIORITY_DEFAULT`
  
  The default priority.

- `DB_PRIORITY_HIGH`
  
  The next highest priority.

- `DB_PRIORITY_VERY_HIGH`
  
  The highest priority: pages are the least likely to be discarded.
Class

DB_ENV, DB_MPOOLFILE

See Also

Memory Pools and Related Methods (page 434)
Chapter 9. Mutex Methods

This chapter describes methods that can be used to manage mutexes within DB. Many of the methods described here are used to configure DB's internal mutex system. However, a series of APIs are available for use as a general-purpose, cross platform mutex management system. These methods can be used independently of DB's main purpose, which is as a high-end data management engine.
## Mutex Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mutexes and Related Methods</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_ENV-&gt;mutex_alloc()</code></td>
<td>Allocate a mutex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_ENV-&gt;mutex_free()</code></td>
<td>Free a mutex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_ENV-&gt;mutex_lock()</code></td>
<td>Lock a mutex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_ENV-&gt;mutex_stat()</code></td>
<td>Mutex statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_ENV-&gt;mutex_stat_print()</code></td>
<td>Print mutex statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_ENV-&gt;mutex_unlock()</code></td>
<td>Unlock a mutex</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Mutex Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_ENV-&gt;mutex_set_align()</code>, <code>DB_ENV-&gt;mutex_get_align()</code></td>
<td>Configure mutex alignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_ENV-&gt;mutex_set_increment()</code>, <code>DB_ENV-&gt;mutex_get_increment()</code></td>
<td>Configure number of additional mutexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_ENV-&gt;mutex_set_init()</code>, <code>DB_ENV-&gt;mutex_get_init()</code></td>
<td>Configure initial number of mutexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_ENV-&gt;mutex_set_max()</code>, <code>DB_ENV-&gt;mutex_get_max()</code></td>
<td>Configure total number of mutexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_ENV-&gt;mutex_set_tas_spins()</code>, <code>DB_ENV-&gt;mutex_get_tas_spins()</code></td>
<td>Configure test-and-set mutex spin count</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DB_ENV->mutex_alloc()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->mutex_alloc(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t flags, db_mutex_t *mutexp);
```

The DB_ENV->mutex_alloc() method allocates a mutex and returns a reference to it into the memory specified by mutexp.

The DB_ENV->mutex_alloc() method may not be called before the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called.

The DB_ENV->mutex_alloc() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **flags**
  The flags parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

    - **DB_MUTEX_PROCESS_ONLY**
      The mutex is associated with a single process. The DB_ENV->failchk() (page 232) method will release mutexes held by any process which has exited.

    - **DB_MUTEX_SELF_BLOCK**
      The mutex must be self-blocking. That is, if a thread of control locks the mutex and then attempts to lock the mutex again, the thread of control will block until another thread of control releases the original lock on the mutex, allowing the original thread of control to lock the mutex the second time. Attempting to re-acquire a mutex for which the DB_MUTEX_SELF_BLOCK flag was not specified will result in undefined behavior.

- **mutexp**
  The mutexp parameter references memory into which the mutex reference is copied.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->mutex_alloc() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

- **DB_ENV**
See Also

Mutex Methods (page 501)
DB_ENV->mutex_free()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->mutex_free(DB_ENV *dbenv, db_mutex_t mutex);
```

The `DB_ENV->mutex_free()` method discards a mutex allocated by `DB_ENV->mutex_alloc()` (page 502).

The `DB_ENV->mutex_free()` method may not be called before the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method is called.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_free()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`mutex`

The `mutex` parameter is a mutex previously allocated by `DB_ENV->mutex_alloc()` (page 502).

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->mutex_free()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

`Mutex Methods (page 501)`
DB_ENV->mutex_get_align()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->mutex_get_align(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t *alignp);
```

The `DB_ENV->mutex_get_align()` method returns the mutex alignment, in bytes.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_get_align()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_get_align()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`alignp`

The `DB_ENV->mutex_get_align()` method returns the mutex alignment, in bytes in `alignp`.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

`Mutex Methods (page 501)`
DB_ENV->mutex_get_increment()

#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->mutex_get_increment(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t *incrementp);

The DB_ENV->mutex_get_increment() method returns the number of additional mutexes to allocate.

The DB_ENV->mutex_get_increment() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->mutex_get_increment() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

incrementp

The DB_ENV->mutex_get_increment() method returns the number of additional mutexes to allocate in incrementp.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Mutex Methods (page 501)
### DB_ENV->mutex_get_init()

```c
#include <db.h>
int DB_ENV->mutex_get_init(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t *init);
```

The `DB_ENV->mutex_get_init()` method returns the initial number of mutexes allocated. This value can be set using the `DB_ENV->mutex_set_init()` method.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_get_init()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_get_init()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

#### Parameters

- **init**

  The `DB_ENV->mutex_get_init()` method returns the initial number of mutexes allocated in `init`.

#### Class

- **DB_ENV**

#### See Also

- Mutex Methods (page 501)
DB_ENV->mutex_get_max()

#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->mutex_get_max(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t *maxp);

The DB_ENV->mutex_get_max() method returns the total number of mutexes allocated. This method is deprecated.

The DB_ENV->mutex_get_max() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->mutex_get_max() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

maxp

The DB_ENV->mutex_get_max() method returns the total number of mutexes allocated in maxp.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Mutex Methods (page 501)
DB_ENV->mutex_get_tas_spins()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->mutex_get_tas_spins(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t *tas_spinsp);
```

The `DB_ENV->mutex_get_tas_spins()` method returns the test-and-set spin count. This value may be configured using the `DB_ENV->mutex_set_tas_spins()` (page 517) method.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_get_tas_spins()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_get_tas_spins()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**tas_spinsp**

The `DB_ENV->mutex_get_tas_spins()` method returns the test-and-set spin count in `tas_spinsp`.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

`Mutex Methods (page 501)`
**DB_ENV->mutex_lock()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->mutex_lock(DB_ENV *dbenv, db_mutex_t mutex);
```

The `DB_ENV->mutex_lock()` method locks the mutex allocated by `DB_ENV->mutex_alloc()` (page 502). The thread of control calling `DB_ENV->mutex_lock()` will block until the lock is available.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_lock()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **mutex**

  The `mutex` parameter is a mutex previously allocated by `DB_ENV->mutex_alloc()` (page 502).

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->mutex_lock()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

`Mutex Methods (page 501)`
**DB_ENV->mutex_set_align()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->mutex_set_align(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t align);
```

Set the mutex alignment, in bytes.

It is sometimes advantageous to align mutexes on specific byte boundaries in order to minimize cache line collisions. The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_align()` method specifies an alignment for mutexes allocated by Berkeley DB.

The database environment's mutex alignment may also be configured using the environment's `DB_CONFIG` file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string “mutex_set_align”, one or more whitespace characters, and the mutex alignment in bytes. Because the `DB_CONFIG` file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_align()` method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_align()` method may not be called after the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method is called. If the database environment already exists when `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) is called, the information specified to `DB_ENV->mutex_set_align()` will be ignored.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_align()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **align**

  The `align` parameter is the mutex alignment, in bytes. The mutex alignment must be a power-of-two.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_align()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  If the method was called after `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

`Mutex Methods (page 501)`
**DB_ENV->mutex_set_increment()**

```c
define <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->mutex_set_increment(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t increment);
```

Configure the number of additional mutexes to allocate.

If an application will allocate mutexes for its own use, the `DB_ENV->mutex_set_increment()` method is used to add a number of mutexes to the default allocation.

Calling the `DB_ENV->mutex_set_increment()` method discards any value previously set using the `DB_ENV->mutex_set_max()` (page 515) method.

The database environment's number of additional mutexes may also be configured using the environment's `DB_CONFIG` file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "mutex_set_increment", one or more whitespace characters, and the number of additional mutexes. Because the `DB_CONFIG` file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_increment()` method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_increment()` method may not be called after the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method is called. If the database environment already exists when `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) is called, the information specified to `DB_ENV->mutex_set_increment()` will be ignored.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_increment()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**Increment**

The `increment` parameter is the number of additional mutexes to allocate.

### Errors

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_increment()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

### Class

- `DB_ENV`
See Also

Mutex Methods (page 501)
Mutex Methods

**DB_ENV->mutex_set_init()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->mutex_set_init(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t init);
```

Configure the initial number of mutexes to allocate.

Berkeley DB allocates a default number of mutexes based on the initial configuration of the database environment. The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_init()` method is used to override this default number of mutexes to allocate. This may be done to either speed up startup, or to force more work to be done at startup to avoid later contention due to allocation.

The database environment's initial number of mutexes may also be configured using the environment's `DB_CONFIG` file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "mutex_set_init", one or more whitespace characters, and the initial number of mutexes. Because the `DB_CONFIG` file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_init()` method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_init()` method may not be called after the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method is called. If the database environment already exists when `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) is called, the information specified to `DB_ENV->mutex_set_init()` will be ignored.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_init()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **init**

  The `init` parameter is the absolute number of mutexes to allocate.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_init()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

- **DB_ENV**

**See Also**

- *Mutex Methods* (page 501)
**DB_ENV->mutex_set_max()**

```
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->mutex_set_max(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t max);
```

Configure the total number of mutexes to allocate. This method is deprecated. The maximum size of the mutex region is now inferred by the sizes of the other memory structures, and so this method is no longer needed. For example, the cache requires one mutex per page in the cache. When you specify the cache size, DB assumes a page size of 4K and allocates mutexes accordingly. If your page size is different than 4K, you indicate this using `DB_ENV->set_mp_pagesize()` (page 467). DB will then allocate the proper number of mutexes based on this new page size.

You can use this method to override DB's mutex calculation, but it is not recommended to do so.

Calling the `DB_ENV->mutex_set_max()` method discards any value previously set using the `DB_ENV->mutex_set_increment()` (page 512) method.

The database environment's total number of mutexes may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "mutex_set_max", one or more whitespace characters, and the total number of mutexes. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_max()` method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_max()` method may not be called after the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method is called. If the database environment already exists when `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) is called, the information specified to `DB_ENV->mutex_set_max()` will be ignored.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_max()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **max**

  The `max` parameter is the absolute number of mutexes to allocate.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_max()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.
Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Mutex Methods (page 501)
DB_ENV->mutex_set_tas_spins()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->mutex_set_tas_spins(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t tas_spins);
```

Specify that test-and-set mutexes should spin `tas_spins` times without blocking. The value defaults to 1 on uniprocessor systems and to 50 times the number of processors on multiprocessor systems, up to a maximum of 200.

The database environment's test-and-set spin count may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "set_tas_spins", one or more whitespace characters, and the number of spins. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_tas_spins()` method configures operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_tas_spins()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_tas_spins()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**tas_spins**

The `tas_spins` parameter is the number of spins test-and-set mutexes should execute before blocking.

### Errors

The `DB_ENV->mutex_set_tas_spins()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

### Class

`DB_ENV`

### See Also

`Mutex Methods (page 501)`
DB_ENV->mutex_stat()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->mutex_stat(DB_ENV *env, DB_MUTEX_STAT **statp, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB_ENV->mutex_stat()` method returns the mutex subsystem statistics.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_stat()` method creates a statistical structure of type `DB_MUTEX_STAT` and copies a pointer to it into a user-specified memory location.

Statistical structures are stored in allocated memory. If application-specific allocation routines have been declared (see `DB_ENV->set_alloc()` (page 279) for more information), they are used to allocate the memory; otherwise, the standard C library `malloc(3)` is used. The caller is responsible for deallocating the memory. To deallocate the memory, free the memory reference; references inside the returned memory need not be individually freed.

The following `DB_MUTEX_STAT` fields will be filled in:

- `u_int32_t st_mutex_align;`
  The mutex alignment, in bytes.

- `int st_mutex_cnt;`
  The total number of mutexes configured.

- `u_int32_t st_mutex_free;`
  The number of mutexes currently available.

- `u_int32_t st_mutex_init;`
  The initial number of mutexes configured.

- `u_int32_t st_mutex_inuse;`
  The number of mutexes currently in use.

- `u_int32_t st_mutex_inuse_max;`
  The maximum number of mutexes ever in use.

- `u_int32_t st_mutex_max;`
  The maximum number of mutexes.

- `u_int32_t st_mutex_tas_spins;`
  The number of times test-and-set mutexes will spin without blocking.

- `uintmax_t st_region_wait;`
The number of times that a thread of control was forced to wait before obtaining the mutex region mutex.

- `uintmax_t st_region_nowait;`
  
  The number of times that a thread of control was able to obtain the mutex region mutex without waiting.

- `roff_t st_regmax;`
  
  The max size of the mutex region size.

- `roff_t st_regsize;`
  
  The size of the mutex region, in bytes.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_stat()` method may not be called before the `DB_ENV->open()` method is called.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_stat()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- `statp`
  
  The `statp` parameter references memory into which a pointer to the allocated statistics structure is copied.

- `flags`
  
  The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

  - `DB_STAT_CLEAR`
    
    Reset statistics after returning their values.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->mutex_stat()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- `EINVAL`
  
  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

- `DB_ENV`

**See Also**

- `Mutex Methods (page 501)`
DB_ENV->mutex_stat_print()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->mutex_stat_print(DB_ENV *env, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB_ENV->mutex_stat_print()` method displays the mutex subsystem statistical information, as described for the `DB_ENV->mutex_stat()` method. The information is printed to a specified output channel (see the `DB_ENV->set_msgfile()` (page 326) method for more information), or passed to an application callback function (see the `DB_ENV->set_msgcall()` (page 324) method for more information).

The `DB_ENV->mutex_stat_print()` method may not be called before the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method is called.

The `DB_ENV->mutex_stat_print()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

- `DB_STAT_ALL`
  
  Display all available information.

- `DB_STAT_ALLOC`
  
  Display allocation information. To display allocation information, both `DB_STAT_ALLOC` and `DB_STAT_ALL` need to be set.

- `DB_STAT_CLEAR`
  
  Reset statistics after displaying their values.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

`Mutex Methods (page 501)`
DB_ENV->mutex_unlock()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->mutex_unlock(DB_ENV *dbenv, db_mutex_t mutex);
```

The `DB_ENV->mutex_unlock()` method unlocks the mutex locked by `DB_ENV->mutex_lock()` (page 510).

The `DB_ENV->mutex_unlock()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

*mutex*

The *mutex* parameter is a mutex previously locked by `DB_ENV->mutex_lock()` (page 510).

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->mutex_unlock()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

`Mutex Methods (page 501)`
Chapter 10. Replication Methods

This chapter describes the APIs available to build Berkeley DB replicated applications. There are two different ways to build replication into a Berkeley DB application, and the APIs for both are described in this chapter.

For an overview of the two different ways to build a replicated application, see the Berkeley DB Getting Started with Replicated Applications guide.

The first, and simplest, way to build a replication Berkeley DB application is via the Replication Manager. If the Replication Manager does not meet your application's architectural requirements, you can write your own replication implementation using the "Base APIs".

Note that the Replication Manager is written using the Base APIs.

Note, also, that applications which make use of the Replication Manager use many of the Base APIs as the situation warrants. That said, a few Base API methods cannot be used by applications that are making use of the Replication Manager. Where this is the case, this is noted in the following method descriptions.

Finally, Replication Manager applications use the DB_SITE class to manage and configure replication sites. The DB_CHANNEL class can be used to transmit custom messages between sites in the replication group. These classes are not used in any way by Base API applications.
## Replication and Related Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Replication Manager Methods</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB_CHANNEL-&gt;close()</td>
<td>Closes a DB_CHANNEL handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_CHANNEL-&gt;send_msg()</td>
<td>Sends an asynchronous message on a DB_CHANNEL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_CHANNEL-&gt;send_request()</td>
<td>Sends a synchronous message on a DB_CHANNEL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;repmgr_channel()</td>
<td>Creates a DB_CHANNEL handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;repmgr_local_site()</td>
<td>Returns a DB_SITE handle for the local site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;repmgr_msg_dispatch()</td>
<td>Configures a DB_CHANNEL's message dispatch function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;repmgr_set_ack_policy(), DB_ENV-&gt;repmgr_get_ack_policy()</td>
<td>Specify the Replication Manager's client acknowledgement policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;repmgr_set_incoming_queue_max(), DB_ENV-&gt;repmgr_get_incoming_queue_max()</td>
<td>Configure the Replication Manager incoming queue size limit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;repmgr_set_socket()</td>
<td>Configure the Replication Manager's socket callback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;repmgr_site()</td>
<td>Creates a DB_SITE handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;repmgr_site_by_eid()</td>
<td>Creates a DB_SITE handle given an EID value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;repmgr_site_list()</td>
<td>List the sites and their status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;repmgr_start()</td>
<td>Start the Replication Manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;repmgr_stat()</td>
<td>Replication Manager statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;repmgr_stat_print()</td>
<td>Print Replication Manager statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_SITE-&gt;close()</td>
<td>Closes the DB_SITE handle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Base API Methods

| DB_ENV->rep_elect()         | Hold a replication election |
| DB_ENV->rep_process_message() | Process a replication message |
| DB_ENV->rep_set_transport() | Configure replication transport callback |
| DB_ENV->rep_start()         | Start replication |

### Additional Replication Methods

| DB_ENV->rep_stat()         | Replication statistics |
| DB_ENV->rep_stat_print()   | Print replication statistics |
| DB_ENV->rep_sync()         | Replication synchronization |

### Replication Configuration

<p>| DB_CHANNEL-&gt;set_timeout()  | Sets the default timeout for a DB_CHANNEL |
| DB_SITE-&gt;get_address()     | Returns a site's network address |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Replication Manager Methods</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB_SITE-&gt;get_eid()</td>
<td>Returns a site's environment ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_SITE-&gt;remove()</td>
<td>Removes the site from the replication group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_SITE-&gt;set_config(), DB_SITE-&gt;get_config()</td>
<td>Configure a DB_SITE handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;rep_set_clockskew(), DB_ENV-&gt;rep_get_clockskew()</td>
<td>Configure master lease clock adjustment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;rep_set_config(), DB_ENV-&gt;rep_get_config()</td>
<td>Configure the replication subsystem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;rep_set_limit(), DB_ENV-&gt;rep_get_limit()</td>
<td>Limit data sent in response to a single message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;rep_set_nsites(), DB_ENV-&gt;rep_get_nsites()</td>
<td>Configure replication group site count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;rep_set_priority(), DB_ENV-&gt;rep_get_priority()</td>
<td>Configure replication site priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;rep_set_request(), DB_ENV-&gt;rep_get_request()</td>
<td>Configure replication client retransmission requests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;rep_set_timeout(), DB_ENV-&gt;rep_get_timeout()</td>
<td>Configure replication timeouts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;rep_set_view()</td>
<td>Configure the replication view callback</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Transaction Operations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;txn_applied()</td>
<td>Check if a transaction has been replicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_TXN-&gt;set_commit_token()</td>
<td>Set a commit token</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The DB_SITE Handle

The DB_SITE handle is used by Replication Manager applications to manage and configure replication sites. You create a DB_SITE handle using the `DB_ENV->repmgr_site()` (page 598), `DB_ENV->repmgr_site_by_eid()` (page 600), or `DB_ENV->repmgr_local_site()` (page 587), methods. All DB_SITE handles must be closed before closing DB_ENV handles. Use the `DB_SITE->close()` (page 610) method to close a DB_SITE handle.
The DB_CHANNEL Handle

The DB_CHANNEL handle is used by Replication Manager applications to manage and configure message channels that carry custom message traffic between the sites in the replication group. You create a DB_CHANNEL handle using the DB_ENV->repmgr_channel() (page 585) method. All DB_CHANNEL handles must be closed before closing DB_ENV handles. Use the DB_CHANNEL->close() (page 527) method to close a DB_CHANNEL handle.
DB_CHANNEL->close()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_CHANNEL->close(DB_CHANNEL *channel, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB_CHANNEL->close()` method closes the `DB_CHANNEL` handle, freeing any resources allocated to the handle. All `DB_CHANNEL` handles must be closed before the encompassing environment handle is closed. Also, all on-going messaging operations on the channel should be allowed to complete before attempting to close the channel handle.

After `DB_CHANNEL->close()` has been called, regardless of its return, the `DB_CHANNEL` handle may not be accessed again.

The `DB_CHANNEL->close()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **flags**

  This parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

**Errors**

The `DB_CHANNEL->close()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  If this method is called from a Base API application, or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

- `DB_ENV`, `DB_CHANNEL`

**See Also**

- Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
The `DB_CHANNEL-*send_msg()` method sends a message on the message channel. The message is sent asynchronously; the method does not wait for a response before returning. This method usually completes quickly because it only waits for the local TCP implementation to accept the bytes into its network data buffer. However, this message could block briefly for longer messages, and/or if the network data buffer is nearly full. This method could even block indefinitely if the remote site is slow to read.

If you want to block while waiting for a response from a remote site, use the `DB_CHANNEL-*send_request()` (page 530) method instead of this method.

The message sent by this method is received and handled at remote sites using a message dispatch callback, which is configured using the `DB_ENV-*repmgr_msg_dispatch()` (page 590) method. Note that the `DB_CHANNEL-*send_msg()` method may be used within the message dispatch callback on the remote site to send a response or acknowledgement for messages that it receives and is handling.

This method may be used on channels opened to any destination (see the `DB_ENV-*repmgr_channel()` (page 585) method for a list of potential destinations).

The `DB_CHANNEL-*send_msg()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**msg**

Refers to an array of DBT handles. For more information, see The DBT Handle (page 194). Any flags provided to the DBT handles used in this array are ignored.

**nmsg**

Indicates how many elements are contained in the `msg` array.

**flags**

This parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

### Errors

The `DB_CHANNEL-*send_msg()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:
**DB_NOSERVER**

A message was sent to a remote site that has not configured a message dispatch callback function. Use the `DB_ENV->repmgr_msg_dispatch()` (page 590) method at every site belonging to the replication group to configure a message dispatch callback function.

**EINVAL**

If this method is called from a Base API application, or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_CHANNEL`

**See Also**

- Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
The **DB_CHANNEL->send_request()** method sends a message on the message channel. The message is sent synchronously; the method blocks waiting for a response before returning. If a response is not received within the timeout value configured for this request, this method returns with an error condition.

If you do not want to block while waiting for a response from a remote site, use the **DB_CHANNEL->send_msg()** (page 528) method.

The message sent by this method is received and handled at remote sites using a message dispatch callback, which is configured using the **DB_ENV->repmgr_msg_dispatch()** (page 590) method.

The **DB_CHANNEL->send_request()** method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

- **request**
  
  Refers to an array of DBT handles. For more information, see  The DBT Handle  (page 194).
  
  Any flags provided to the DBT handles used in this array are ignored.

- **nrequest**
  
  Indicates how many elements are contained in the msg array.

- **response**
  
  Points to a single DBT handle, which is used to receive the response from the remote site. By default, the response is expected to be a single-part message. If there is a possibility that the response could be a multi-part message, specify **DB_MULTIPLE** to this method's **flags** parameter.

  The response DBT should specify one of the following flags: **DB_DBT_MALLOC**, **DB_DBT_REALLOC**, or **DB_DBT_USERMEM**.

  For more information on configuring and using DBTs, see  The DBT Handle  (page 194).

  Note that the response DBT can be empty. In this way an application can send an acknowledgement even if there is no other information that needs to be sent.
timeout

Configures the amount of time that may elapse while this method waits for a response from the remote site. If this timeout period elapses without a response, this method returns with an error condition.

The timeout value must be specified as an unsigned 32-bit number of microseconds, limiting the maximum timeout to roughly 71 minutes.

A timeout value of 0 indicates that the channel’s default timeout value should be used. This default is configured using the DB_CHANNEL->set_timeout() (page 532) method.

flags

This parameter must be set to either DB_MULTIPLE or 0.

If there is a possibility that the response can consist of multiple DBT handles, specify DB_MULTIPLE to this parameter. In that case, the response buffer is formatted for bulk operations.

Errors

The DB_CHANNEL->send_request() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_BUFFER_SMALL**

DB_MULTIPLE was not specified for the response DBT, but the remote site sent a response consisting of more than one DBT; or a buffer supplied using DB_DBT_USERMEM was not large enough to contain the message response.

**DB_NOSERVER**

A message was sent to a remote site that has not configured a message dispatch callback function. Use the DB_ENV->repmgr_msg_dispatch() (page 590) method at every site belonging to the replication group to configure a message dispatch callback function.

**EINVAL**

If this method is called from a Base API application, or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV, DB_CHANNEL

See Also

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
DB_CHANNEL->set_timeout()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_CHANNEL->set_timeout(DB_CHANNEL *channel, db_timeout_t timeout);
```

The `DB_CHANNEL->set_timeout()` method sets the default timeout value for the DB_CHANNEL handle. This timeout is used by the `DB_CHANNEL->send_request()` (page 530) method.

The `DB_CHANNEL->set_timeout()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**timeout**

Configures the amount of time that may elapse while the `DB_CHANNEL->send_request()` (page 530) method waits for a message response. The timeout value must be specified as an unsigned 32-bit number of microseconds, limiting the maximum timeout to roughly 71 minutes.

**Errors**

The `DB_CHANNEL->set_timeout()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If this method is called from a Base API application, or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_CHANNEL`

**See Also**

`Replication and Related Methods (page 523)`
DB_SITE->get_config()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_SITE->get_config(DB_SITE *site, u_int32_t which,
                        u_int32_t *valuep);
```

The `DB_SITE->get_config()` method returns whether the specified `which` parameter is currently set. See the `DB_SITE->set_config()` (page 537) method for the configuration flags that can be set for a DB_SITE handle.

The `DB_SITE->get_config()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_SITE->get_config()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **which**

  The `which` parameter is the configuration flag to check. See the `DB_SITE->set_config()` (page 537) method for a list of configuration flags that you can provide to this parameter.

- **valuep**

  The `valuep` parameter references memory into which the configuration of the specified `which` parameter is copied.

  If the returned value is zero, the configuration flag is off; otherwise it is on.

**Class**

DB_SITE

**See Also**

Replication and Related Methods (page 523), `DB_SITE->set_config()` (page 537)
DB_SITE->get_address()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_SITE->get_address(DB_SITE *site, const char **hostp, u_int *portp);
```

The DB_SITE->get_address() method returns a replication site's network address. That is, this method returns the site's host name and port.

The DB_SITE->get_address() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**hostp**

References memory into which is copied a pointer to the internal storage of the host name.

**portp**

References memory into which the port number will be copied.

**Class**

DB_SITE

**See Also**

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
The DB_SITE->get_eid() method returns a replication site's environment ID (EID). This method may not be called before opening the database environment.

The DB_SITE->get_eid() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**eidp**

References memory into which the EID will be copied.

**Errors**

The DB_SITE->get_eid() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the database environment was not already opened; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB_SITE

**See Also**

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
DB_SITE->remove()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_SITE->remove(DB_SITE *site);
```

The DB_SITE->remove() method removes the site from the replication group. If called at the master site, Replication Manager updates the group membership database directly. If called from a client, this method causes a request to be sent to the master to perform the operation. The method then awaits confirmation.

The DB_SITE handle must not be accessed again after this method is called, regardless of the return value. This method may not be called before starting Replication Manager.

The DB_SITE->remove() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Errors**

The DB_SITE->remove() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_REP_UNAVAIL**

The master updated the group membership database but did not receive enough acknowledgements from clients to meet the current acknowledgement policy or there was an attempt to remove the current master site from the replication group.

**EINVAL**

If Replication Manager has not been started.

**Class**

DB_SITE

**See Also**

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
DB_SITE->set_config()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_SITE->set_config(DB_SITE *site, u_int32_t which, u_int32_t value);
```

The `DB_SITE->set_config()` method configures a Replication Manager site.

The `DB_SITE->set_config()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

The Replication Manager site may also be configured using the environment’s `DB_CONFIG` file. The syntax of the entry in that file is described in `repmgr_site (page 795)`.

**Parameters**

**which**

This parameter must be set to one of the following values:

- **DB_BOOTSTRAP_HELPER**

  Specifies that a remote site may be used as a “helper” when the local site is first joining the replication group. Once the local site has been established as a member of the group, this setting is ignored.

- **DB_GROUP_CREATOR**

  Specifies that this site should create the initial group membership database contents, defining a “group” of just the one site, rather than trying to join an existing group when it starts for the first time.

  This setting can only be used on the local site. It is ignored after the local site’s initial startup and when configured for a remote site.

- **DB_LEGACY**

  Specifies that the site is already part of an existing group. This setting causes the site to be upgraded from a previous version of Berkeley DB. All sites in the legacy group must specify this setting for themselves (the local site) and for all other sites currently existing in the group. Once the upgrade has been completed, this setting is no longer required.

- **DB_LOCAL_SITE**

  Specifies that this site is the local site within the replication group. The application must identify exactly one site as the local site in this way, before calling the `DB_ENV->repmgr_start() (page 603)` method.

- **DB_REPMGR_PEER**
Specifies that the site may be used as a target for "client-to-client" synchronization messages. A peer can be either a client or a view. This setting is ignored if it is specified for the local site.

**value**

If 0, the parameter identified by the `which` is turned off. Otherwise, it is turned on.

**Errors**

The `DB_SITE->set_config()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_SITE`

**See Also**

"Replication and Related Methods" (page 523)
The DB_ENV->rep_elect() method holds an election for the master of a replication group.

The DB_ENV->rep_elect() method is not called by most replication applications. It should only be called by Base API applications implementing their own network transport layer, explicitly holding replication group elections and handling replication messages outside of the Replication Manager framework.

If the election is successful, Berkeley DB will notify the application of the results of the election by means of either the DB_EVENT_REP_ELECTED or DB_EVENT_REP_NEWMASTER events (see DB_ENV->set_event_notify() (page 295) method for more information). The application is responsible for adjusting its relationship to the other database environments in the replication group, including directing all database updates to the newly selected master, in accordance with the results of the election.

The thread of control that calls the DB_ENV->rep_elect() method must not be the thread of control that processes incoming messages; processing the incoming messages is necessary to successfully complete an election.

Before calling this method do the following:

- open the database environment by calling the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method.
- configure the database environment to send replication messages by calling the DB_ENV->rep_set_transport() (page 569) method.
- configure the database environment as a client or a master by calling the DB_ENV->rep_start() (page 574) method.

### How Elections are Held

Elections are done in two parts: first, replication sites collect information from the other replication sites they know about, and second, replication sites cast their votes for a new master. The second phase is triggered by one of two things: either the replication site gets election information from nsites sites, or the election timeout expires. Once the second phase is triggered, the replication site will cast a vote for the new master of its choice if, and only if, the site has election information from at least nvotes sites. If a site receives nvotes votes for it to become the new master, then it will become the new master.

Replication view sites never participate in elections. Values chosen for nsites and nvotes must not include any replication view sites.

We recommend nvotes be set to at least:

\[(\text{sites participating in the election} / 2) + 1\]
to ensure there are never more than two masters active at the same time even in the case of a network partition. When a network partitions, the side of the partition with more than half the environments will elect a new master and continue, while the environments communicating with fewer than half of the environments will fail to find a new master, as no site can get nvotes votes.

We recommend nsites be set to:

| nsites | number of sites in the replication group - 1 |

when choosing a new master after a current master fails. This allows the group to reach a consensus without having to wait for the timeout to expire or for the failed master to restart.

When choosing a master from among a group of client sites all restarting at the same time, it makes more sense to set nsites to the total number of sites in the group, since there is no known missing site. Furthermore, in order to ensure the best choice from among sites that may take longer to boot than the local site, setting nvotes also to this same total number of sites will guarantee that every site in the group is considered. Alternatively, using the special timeout for full elections allows full participation on restart but allows election of a master if one site does not reboot and rejoin the group in a reasonable amount of time. (See the Elections section in the Berkeley DB Programmer’s Reference Guide for more information.)

Setting nsites to lower values can increase the speed of an election, but can also result in election failure, and is usually not recommended.

**Parameters**

**nsites**

The nsites parameter specifies the number of replication sites expected to participate in the election. Once the current site has election information from that many sites, it will short-circuit the election and immediately cast its vote for a new master. The nsites parameter must be no less than nvotes, or 0 if the election should use the value previously set using the DB_ENV->rep_set_nsites() (page 560) method. If an application is using master leases, then the value must be 0 and the value from DB_ENV->rep_set_nsites() (page 560) method must be used. The value should exclude any replication views.

**nvotes**

The nvotes parameter specifies the minimum number of replication sites from which the current site must have election information, before the current site will cast a vote for a new master. The nvotes parameter must be no greater than nsites, or 0 if the election should use the value ((nsites / 2) + 1) as the nvotes argument.

**flags**

The flags parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->rep_elect() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:
DB_REP_UNAVAIL

The replication group was unable to elect a master, or was unable to complete the election in the election timeout period (see DB_ENV->rep_set_timeout() (page 566) method for more information).

EINVAL

If the database environment was not already configured to communicate with a replication group by a call to DB_ENV->rep_set_transport() (page 569); if the database environment was not already opened; if this method is called from a Replication Manager application; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
DB_ENV->rep_get_clockskew()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->rep_get_clockskew(DB_ENV *env, 
   u_int32_t *fast_clockp, u_int32_t *slow_clockp);
```

The DB_ENV->rep_get_clockskew() method returns the current clock skew ratio values, as set by the DB_ENV->rep_set_clockskew() (page 552) method.

The DB_ENV->rep_get_clockskew() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->rep_get_clockskew() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

*fast_clockp*

The *fast_clockp* parameter references memory into which the value for the fastest clock in the replication group is copied.

*slow_clockp*

The *slow_clockp* parameter references memory into which the value for the slowest clock in the replication group is copied.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Replication and Related Methods (page 523), DB_ENV->rep_set_clockskew() (page 552)
DB_ENV->rep_get_config()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->rep_get_config(DB_ENV *env, u_int32_t which, int *onoffp);
```

The DB_ENV->rep_get_config() method returns whether the specified `which` parameter is currently set or not. See the DB_ENV->rep_set_config() (page 554) method for the configuration flags that can be set for replication.

The DB_ENV->rep_get_config() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->rep_get_config() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`which`

The `which` parameter is the configuration flag which is being checked. See the DB_ENV->rep_set_config() (page 554) method for a list of configuration flags that you can provide to this parameter.

`onoffp`

The `onoffp` parameter references memory into which the configuration of the specified `which` parameter is copied.

If the returned `onoff` value is zero, the parameter is off; otherwise it is on.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Replication and Related Methods (page 523), DB_ENV->rep_set_config() (page 554)
DB_ENV->rep_get_limit()

#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->rep_get_limit(DB_ENV *env, u_int32_t *gbytesp,
                           u_int32_t *bytesp);

The DB_ENV->rep_get_limit() method returns the byte-count limit on the amount of data that will be transmitted from a site in response to a single message processed by the DB_ENV->rep_process_message() (page 549) method. This value is configurable using the DB_ENV->rep_set_limit() (page 558) method.

The DB_ENV->rep_get_limit() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->rep_get_limit() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

gbytesp

The gbytesp parameter references memory into which the gigabytes component of the current transmission limit is copied.

bytesp

The bytesp parameter references memory into which the bytes component of the current transmission limit is copied.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Replication and Related Methods (page 523), DB_ENV->rep_set_limit() (page 558)
DB_ENV->rep_get_nsites()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->rep_get_nsites(DB_ENV *env, u_int32_t *nsitesp);
```

The `DB_ENV->rep_get_nsites()` method returns the total number of participant sites in the replication group. For Base API applications, this value is configurable using the `DB_ENV->rep_set_nsites()` (page 560) method. For Replication Manager applications, this value is determined dynamically.

For Base API applications, this method may be called at any time during the life of the application. For Replication Manager applications, this method may be called only after a successful call to the `DB_ENV->repmgr_start()` (page 603) method.

The `DB_ENV->rep_get_nsites()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

nsitesp

The `DB_ENV->rep_get_nsites()` method returns the total number of participant sites in the replication group in `nsitesp`.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

Replication and Related Methods (page 523), `DB_ENV->rep_set_nsites()` (page 560)
DB_ENV->rep_get_priority()

```c
#include <db.h>
int DB_ENV->rep_get_priority(DB_ENV *env, u_int32_t *priorityp);
```

The `DB_ENV->rep_get_priority()` method returns the database environment priority as configured using the `DB_ENV->rep_set_priority()` (page 562) method.

The `DB_ENV->rep_get_priority()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->rep_get_priority()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **priorityp**
  
The `DB_ENV->rep_get_priority()` method returns the database environment priority in `priorityp`.

**Class**

- `DB_ENV`

**See Also**

- Replication and Related Methods (page 523), `DB_ENV->rep_set_priority()` (page 562)
DB_ENV->rep_get_request()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->rep_get_request(DB_ENV *env, u_int32_t *minp, u_int32_t *maxp);
```

The `DB_ENV->rep_get_request()` method returns the minimum and maximum number of microseconds a client waits before requesting retransmission. These values can be configured using the `DB_ENV->rep_set_request()` (page 564) method.

The `DB_ENV->rep_get_request()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->rep_get_request()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`minp`

The `minp` parameter references memory into which the minimum number of microseconds a client will wait before requesting retransmission is copied.

`maxp`

The `maxp` parameter references memory into which the maximum number of microseconds a client will wait before requesting retransmission is copied.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

`Replication and Related Methods (page 523), DB_ENV->rep_set_request()` (page 564)
DB_ENV->rep_get_timeout()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->rep_get_timeout(DB_ENV *env, int which, u_int32_t *timeoutp);
```

The `DB_ENV->rep_get_timeout()` method returns the timeout value for the specified `which` parameter. Timeout values can be managed using the `DB_ENV->rep_set_timeout()` (page 566) method.

The `DB_ENV->rep_get_timeout()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->rep_get_timeout()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`which`

The `which` parameter is the timeout for which the value is being returned. See the `DB_ENV->rep_set_timeout()` (page 566) method for a list of timeouts that you can provide to this parameter.

`timeoutp`

The `timeoutp` parameter references memory into which the timeout value of the specified `which` parameter is copied.

The returned timeout value is in microseconds.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->rep_get_timeout()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

Replication and Related Methods (page 523), `DB_ENV->rep_set_timeout()` (page 566)
DB_ENV->rep_process_message()

#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->rep_process_message(DB_ENV *env,
   DBT *control, DBT *rec, int envid, DB_LSN *ret_lsnp)

The DB_ENV->rep_process_message() method processes an incoming replication message sent by a member of the replication group to the local database environment.

The DB_ENV->rep_process_message() method is not called by most replication applications. It should only be called by Base API applications implementing their own network transport layer, explicitly holding replication group elections and handling replication messages outside of the Replication Manager framework.

For implementation reasons, all incoming replication messages must be processed using the same DB_ENV handle. It is not required that a single thread of control process all messages, only that all threads of control processing messages use the same handle.

Before calling this method, the enclosing database environment must already have been opened by calling the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method and must already have been configured to send replication messages by calling the DB_ENV->rep_set_transport() (page 569) method.

The DB_ENV->rep_process_message() method has additional return values:

• DB_REP_DUPMASTER

The DB_ENV->rep_process_message() method will return DB_REP_DUPMASTER if the replication group has more than one master. The application should reconfigure itself as a client by calling the DB_ENV->rep_start() (page 574) method, and then call for an election by calling DB_ENV->rep_elect() (page 539).

• DB_REP_HOLDELECTION

The DB_ENV->rep_process_message() method will return DB_REP_HOLDELECTION if an election is needed. The application should call for an election by calling DB_ENV->rep_elect() (page 539).

• DB_REP_IGNORE

The DB_ENV->rep_process_message() method will return DB_REP_IGNORE if this message cannot be processed. This is an indication that this message is irrelevant to the current replication state (for example, an old message from a previous master arrives and is processed late).

• DB_REP_ISPERM

The DB_ENV->rep_process_message() method will return DB_REP_ISPERM if processing this message results in the processing of records that are permanent. The maximum LSN of the permanent records stored is returned.


- **DB_REP_JOIN_FAILURE**

  The DB_ENV->rep_process_message() method will return DB_REP_JOIN_FAILURE if a new master has been chosen but the client is unable to synchronize with the new master. This is possibly because the client has turned off automatic internal initialization by setting the DB_REP_CONF_AUTOINIT flag to 0. Another possible reason is that an unencrypted client is attempting to join a replication group where encryption is use, or an encrypted client is attempting to join a replication group where encryption is not in use.

- **DB_REP_NEWSITE**

  The DB_ENV->rep_process_message() method will return DB_REP_NEWSITE if the system received contact information from a new environment. The rec parameter contains the opaque data specified to the DB_ENV->rep_start() (page 574) cdata parameter. The application should take whatever action is needed to establish a communication channel with this new environment.

- **DB_REP_NOTPERM**

  The DB_ENV->rep_process_message() method will return DB_REP_NOTPERM if a message carrying a DB_REP_PERMANENT flag was processed successfully, but was not written to disk. The LSN of this record is returned. The application should take whatever action is deemed necessary to retain its recoverability characteristics.

Unless otherwise specified, the DB_ENV->rep_process_message() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **control**

  The control parameter should reference a copy of the control parameter specified by Berkeley DB on the sending environment. See the DB_ENV->rep_set_transport() (page 569) method for more information.

- **rec**

  The rec parameter should reference a copy of the rec parameter specified by Berkeley DB on the sending environment. See the DB_ENV->rep_set_transport() (page 569) method for more information.

- **envid**

  The envid parameter should contain the local identifier that corresponds to the environment that sent the message to be processed (see Replication environment IDs for more information).

- **ret_lsnp**

  If DB_ENV->rep_process_message() method returns DB_REP_NOTPERM then the ret_lsnp parameter will contain the log sequence number of this permanent log message that could not
be written to disk. If DB_ENV->rep_process_message() method returns DB_REP_ISPERM then the ret_lsnp parameter will contain largest log sequence number of the permanent records that are now written to disk as a result of processing this message. In all other cases the value of ret_lsnp is undefined.

Errors

The DB_ENV->rep_process_message() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL

If the database environment was not already configured to communicate with a replication group by a call to DB_ENV->rep_set_transport() (page 569); if the database environment was not already opened; if this method is called from a Replication Manager application; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
DB_ENV->rep_set_clockskew()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->rep_set_clockskew(DB_ENV *env, 
   u_int32_t fast_clock, u_int32_t slow_clock);
```

The DB_ENV->rep_set_clockskew() method sets the clock skew ratio among replication group members based on the fastest and slowest clock measurements among the group for use with master leases. Calling this method is optional; the default values for clock skew assume no skew. The application must also configure leases via the DB_ENV->rep_set_config() (page 554) method and set the master lease timeout via the DB_ENV->rep_set_timeout() (page 566) method. Base API applications must also set the number of sites in the replication group via the DB_ENV->rep_set_nsites() (page 560) method. These methods may be called in any order. For a description of the clock skew values, see Clock skew in the Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide. For a description of master leases, see Master leases in the Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide.

These arguments can be used to express either raw measurements of a clock timing experiment or a percentage across machines. For example, if a group of sites has a 2% variance, then `fast_clock` should be set to 102, and `slow_clock` should be set to 100. Or, for a 0.03% difference, you can use 10003 and 10000 respectively.

The database environment's replication subsystem may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "rep_set_clockskew", one or more whitespace characters, and the clockskew specified in two parts: the `fast_clock` and the `slow_clock`. For example, "rep_set_clockskew 102 100". Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently override configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->rep_set_clockskew() method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

The DB_ENV->rep_set_clockskew() method may not be called after the DB_ENV-repmgr_start() (page 603) or DB_ENV->rep_start() (page 574) methods are called.

The DB_ENV->rep_set_clockskew() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`fast_clock`

The value, relative to the `slow_clock`, of the fastest clock in the group of sites.

`slow_clock`

The value of the slowest clock in the group of sites.
Errors

The DB_ENV->rep_set_clockskew() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after replication is started with a call to the DB_ENV->repmgr_start() (page 603) or the DB_ENV->rep_start() (page 574) method; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
DB_ENV->rep_set_config()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->rep_set_config(DB_ENV *env, u_int32_t which, int onoff);
```

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_config()` method configures the Berkeley DB replication subsystem.

The database environment's replication subsystem may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "rep_set_config", one or more whitespace characters, and the method `which` parameter as a string and optionally one or more whitespace characters, and the string "on" or "off". If the optional string is omitted, the default is "on"; for example, "rep_set_config DB_REP_CONF_NOWAIT" or "rep_set_config DB_REP_CONF_NOWAIT on". Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_config()` method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_config()` method may not be called to set in-memory replication after the environment is opened using the `DB_ENV->open()` method. This method should not be called to set preferred master mode or master leases after the `DB_ENV->rep_start()` or `DB_ENV->repmgr_start()` methods are called. For all other `which` parameters, this method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_config()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**which**

The `which` parameter must be set to one of the following values:

- **DB_REP_CONF_AUTOINIT**
  
The replication master will automatically re-initialize outdated clients. This option is turned on by default.

- **DB_REP_CONF_BULK**
  
The replication master sends groups of records to the clients in a single network transfer.

- **DB_REP_CONF_DELAYCLIENT**
  
The client should delay synchronizing to a newly declared master. Clients configured in this way will remain unsynchronized until the application calls the `DB_ENV->rep_sync()` method.

- **DB_REP_CONF_INMEM**
Store internal replication information in memory only.

By default, replication creates files in the environment home directory to preserve some internal information. If this configuration flag is turned on, replication only stores this internal information in-memory and cannot keep persistent state across a site crash or reboot. This results in the following limitations:

• A master site should not reappoint itself master immediately after crashing or rebooting because the application would incur a slightly higher risk of client crashes. The former master site should rejoin the replication group as a client. The application should either hold an election or appoint a different site to be the next master.

• An application has a slightly higher risk that elections will fail or be unable to complete. Calling additional elections should eventually yield a winner.

• An application has a slight risk that the wrong site may win an election, resulting in the loss of some data. This is consistent with the general loss of data durability when running in-memory.

• Replication Manager applications do not maintain group membership information persistently on-disk. For more information, see Managing Replication Files in the Berkeley DB Programmer’s Reference Guide.

This configuration flag can only be turned on before the environment is opened with the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method. Its value cannot be changed while the environment is open. All sites in the replication group should have the same value for this configuration flag.

• DB_REP_CONFLEASE

Master leases will be used for this site.

Configuring this option may result in DB_REP_LEASE_EXPIRED error returns from the DB->get() (page 31) and DBcursor->get() (page 180) methods when attempting to read entries from a database after the site’s master lease has expired.

This configuration flag may not be set after the DB_ENV->repmgr_start() (page 603) method or the DB_ENV->rep_start() (page 574) method is called. All sites in the replication group should have the same value for this configuration flag.

• DB_REP_CONF_NOWAIT

Berkeley DB method calls that would normally block while clients are in recovery will return errors immediately.

• DB_REPMGR_CONF_ELECTIONS

Replication Manager automatically runs elections to choose a new master when the old master fails or becomes disconnected. This option is turned on by default. In preferred master mode, this option cannot be turned off.
If this option is turned off, the application is responsible for assigning the new master explicitly, by calling the `DB_ENV->repmgr_start()` method.

**Caution**

Most Replication Manager applications should accept the default automatic behavior. Allowing two sites in a replication group to act as master simultaneously can lead to loss of data.

In an application with multiple processes per database environment, only the replication process may change this configuration setting.

- **DB_REPMGR_CONF_FORWARD_WRITES**

By default, write operations cannot be performed on a replication client site. This option enables forwarding of simple client put and delete operations to the master site for processing. These operations must use an implicit NULL transaction ID to be forwarded. Any other write operation that specifies a non-NULL transaction or uses a cursor returns an error. This option is turned off by default.

The master must have an open database handle for the database on which a forwarded write operation is being performed. All sites in the replication group should have the same value for this configuration option. (See the Configuring for Write Forwarding section in the *Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide* for more information.)

- **DB_REPMGR_CONF_PREFMAS_CLIENT**

This is the client site in a two-site replication group running in preferred master mode. This site automatically takes over as temporary master when the preferred master site is unavailable. Transactions committed on this site when it is operating as the temporary master may be rolled back if they conflict with preferred master transactions. (See the Preferred master mode section in the *Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide* for more information.) This configuration flag may not be set after the `DB_ENV->repmgr_start()` method is called.

The other site in the replication group should be specified as the preferred master site using the `DB_REPMGR_CONF_PREFMAS_MASTER` configuration flag.

- **DB_REPMGR_CONF_PREFMAS_MASTER**

This is the preferred master site in a two-site replication group running in preferred master mode. This site functions as the master whenever its availability permits. When this site returns to the replication group after having been unavailable, it synchronizes with the temporary master and then automatically takes over as master. Transactions committed on this site will not be rolled back. (See the Preferred master mode section in the *Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide* for more information.) This configuration flag may not be set after the `DB_ENV->repmgr_start()` method is called.

The other site in the replication group should be specified as the preferred master client site using the `DB_REPMGR_CONF_PREFMAS_CLIENT` configuration flag.
• **DB_REPMGR_CONF_2SITE_STRICT**

Replication Manager observes the strict “majority” rule in managing elections, even in a replication group with only two sites. This means the client in a two-site replication group will be unable to take over as master if the original master fails or becomes disconnected. (See the Special considerations for two-site replication groups section in the Berkeley DB Programmer’s Reference Guide for more information.) Both sites in the replication group should have the same value for this configuration flag. This option is turned on by default. In preferred master mode, this option cannot be turned off.

**onoff**

If the onoff parameter is zero, the configuration flag is turned off. Otherwise, it is turned on. Most configuration flags are turned off by default, exceptions are noted above.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->rep_set_config() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If setting in-memory replication after the database environment is already opened; if setting preferred master or master leases after replication is started; if setting a Replication Manager configuration flag for a Base API application; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
**DB_ENV->rep_set_limit()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->rep_set_limit(DB_ENV *env, u_int32_t gbytes, u_int32_t bytes);
```

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_limit()` method sets record transmission throttling. This is a byte-count limit on the amount of data that will be transmitted from a site in response to a single message processed by the `DB_ENV->rep_process_message()` (page 549) method. The limit is not a hard limit, and the record that exceeds the limit is the last record to be sent.

Record transmission throttling is turned on by default with a limit of 10MB.

If the values passed to the `DB_ENV->rep_set_limit()` method are both zero, then the transmission limit is turned off.

The database environment’s replication subsystem may also be configured using the environment’s DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string “rep_set_limit”, one or more whitespace characters, and the limit specified in two parts: the gigabytes and the bytes values. For example, “rep_set_limit 0 1048576” sets a 1 megabyte limit. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_limit()` method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle.

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_limit()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_limit()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **gbytes**

  The `gbytes` parameter specifies the number of gigabytes which, when added to the `bytes` parameter, specifies the maximum number of bytes that will be sent in a single call to the `DB_ENV->rep_process_message()` (page 549) method.

- **bytes**

  The `bytes` parameter specifies the number of bytes which, when added to the `gbytes` parameter, specifies the maximum number of bytes that will be sent in a single call to the `DB_ENV->rep_process_message()` (page 549) method.

**Class**

- **DB_ENV**
See Also

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
DB_ENV->rep_set_nsites()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->rep_set_nsites(DB_ENV *env, u_int32_t nsites);
```

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_nsites()` method specifies the total number of participant sites in a replication group. This method should not be used by Replication Manager applications; the number of sites in use by a Replication Manager application is determined dynamically.

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_nsites()` method is typically called by Base API applications. (However, see also the `DB_ENV->rep_elect()` method `nsites` parameter.)

The database environment's replication subsystem may also be configured using the environment's `DB_CONFIG` file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "rep_set_nsites", one or more whitespace characters, and the number of sites specified. For example, "rep_set_nsites 5" sets the number of sites to 5. Because the `DB_CONFIG` file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_nsites()` method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle.

If master leases are in use, the `DB_ENV->rep_set_nsites()` method should not be called after the `DB_ENV->rep_start()` method is called as this could cause you to lose data previously thought to be durable. If master leases are not in use, the `DB_ENV->rep_set_nsites()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_nsites()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**nsites**

An integer specifying the total number of participant sites in the replication group. This number should exclude any replication views.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_nsites()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If master leases are in use and replication has already been started; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`
See Also

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
The `DB_ENV->rep_set_priority()` method specifies the database environment’s priority in replication group elections. A special value of 0 indicates that this environment cannot be a replication group master.

**Note**

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_set_ack_policy()` method describes *electable peers*, which are replication sites with a non-zero priority. For some acknowledgement policies, Replication Manager’s computation of the durability result for each new update transaction is sensitive to whether each site in the group is a peer. Therefore, if you change a site’s priority from a non-zero value to 0, or from 0 to a non-zero value, this can invalidate the durability result of previously committed transactions.

The database environment’s replication subsystem may also be configured using the environment’s `DB_CONFIG` file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "rep_set_priority", one or more whitespace characters, and the priority of this site. For example, "rep_set_priority 1" sets the priority of this site to 1. Because the `DB_CONFIG` file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

Note that if the application never explicitly sets a priority, then a default value of 100 is used. In preferred master mode, priority values for each site are automatically set and any attempt to change them results in an error.

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_priority()` method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle.

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_priority()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_priority()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**priority**

The priority of this database environment in the replication group. The priority must be a non-zero integer, or 0 if this environment cannot be a replication group master. (See Replication environment priorities for more information).

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_priority()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:
EINVAL

If changing the automatically set priority value in Replication Manager preferred master mode.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
The `DB_ENV->rep_set_request()` method sets a threshold for the minimum and maximum time that a client waits before requesting retransmission of a missing message. Specifically, if the client detects a gap in the sequence of incoming log records or database pages, Berkeley DB will wait for at least `min` microseconds before requesting retransmission of the missing record. Berkeley DB will double that amount before requesting the same missing record again, and so on, up to a maximum threshold of `max` microseconds.

These values are thresholds only. Replication Manager applications use these values to determine when to automatically request retransmission of missing messages. For Base API applications, Berkeley DB has no thread available in the library as a timer, so the threshold is only checked when a thread enters the Berkeley DB library to process an incoming replication message. Any amount of time may have passed since the last message arrived and Berkeley DB only checks whether the amount of time since a request was made is beyond the threshold value or not.

By default the minimum is 40000 and the maximum is 1280000 (1.28 seconds). These defaults are fairly arbitrary and the application likely needs to adjust these. The values should be based on expected load and performance characteristics of the master and client host platforms and transport infrastructure as well as round-trip message time.

The database environment's replication subsystem may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "rep_set_request", one or more whitespace characters, and the request times specified in two parts: the min and the max. For example, "rep_set_request 40000 1280000". Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_request()` method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_request()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_request()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`min`

The minimum number of microseconds a client waits before requesting retransmission.

`max`

The maximum number of microseconds a client waits before requesting retransmission.
Errors

The DB_ENV->rep_set_request() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

**DB_ENV**

See Also

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
DB_ENV->rep_set_timeout()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->rep_set_timeout(DB_ENV *env, int which, u_int32_t timeout);
```

The DB_ENV->rep_set_timeout() method specifies a variety of replication timeout values.

The database environment's replication subsystem may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "rep_set_timeout", one or more whitespace characters, and the which parameter specified as a string and the timeout. For example, "rep_set_timeout DB_REP_CONNECTION_RETRY 15000000" specifies the connection retry timeout for 15 seconds. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->rep_set_timeout() method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

The DB_ENV->rep_set_timeout() method may not be called to set the master lease timeout after the DB_ENV->repmgr_start() (page 603) method or the DB_ENV->rep_start() (page 574) method is called. For all other timeouts, the DB_ENV->rep_set_timeout() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->rep_set_timeout() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**which**

The which parameter must be set to one of the following values:

- **DB_REP_ACK_TIMEOUT**

  Configure the amount of time the Replication Manager's transport function waits to collect enough acknowledgments from replication group clients, before giving up and returning a failure indication. The default wait time is 1 second. Automatic takeover of a subordinate process is most reliable when this value is the same on all sites in the replication group.

- **DB_REP_CHECKPOINT_DELAY**

  Configure the amount of time a master site will delay between completing a checkpoint and writing a checkpoint record into the log. This delay allows clients to complete their own checkpoints before the master requires completion of them. The default is 30 seconds. If all databases in the environment, and the environment's transaction log, are configured to reside in memory (never preserved to disk), then, although checkpoints are still necessary, the delay is not useful and should be set to 0.

- **DB_REP_CONNECTION_RETRY**
Configure the amount of time the Replication Manager will wait before trying to re-establish a connection to another site after a communication failure. The default wait time is 30 seconds.

- **DB_REP_ELECTION_TIMEOUT**
  The timeout period for an election. The default timeout is 2 seconds.

- **DB_REP_ELECTION_RETRY**
  Configure the amount of time the Replication Manager will wait before retrying a failed election. The default wait time is 10 seconds. In preferred master mode, a shorter wait time is recommended to facilitate automatic takeovers, so the default wait time is reduced to 1 second.

- **DB_REP_FULL_ELECTION_TIMEOUT**
  An optional configuration timeout period to wait for full election participation the first time the replication group finds a master. By default this option is turned off and normal election timeouts are used. (See the Elections section in the Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide for more information.)

- **DB_REP_HEARTBEAT_MONITOR**
  The amount of time the Replication Manager, running at a client site, waits for some message activity on the connection from the master (heartbeats or other messages) before concluding that the connection has been lost. This timeout should be of longer duration than the DB_REP_HEARTBEAT_SEND timeout to ensure that heartbeats are not missed. When 0 (the default), no monitoring is performed. In preferred master mode the default is 2 seconds and heartbeat monitoring cannot be turned off because heartbeats are required for automatic takeovers.

- **DB_REP_HEARTBEAT_SEND**
  The frequency at which the Replication Manager, running at a master site, broadcasts a heartbeat message in an otherwise idle system. Heartbeat messages are used at client sites to monitor the connection to the master and to help request missing master changes in the absence of master activity. When 0 (the default), no heartbeat messages will be sent. In preferred master mode the default is 0.75 second and heartbeats cannot be turned off because they are required for automatic takeovers.

- **DB_REP_LEASE_TIMEOUT**
  Configure the amount of time a client grants its master lease to a master. When using master leases all sites in a replication group must use the same lease timeout value. There is no default value. If leases are desired, this method must be called prior to calling the DB_ENV->repmgr_start() (page 603) method or the DB_ENV->rep_start() (page 574) method. See also DB_ENV->rep_set_clockskew() (page 552) method, DB_ENV->rep_set_config() (page 554) method and Master leases.

- **DB_REP_WRITE_FORWARD_TIMEOUT**
Configure the amount of time a Replication Manager client waits for a response from a forwarded write operation before returning a failure indication. The default value is 5 seconds.

For more information on write forwarding, see the *Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide*.

**timeout**

The `timeout` parameter is the timeout value. It must be specified as an unsigned 32-bit number of microseconds, limiting the maximum timeout to roughly 71 minutes.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_timeout()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If setting the lease timeout and replication has already been started; if turning off a heartbeat timeout in Replication Manager preferred master mode; if setting a Replication Manager timeout for a Base API application; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

*Replication and Related Methods (page 523)*
The `DB_ENV->rep_set_transport()` method initializes the communication infrastructure for a database environment participating in a replicated application.

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_transport()` method is not called by most replication applications. It should only be called by Base API applications implementing their own network transport layer, explicitly holding replication group elections and handling replication messages outside of the Replication Manager framework.

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_transport()` method configures operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_transport()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_transport()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Note**

Berkeley DB is not re-entrant. The callback function for this method should not attempt to make library calls (for example, to release locks or close open handles). Re-entering Berkeley DB is not guaranteed to work correctly, and the results are undefined.

**Parameters**

envid

The `envid` parameter is the local environment's ID. It must be a non-negative integer and uniquely identify this Berkeley DB database environment (see Replication environment IDs for more information).

send

The `send` callback function is used to transmit data using the replication application's communication infrastructure. The parameters to `send` are as follows:

- dbenv

  The `dbenv` parameter is the enclosing database environment handle.

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->rep_set_transport(DB_ENV *env, int envid,
   int (*send)(DB_ENV *dbenv,
               const DBT *control, const DBT *rec, const DB_LSN *lsnp,
               int envid, u_int32_t flags));
```
• control

The **control** parameter is the first of the two data elements to be transmitted by the **send** function.

• rec

The **rec** parameter is the second of the two data elements to be transmitted by the **send** function.

• lsnp

If the type of message to be sent has an LSN associated with it, then the **lsnp** parameter contains the LSN of the record being sent. This LSN can be used to determine that certain records have been processed successfully by clients.

• envid

The **envid** parameter is a positive integer identifier that specifies the replication environment to which the message should be sent (see Replication environment IDs for more information).

The special identifier **DB_EID_BROADCAST** indicates that a message should be broadcast to every environment in the replication group. The application may use a true broadcast protocol or may send the message in sequence to each machine with which it is in communication. In both cases, the sending site should not be asked to process the message.

The special identifier **DB_EID_INVALID** indicates an invalid environment ID. This may be used to initialize values that are subsequently checked for validity.

• flags

The **flags** parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively **OR**'ing together one or more of the following values:

• **DB_REP_ANYWHERE**

  The message is a client request that can be satisfied by another client as well as by the master.

• **DB_REP_NOBUFFER**

  The record being sent should be transmitted immediately and not buffered or delayed.

• **DB_REP_PERMANENT**

  The record being sent is critical for maintaining database integrity (for example, the message includes a transaction commit). The application should take appropriate action to enforce the reliability guarantees it has chosen, such as waiting for acknowledgement from one or more clients.

• **DB_REP_REREQUEST**
The message is a client request that has already been made and to which no response was received.

It may sometimes be useful to pass application-specific data to the send function; see Environment FAQ for a discussion on how to do this.

The `send` function must return 0 on success and non-zero on failure. If the send function fails, the message being sent is necessary to maintain database integrity, and the local log is not configured for synchronous flushing, the local log will be flushed; otherwise, any error from the `send` function will be ignored.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_transport()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

The method is called from a Replication Manager application; or an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
The DB_ENV->rep_set_view() method specifies that this environment is a replication view. A replication view is a special type of client that can contain a full or partial copy of the replicated data. A partial view uses a callback to determine the subset of database files to replicate. A replication view does not vote in elections, cannot become master, and cannot contribute to transactional durability.

The DB_ENV->rep_set_view() method configures operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The DB_ENV->rep_set_view() method must be called prior to opening the environment. Also the method must be called every time the environment is used after that point. Once an environment is configured as a view, it stays that way for the lifetime of the environment.

The DB_ENV->rep_set_view() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Note

Berkeley DB is not re-entrant. The callback function for this method should not attempt to make library calls (for example, to release locks or close open handles). Re-entering Berkeley DB is not guaranteed to work correctly, and the results are undefined.

Parameters

partial_func

The partial_func callback function determines whether a particular database file should be replicated to the local site. If a NULL callback is specified, all database files will be replicated. The parameters to partial_func are as follows:

• dbenv

The dbenv parameter is the enclosing database environment handle.

• name

The name parameter is the physical on-disk file name of the database. In-memory databases are always replicated and do not invoke this callback.

• result

#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->rep_set_view(DB_ENV *env,
    int (*partial_func)(DB_ENV *dbenv,
        const char *name, int *result, u_int32_t flags));

The DB_ENV->rep_set_view() method specifies that this environment is a replication view. A replication view is a special type of client that can contain a full or partial copy of the replicated data. A partial view uses a callback to determine the subset of database files to replicate. A replication view does not vote in elections, cannot become master, and cannot contribute to transactional durability.

The DB_ENV->rep_set_view() method configures operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The DB_ENV->rep_set_view() method must be called prior to opening the environment. Also the method must be called every time the environment is used after that point. Once an environment is configured as a view, it stays that way for the lifetime of the environment.

The DB_ENV->rep_set_view() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Note

Berkeley DB is not re-entrant. The callback function for this method should not attempt to make library calls (for example, to release locks or close open handles). Re-entering Berkeley DB is not guaranteed to work correctly, and the results are undefined.

Parameters

partial_func

The partial_func callback function determines whether a particular database file should be replicated to the local site. If a NULL callback is specified, all database files will be replicated. The parameters to partial_func are as follows:

• dbenv

The dbenv parameter is the enclosing database environment handle.

• name

The name parameter is the physical on-disk file name of the database. In-memory databases are always replicated and do not invoke this callback.

• result
The `result` parameter is an output parameter indicating whether the file should be replicated. Set it to 0 to reject this file or to a non-zero value to accept this file.

- `flags`

  The `flags` parameter is currently unused.

The `partial` function must return 0 on success and non-zero on failure. If the partial function fails, the environment will panic.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->rep_set_view()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  The method was called after the environment was opened.

**Class**

- **DB_ENV**

**See Also**

- Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
DB_ENV->rep_start()

#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->rep_start(DB_ENV *env, DBT *cdata, u_int32_t flags);

The DB_ENV->rep_start() method configures the database environment as a client or master in a group of replicated database environments.

The DB_ENV->rep_start() method is not called by most replication applications. It should only be called by Base API applications implementing their own network transport layer, explicitly holding replication group elections and handling replication messages outside of the Replication Manager framework.

Replication master environments are the only database environments where replicated databases may be modified. Replication client environments are read-only as long as they are clients. Replication client environments may be upgraded to be replication master environments in the case that the current master fails or there is no master present. Replication view environments are always read-only and can never become master environments. If master leases are in use, this method cannot be used to appoint a master, and should only be used to configure a database environment as a master as the result of an election.

The enclosing database environment must already have been opened by calling the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method and must already have been configured to send replication messages by calling the DB_ENV->rep_set_transport() (page 569) method. If you are starting a view, you must have called the DB_ENV->rep_set_view() (page 572) method before opening the enclosing database environment.

The DB_ENV->rep_start() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

cdata

The cdata parameter is an opaque data item that is sent over the communication infrastructure when the client comes online (see Connecting to a new site for more information). If no such information is useful, cdata should be NULL.

flags

The flags parameter must be set to one of the following values:

- DB_REP_CLIENT

  Configure the environment as a replication client or view.

- DB_REP_MASTER

  Configure the environment as a replication master.
Errors

The `DB_ENV->rep_start()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_REP_UNAVAIL**

If the flags parameter was passed as `DB_REP_MASTER` but the database environment cannot currently become the replication master because it is temporarily initializing and is incomplete.

**EINVAL**

If the database environment was not already configured to communicate with a replication group by a call to `DB_ENV->rep_set_transport()` (page 569); the database environment was not already opened; this method is called from a Replication Manager application; outstanding master leases are granted; this method is used to appoint a new master when master leases are in use; a view is being started without having called the `DB_ENV->rep_set_view()` (page 572) method before opening the database environment; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
DB_ENV->rep_stat()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->rep_stat(DB_ENV *env, DB_REP_STAT **statp, u_int32_t flags);
```

The DB_ENV->rep_stat() method returns the replication subsystem statistics.

The DB_ENV->rep_stat() method creates a statistical structure of type DB_REP_STAT and copies a pointer to it into a user-specified memory location.

Statistical structures are stored in allocated memory. If application-specific allocation routines have been declared (see DB_ENV->set_alloc() (page 279) for more information), they are used to allocate the memory; otherwise, the standard C library `malloc(3)` is used. The caller is responsible for deallocating the memory. To deallocate the memory, free the memory reference; references inside the returned memory need not be individually freed.

The following DB_REP_STAT fields will be filled in:

- `uintmax_t st_bulk_fills;`
  The number of times the bulk buffer filled up, forcing the buffer content to be sent.

- `uintmax_t st_bulk_overflows;`
  The number of times a record was bigger than the entire bulk buffer, and therefore had to be sent as a singleton.

- `uintmax_t st_bulk_records;`
  The number of records added to a bulk buffer.

- `uintmax_t st_bulk_transfers;`
  The number of bulk buffers transferred (via a call to the application's `send` function).

- `uintmax_t st_client_rerequests;`
  The number of times this client site received a "re-request" message, indicating that a request it previously sent to another client could not be serviced by that client. (Compare to `st_client_svc_miss`.)

- `uintmax_t st_client_svc_miss;`
  The number of "request" type messages received by this client that could not be processed, forcing the originating requester to try sending the request to the master (or another client).

- `uintmax_t st_client_svc_req;`
  The number of "request" type messages received by this client. ("Request" messages are usually sent from a client to the master, but a message marked with the DB_REP_ANYWHERE
flag in the invocation of the application’s `send` function may be sent to another client instead.)

- `u_int32_t st_dupmasters;`
  The number of duplicate master conditions originally detected at this site.

- `u_int32_t st_egen;`
  The election generation number for the current or next election.

- `int st_election_cur_winner;`
  The environment ID of the winner of the current or last election.

- `u_int32_t st_election_datagen;`
  The master data generation number of the winner of the current or last election.

- `u_int32_t st_election_gen;`
  The master generation number of the winner of the current or last election.

- `DB_LSN st_election_lsn;`
  The maximum LSN of the winner of the current or last election.

- `u_int32_t st_election_nsites;`
  The number of sites responding to this site during the current election.

- `u_int32_t st_election_nvotes;`
  The number of votes required in the current or last election.

- `u_int32_t st_election_priority;`
  The priority of the winner of the current or last election.

- `u_int32_t st_election_sec;`
  The number of seconds the last election took (the total election time is `st_election_sec` plus `st_election_usec`).

- `int st_election_status;`
  The current election phase (0 if no election is in progress).

- `u_int32_t st_election_tiebreaker;`
  The tiebreaker value of the winner of the current or last election.

- `u_int32_t st_election_usec;`
The number of microseconds the last election took (the total election time is \texttt{st\_election\_sec} plus \texttt{st\_election\_usec}).

- \texttt{u\_int32\_t st\_election\_votes;}
  The number of votes received during the current election.

- \texttt{uintmax\_t st\_elections;}
  The number of elections held.

- \texttt{uintmax\_t st\_elections\_won;}
  The number of elections won.

- \texttt{int st\_env\_id;}
  The current environment ID.

- \texttt{u\_int32\_t st\_env\_priority;}
  The current environment priority.

- \texttt{uintmax\_t st\_ext\_duplicated;}
  The number of external file data messages received multiple times. This happens when the client assumes a external file data message was lost because it took too long to arrive, and so the client unnecessarily re-requests it.

- \texttt{uintmax\_t st\_ext\_records;}
  The number of external file data messages received and written to disk.

- \texttt{uintmax\_t st\_ext\_rereq;}
  The number of external file data messages re-requested because the original message was not received before the configured timeout was reached.

- \texttt{uintmax\_t st\_ext\_update\_rereq;}
  The number of external file update messages re-requested. External file update messages are expensive to create and send, so it is best to set the re-request timer high enough to avoid re-requesting them.

- \texttt{u\_int32\_t st\_gen;}
  The current master generation number.

- \texttt{uintmax\_t st\_lease\_chk;}
  The number of lease validity checks.

- \texttt{uintmax\_t st\_lease\_chk\_misses;}
  The number of lease validity checks that were missed.
The number of invalid lease validity checks.

- `uintmax_t st_lease_chk_refresh;`
  The number of lease refresh attempts during lease validity checks.

- `uintmax_t st_lease_sends;`
  The number of live messages sent while using leases.

- `uintmax_t st_log_duplicated;`
  The number of duplicate log records received.

- `uintmax_t st_log_queued;`
  The number of log records currently queued.

- `uintmax_t st_log_queued_max;`
  The maximum number of log records ever queued at once.

- `uintmax_t st_log_queued_total;`
  The total number of log records queued.

- `uintmax_t st_log_records;`
  The number of log records received and appended to the log.

- `uintmax_t st_log_requested;`
  The number of times log records were missed and requested.

- `int st_master;`
  The current master environment ID.

- `uintmax_t st_master_changes;`
  The number of times the master has changed.

- `u_int32_t st_max_lease_sec;`
  The number of seconds of the longest lease (the total lease time is `st_max_lease_sec` plus `st_max_lease_usec`).

- `u_int32_t st_max_lease_usec;`
  The number of microseconds of the longest lease (the total lease time is `st_max_lease_sec` plus `st_max_lease_usec`).

- `DB_LSN st_max_perm_lsn;`
The LSN of the maximum permanent log record, or 0 if there are no permanent log records.

- `uintmax_t st_msgs_badgen;`
  The number of messages received with a bad generation number.

- `uintmax_t st_msgs_processed;`
  The number of messages received and processed.

- `uintmax_t st_msgs_recover;`
  The number of messages ignored due to pending recovery.

- `uintmax_t st_msgs_send_failures;`
  The number of failed message sends.

- `uintmax_t st_msgs_sent;`
  The number of messages sent.

- `uintmax_t st_newsites;`
  The number of new site messages received.

- `DB_LSN st_next_lsn;`
  In replication environments configured as masters, the next LSN to be used. In replication environments configured as clients, the next LSN expected.

- `u_int32_t st_next_pg;`
  The next page number we expect to receive.

- `u_int32_t st_nsites;`
  The number of sites used in the last election.

- `uintmax_t st nthrottles;`
  The number of times that data transmission was stopped to limit the amount of data sent in response to a single call to `DB_ENV->rep_process_message()` (page 549).

- `uintmax_t st_outdated;`
  The number of outdated conditions detected.

- `uintmax_t st_pg_duplicated;`
  The number of duplicate pages received.

- `uintmax_t st_pg_records;`
The number of pages received and stored.

- `uintmax_t st_pg_requested;`
  The number of pages missed and requested from the master.

- `uintmax_t st_startsync_delayed;`
  The number of times the client had to delay the start of a cache flush operation (initiated by the master for an impending checkpoint) because it was missing some previous log record(s).

- `u_int32_t st_startup_complete;`
  The client site has completed its startup procedures and is now handling live records from the master.

- `u_int32_t st_status;`
  The current replication role. Set to `DB_REP_MASTER` if the environment is a replication master, `DB_REP_CLIENT` if the environment is a replication client, or 0 if replication is not configured.

- `uintmax_t st_txns_applied;`
  The number of transactions applied.

- `u_int32_t st_view;`
  The current site is a replication view.

- `DB_LSN st_waiting_lsn;`
  The LSN of the first log record we have after missing log records being waited for, or 0 if no log records are currently missing.

- `u_int32_t st_waiting_pg;`
  The page number of the first page we have after missing pages being waited for, or 0 if no pages are currently missing.

The `DB_ENV->rep_stat()` method may not be called before the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method is called.

The `DB_ENV->rep_stat()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

#### statp

The `statp` parameter references memory into which a pointer to the allocated statistics structure is copied.
**flags**

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

- **DB_STAT_CLEAR**

  Reset statistics after returning their values.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->rep_stat() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the database environment was not already opened; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

**DB_ENV**

**See Also**

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
DB_ENV->rep_stat_print()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->rep_stat_print(DB_ENV *env, u_int32_t flags);
```

The DB_ENV->rep_stat_print() method displays the replication subsystem statistical information, as described for the DB_ENV->rep_stat() method. The information is printed to a specified output channel (see the DB_ENV->set_msgfile() (page 326) method for more information), or passed to an application callback function (see the DB_ENV->set_msgcall() (page 324) method for more information).

The DB_ENV->rep_stat_print() method may not be called before the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called.

The DB_ENV->rep_stat_print() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

flags

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

- DB_STAT_ALL
  Display all available information.
- DB_STAT_CLEAR
  Reset statistics after displaying their values.

Errors

The DB_ENV->rep_stat_print() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL

If the method was called before DB_ENV->open() (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
DB_ENV->rep_sync()

#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->rep_sync(DB_ENV *env, u_int32_t flags);

The DB_ENV->rep_sync() method forces master synchronization to begin for this client. This method is the other half of setting the DB_REP_CONF_DELAYCLIENT flag via the DB_ENV->rep_set_config() (page 554) method.

If an application has configured delayed master synchronization, the application must synchronize explicitly (otherwise the client will remain out-of-date and will ignore all database changes forwarded from the replication group master). The DB_ENV->rep_sync() method may be called any time after the client application learns that the new master has been established (by receiving a DB_EVENT_REP_NEWMASTER event notification).

Before calling this method, the enclosing database environment must already have been opened by calling the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method and must already have been configured to send replication messages by calling the DB_ENV->rep_set_transport() (page 569) method.

The DB_ENV->rep_sync() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

flags

The flags parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

Errors

The DB_ENV->rep_sync() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

DB_REP_JOIN_FAILURE

If master synchronization requires an internal initialization but automatic internal initializations have been disabled by setting the DB_REP_CONF_AUTOINIT flag to 0.

EINVAL

If the database environment was not already configured to communicate with a replication group by a call to DB_ENV->rep_set_transport() (page 569); the database environment was not already opened; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
DB_ENV->repmgr_channel()

#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->repmgr_channel(DB_ENV *env, int eid, DB_CHANNEL **channelp,
                        u_int32_t flags);

The DB_ENV->repmgr_channel() method returns a DB_CHANNEL handle. This is used to create and manage custom message traffic between the sites in the replication group.

This method allocates memory for the handle, returning a pointer to the structure in the memory to which channelp refers. To release the allocated memory and discard the handle, call the DB_CHANNEL->close() (page 527) method.

The DB_ENV->repmgr_channel() method may be called at any time after DB_ENV->repmgr_start() (page 603) has been called with a 0 return code.

The DB_ENV->repmgr_channel() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

eid

This parameter must be set to one of the following:

- The numerical environment ID of a remote site in the replication group.
- DB_EID_MASTER

Messages sent on this channel are sent only to the master site. Note that messages are always sent to the current master, even if the master has changed since the channel was opened. If the current master is disconnected or unknown, the operation fails and Replication Manager returns an error code.

If the local site is the master, then sending messages on this channel will result in the local site receiving those messages echoed back to itself.

channelp

References memory into which a pointer to the allocated handle is copied.

flags

This parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

Errors

The DB_ENV->repmgr_channel() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:
**DB_REP_UNAVAIL**

If the `eid` parameter is `DB_EID_MASTER` but the current master is disconnected or unknown.

**EINVAL**

If this method is called from a Base API application; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

`Replication and Related Methods (page 523), The DB_CHANNEL Handle (page 526)`
The `DB_ENV->repmgr_local_site()` method returns a `DB_SITE` handle that defines the local site's host/port network address. You use the `DB_SITE` handle to configure and manage replication sites.

This method allocates memory for the handle, returning a pointer to the structure in the memory to which `sitep` refers. To release the allocated memory and discard the handle, call the `DB_SITE->close()` (page 610) method.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_local_site()` method may be called at any time after the environment handle has been created.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_local_site()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

- `sitep`
  References memory into which a pointer to the allocated handle is copied.

### Errors

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_local_site()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  If this method is called from a Base API application, or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

### Class

- **DB_ENV**

### See Also

- Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
The `DB_ENV->repmgr_get_ack_policy()` method returns the Replication Manager's client acknowledgment policy. This is configured using the `DB_ENV->repmgr_set_ack_policy()` method.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_get_ack_policy()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_get_ack_policy()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**ack_policyp**

The `ack_policyp` parameter references memory into which the Replication Manager's client acknowledgement policy is copied.

### Class

`DB_ENV`

### See Also

Replication and Related Methods (page 523), `DB_ENV->repmgr_set_ack_policy()` (page 592)
The `DB_ENV->repmgr_get_incoming_queue_max()` method returns the byte-count limit on the amount of dynamic memory used by the Replication Manager incoming queue. This value is configurable using the `DB_ENV->repmgr_set_incoming_queue_max()` method.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_get_incoming_queue_max()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_get_incoming_queue_max()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **gbytesp**
  The `gbytesp` parameter references memory into which the gigabytes component of the Replication Manager incoming queue limit is copied.

- **bytesp**
  The `bytesp` parameter references memory into which the bytes component of the Replication Manager incoming queue is copied.

**Class**

- `DB_ENV`

**See Also**

- Replication and Related Methods (page 523), `DB_ENV->repmgr_set_incoming_queue_max()` (page 594)
DB_ENV->repmgr_msg_dispatch()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->repmgr_msg_dispatch(DB_ENV *env, 
    void (*msg_dispatch_fcn) (DB_ENV *env, DB_CHANNEL *channel,
    DBT *request, u_int32_t nrequest,
    u_int32_t cb_flags),
    u_int32_t flags);
```

Sets the message dispatch function. This function is responsible for receiving messages sent from remote sites using either the DB_CHANNEL->send_msg() (page 528) or DB_CHANNEL->send_request() (page 530) methods. If the message received by this function was sent using the DB_CHANNEL->send_msg() (page 528) method then no response is required. If the message was sent using the DB_CHANNEL->send_request() (page 530) method, then this function must send a response using the DB_CHANNEL->send_msg() (page 528) method.

For best results, the DB_ENV->repmgr_msg_dispatch() method should be called before the Replication Manager has been started.

The DB_ENV->repmgr_msg_dispatch() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**msg_dispatch_fcn**

This parameter is the application-specific function used to handle messages sent over Replication Manager message channels. It takes four parameters:

- **channel**

  Provides the DB_CHANNEL to be used to send a response back to the originator of the message. If the message was sent by the remote site using DB_CHANNEL->send_request() (page 530) then this function should send a response back to the originator using the channel provided on this parameter. The message should be sent by calling DB_CHANNEL->send_msg() (page 528) exactly once.

  This channel is valid only during the current invocation of the dispatch function; it is destroyed when the dispatch function returns. The application may not save a copy of the pointer and use it later elsewhere. Methods that do not make sense in the context of a message dispatch function (such as DB_CHANNEL->send_request() (page 530) and DB_CHANNEL->close() (page 527)) will be rejected with EINVAL.

- **request**

  Array of DBTs containing the message received from the remote site.

- **nrequest**
Specifies the number of elements in the request array.

- **cb_flags**

  This flag is `DB_REPMGR_NEED_RESPONSE` if the message requires a response. Otherwise, it is 0.

This function does not return a value. If the function encounters an error, you can reflect the error back to the originator of the message by formatting an error message of your own design into the response.

**flags**

This parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_msg_dispatch()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If this method is called from a Base API application, or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

`Replication and Related Methods (page 523)`
The DB_ENV->repmgr_set_ack_policy() method specifies how master and client sites will handle acknowledgment of replication messages which are necessary for "permanent" records. View sites never send these acknowledgements and are not counted by any acknowledgement policy. The current implementation requires all sites in a replication group to configure the same acknowledgement policy.

The database environment's replication subsystem may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "repmgr_set_ack_policy", one or more whitespace characters, and the ack_policy parameter specified as a string. For example, "repmgr_set_ack_policy DB_REPMGR_ACKS_ALL". Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

Waiting for client acknowledgements is always limited by the DB_REP_ACK_TIMEOUT specified by the DB_ENV->rep_set_timeout() (page 566) method. If an insufficient number of client acknowledgements have been received, then the master will invoke the event callback function, if set, with the DB_EVENT_REP_PERM_FAILED value. (See the Choosing a Replication Manager Ack Policy section in the Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide for more information.)

The DB_ENV->repmgr_set_ack_policy() method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

The DB_ENV->repmgr_set_ack_policy() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->repmgr_set_ack_policy() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**ack_policy**

Some acknowledgement policies use the concept of an electable peer, which is a client capable of being subsequently elected master of the replication group. The ack_policy parameter must be set to one of the following values:

- **DB_REPMGR_ACKS_ALL**
  
  The master should wait until all replication clients have acknowledged each permanent replication message.

- **DB_REPMGR_ACKS_ALL_AVAILABLE**
The master should wait until all currently connected replication clients have acknowledged each permanent replication message. This policy will then invoke the DB_EVENT_REP_PERM_FAILED event if fewer than a quorum of clients acknowledged during that time.

- **DB_REPMGR_ACKS_ALL_PEERS**
  The master should wait until all electable peers have acknowledged each permanent replication message.

- **DB_REPMGR_ACKS_NONE**
  The master should not wait for any client replication message acknowledgments.

- **DB_REPMGR_ACKS_ONE**
  The master should wait until at least one client site has acknowledged each permanent replication message.

- **DB_REPMGR_ACKS_ONE_PEER**
  The master should wait until at least one electable peer has acknowledged each permanent replication message.

- **DB_REPMGR_ACKS_QUORUM**
  The master should wait until it has received acknowledgements from the minimum number of electable peers sufficient to ensure that the effect of the permanent record remains durable if an election is held. This is the default acknowledgement policy.

**Errors**

The DB_ENV->repmgr_set_ack_policy() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  If this method is called from a base replication API application; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
DB_ENV->repmgr_set_incoming_queue_max()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->repmgr_set_incoming_queue_max(DB_ENV *env, u_int32_t gbytes,
                                u_int32_t bytes);
```

The DB_ENV->repmgr_set_incoming_queue_max() method sets a byte-count limit on the amount of dynamic memory used by the Replication Manager incoming queue. When the incoming queue reaches this limit, incoming messages are dropped until the Replication Manager processes some of the messages already in the queue. Any dropped messages are automatically rerequested at a later time. This limit is not a hard limit, and the message that exceeds this limit is the last one to be enqueued.

The Replication Manager incoming queue has a default size limit of 100MB. We recommend a minimum size limit of 32MB.

If the values passed to the DB_ENV->repmgr_set_incoming_queue_max() method are both zero, then the incoming queue size limit is turned off.

We recommend increasing the incoming queue size limit in the following cases:

- Master leases are enabled, particularly if there are many DB_REP_LEASE_EXPIRED errors.
- Clients are far behind the master.
- The master is using bulk transfer to send groups of records to the clients in a single network transfer.
- The master has blob databases and is performing many blob operations on them.
- The master is performing intensive write operations.

The database environment's replication subsystem may also be configured using the environment's DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string "repmgr_set_incoming_queue_max", one or more whitespace characters, and the limit specified in two parts: the gigabytes and the bytes values. For example, "repmgr_set_incoming_queue_max 0 104857600" sets a 100 megabyte limit. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->repmgr_set_incoming_queue_max() method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

The DB_ENV->repmgr_set_incoming_queue_max() method may be called at any time during the life of the application. If the limit is reduced, messages already in the queue are not removed, but further incoming messages are not added to the queue until its size drops below the new limit.

The DB_ENV->repmgr_set_incoming_queue_max() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.
Parameters

**gbytes**

The `gbytes` parameter specifies the number of gigabytes which, when added to the `bytes` parameter, specifies the maximum size limit of the incoming queue.

**bytes**

The `bytes` parameter specifies the number of bytes which, when added to the `gbytes` parameter, specifies the maximum size limit of the incoming queue.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
DB_ENV->repmgr_set_socket()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->repmgr_set_socket(DB_ENV *env,
   int (*approval_func)(DB_ENV *dbenv,
   DB_REPMGR_SOCKET socket, int *result, u_int32_t flags));
```

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_set_socket()` method specifies a socket callback. The socket callback enables an application to exert additional control over the connections used by Replication Manager.

Replication Manager creates IPv6 connections whenever possible but also supports IPv4. In cases where there are multiple addresses defined for a site, Replication Manager attempts connections first on any IPv6 addresses and then on any IPv4 addresses until one succeeds. Replication Manager relies on platform configuration settings and defaults to govern the use of IPv4-mapped IPv6 addresses in cases where one site is using IPv6 and the other site is using IPv4.

If your application requires more precise control over connections, you can use this method to provide a socket callback. The socket callback provides access to each socket before it is used in a connection attempt and provides the ability to accept or reject the socket. Within the socket callback's approval_func, you can test socket properties such as address characteristics (e.g., whether it is IPv6 or IPv4) and socket options. You can optionally change the IPV6_V6ONLY socket option to enable or disable use of IPv4-mapped IPv6 addresses. If the socket callback rejects a socket or if a connection attempt does not succeed, Replication Manager tries any other addresses defined for the site.

The only supported change to the socket in this callback is the IPV6_V6ONLY socket option. Any other changes may adversely affect the operation of Replication Manager's TCP/IP communications infrastructure.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_set_socket()` method configures operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_set_socket()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Note**

Berkeley DB is not re-entrant. The callback function for this method should not attempt to make library calls (for example, to release locks or close open handles). Re-entering Berkeley DB is not guaranteed to work correctly, and the results are undefined.
Parameters

approval_func

The approval_func callback function determines whether a particular socket should be used in a connection attempt to a site. The parameters to approval_func are as follows:

• dbenv

The dbenv parameter is the enclosing database environment handle.

• socket

The socket parameter is the socket that is about to be used in a connection attempt to a site.

• result

The result parameter is an output parameter indicating whether to use this socket. Set it to 0 to reject this socket or to a non-zero value to accept this socket.

• flags

The flags parameter is currently unused.

The approval function must return 0 on success and non-zero on failure. If the approval function fails, the environment will panic.

Errors

The DB_ENV->repmgr_set_socket() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL

If this method is called from a base replication API application; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
The `DB_ENV->repmgr_site()` method returns a DB_SITE handle that defines a site's network address. You use the DB_SITE handle to configure and manage a Replication Manager site.

This method allocates memory for the handle, returning a pointer to the structure in the memory to which `sitep` refers. To release the allocated memory and discard the handle, call the `DB_SITE->close()` method.

You must use the exact same host identification string and port number to refer to a given site throughout your application and on each of its sites.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_site()` method may be called at any time after the environment handle has been created.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_site()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**host**

The site's host identification string, generally a TCP/IP host name. IPv6 and IPv4 addresses in numeric format are also accepted. If multiple addresses are defined for a host name, an IPv6 address is used whenever possible.

**port**

The port number on which the site is listening.

**sitep**

References memory into which a pointer to the allocated handle is copied.

**flags**

This parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

### Errors

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_site()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If this method is called from a Base API application, or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.
Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Replication and Related Methods (page 523), The DB_SITE Handle (page 525)
DB_ENV->repmgr_site_by_eid()

```
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->repmgr_site_by_eid(DB_ENV *env, int eid,
   DB_SITE **sitep);
```

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_site_by_eid()` method returns a DB_SITE handle based on the site's environment ID value. You use the DB_SITE handle to configure and manage replication sites.

This method allocates memory for the handle, returning a pointer to the structure in the memory to which `sitep` refers. To release the allocated memory and discard the handle, call the `DB_SITE->close()` (page 610) method.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_site_by_eid()` method may be called at any time after opening the environment.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_site_by_eid()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **eid**
  
The environment ID of the site for which you want to create the DB_SITE handle. You can obtain a site's EID by using the `DB_SITE->get_eid()` (page 535) method.

- **sitep**
  
References memory into which a pointer to the allocated handle is copied.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_site()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **DB_NOTFOUND**
  
Returned if there is no site corresponding to the supplied `eid` value.

- **EINVAL**
  
If this method is called from a Base API application, or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

- **DB_ENV**

**See Also**

- `Replication and Related Methods` (page 523)
DB_ENV->repmgr_site_list()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->repmgr_site_list(DB_ENV *env,
    u_int *countp, DB_REPMGR_SITE **listp);
```

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_site_list()` method returns the status of the sites currently known by the Replication Manager.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_site_list()` method creates an array of statistical structures of type `DB_REPMGR_SITE` and copies a pointer to it into a user-specified memory location.

Statistical structures are stored in allocated memory. If application-specific allocation routines have been declared (see `DB_ENV->set_alloc()` (page 279) for more information), they are used to allocate the memory; otherwise, the standard C library `malloc(3)` is used. The caller is responsible for deallocating the memory. To deallocate the memory, free the memory reference; references inside the returned memory need not be individually freed.

The following `DB_REPMGR_SITE` fields will be filled in:

- **int eid;**

  Environment ID assigned by the Replication Manager. This is the same value that is passed to the application's event notification function for the `DB_EVENT_REP_NEWMASTER` event.

- **char host[];**

  Null-terminated host name.

- **u_int port;**

  TCP/IP port number.

- **u_int32_t status;**

  Zero (if unknown), or one of the following constants: `DB_REPMGR_CONNECTED`, `DB_REPMGR_DISCONNECTED`.

- **u_int32_t flags;**

  Zero or a bitwise inclusive OR of the `DB_REPMGR_ISPEER` and the `DB_REPMGR_ISVIEW` constants. The `DB_REPMGR_ISPEER` value means that the site is a possible client-to-client peer. The `DB_REPMGR_ISVIEW` value means that the site is a view.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_site_list()` method may be called only after the `DB_ENV->repmgr_start()` (page 603) method has been called with a 0 return code.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_site_list()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.
**Parameters**

*countp*

A count of the returned structures will be stored into the memory referenced by `countp`.

*listp*

A reference to an array of structures will be stored into the memory referenced by `listp`.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
DB_ENV->repmgr_start()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->repmgr_start(DB_ENV *env, int nthreads, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_start()` method starts the Replication Manager.

There are two ways to build Berkeley DB replication applications: the most common approach is to use the Berkeley DB library Replication Manager, where the Berkeley DB library manages the replication group, including network transport, all replication message processing and acknowledgment, and group elections. Applications using the Replication Manager generally make the following calls:

1. Use `DB_ENV->repmgr_site()` (page 598) to obtain a DB_SITE handle, then use that handle to configure the sites in the replication group.
   a. Use `DB_SITE->set_config()` (page 537) to configure sites in the replication group.
   b. Use `DB_SITE->remove()` (page 536) to remove a site from the replication group.
2. Call `DB_ENV->repmgr_set_ack_policy()` (page 592) to configure the message acknowledgment policy which best supports the replication group's transactional needs.
3. Call `DB_ENV->rep_set_priority()` (page 562) to configure the local site's election priority.
4. Call `DB_ENV->repmgr_start()` to start the replication application.

For more information on building Replication Manager applications, please see the Replication Getting Started Guide included in the Berkeley DB documentation.

Applications with special needs (for example, applications using network protocols not supported by the Berkeley DB Replication Manager), must perform additional configuration and call other Berkeley DB replication Base API methods. For more information on building Base API applications, please see the Base API Methods section in the Berkeley DB Programmer’s Reference Guide.

Starting the Replication Manager consists of opening the TCP/IP listening socket to accept incoming connections, and starting all necessary background threads. When multiple processes share a database environment, only one process can open the listening socket; the `DB_ENV->repmgr_start()` method automatically opens the socket in the first process to call it, and skips this step in the later calls from other subordinate processes.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_start()` method may not be called before the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method is called to open the environment. In addition, this method may not be called before at least one replication site has been configured using the `DB_SITE` class. In addition, the local environment must be opened with the `DB_THREAD` flag set. If you are starting a view, you must call the `DB_ENV->rep_set_view()` (page 572) method before opening the local environment.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_start()` method will return `DB_REP_IGNORE` as an informational, non-error return code, if another process has previously become the TCP/IP listener (though the
current call has nevertheless successfully started Replication Manager's background threads). Unless otherwise specified, the `DB_ENV->repmgr_start()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**nthreads**

Specify the number of threads of control created and dedicated to processing replication messages. In addition to these message processing threads, the Replication Manager creates and manages a few of its own threads of control. The TCP/IP listener process can change this value after the Replication Manager is started with a subsequent call to the `DB_ENV->repmgr_start()` method.

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to one of the following values when first starting the Replication Manager:

- **DB_REP_MASTER**
  
  Start as a master site, and do not call for an election. Note there must never be more than a single master in any replication group, and only one site at a time should ever be started with the `DB_REP_MASTER` flag specified.

- **DB_REP_CLIENT**

  Start as a client, view, or preferred master site, and do not call for an election.

- **DB_REP_ELECTION**

  Start as a client, and call for an election if no master is found.

If the Replication Manager is already started, a `flags` value of 0 can be used when making a subsequent call to change the value of `nthreads` or when starting a subordinate process.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_start()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_REP_UNAVAIL**

The local site tried to join the group, but was unable to do so for some reason (because a master site is not available, or because insufficient clients are running to acknowledge the new site). When that happens the application should pause and retry adding the site until it completes successfully.

**EINVAL**

If the database environment was not already opened or was opened without the `DB_THREAD` flag set; a local site has not already been configured, this method is called from a Base API
application; a view is being started without having called the DB_ENV->rep_set_view() (page 572) method before opening the database environment; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
The `DB_ENV->repmgr_stat()` method returns the Replication Manager statistics.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_stat()` method creates a statistical structure of type `DB_REPMGR_STAT` and copies a pointer to it into a user-specified memory location.

Statistical structures are stored in allocated memory. If application-specific allocation routines have been declared (see `DB_ENV->set_alloc()` (page 279) for more information), they are used to allocate the memory; otherwise, the standard C library `malloc(3)` is used. The caller is responsible for deallocating the memory. To deallocate the memory, free the memory reference; references inside the returned memory need not be individually freed.

The following `DB_REPMGR_STAT` fields will be filled in:

- `uintmax_t st_connect_fail;`
  The number of times an attempt to open a new TCP/IP connection failed.

- `uintmax_t st_connection_drop;`
  The number of times an existing TCP/IP connection failed.

- `u_int32_t st_elect_threads;`
  The number of currently active election threads.

- `uintmax_t st_incoming_msgs_dropped;`
  The number of incoming messages that were dropped because the incoming queue was full. (Berkeley DB replication is tolerant of dropped messages, and will automatically request retransmission of any missing messages as needed.)

- `u_int32_t st_incoming_queue_bytes;`
  Bytes component of the memory consumption for the messages currently in the incoming queue.

- `u_int32_t st_incoming_queue_gbytes;`
  Gigabytes component of the memory consumption for the messages currently in the incoming queue.

- `u_int32_t st_max_elect_threads;`
  The number of election threads for which space is reserved.

- `uintmax_t st_msgs_dropped;`
  The number of incoming TCP/IP connection failed.
The number of outgoing messages that were completely dropped, because the outgoing message queue was full. (Berkeley DB replication is tolerant of dropped messages, and will automatically request retransmission of any missing messages as needed.)

- `uintmax_t st_msgs_queued;`
  The number of outgoing messages which could not be transmitted immediately, due to a full network buffer, and had to be queued for later delivery.

- `uintmax_t st_perm_failed;`
  The number of times a message critical for maintaining database integrity (for example, a transaction commit), originating at this site, did not receive sufficient acknowledgement from clients, according to the configured acknowledgement policy and acknowledgement timeout.

- `u_int32_t st_site_participants;`
  The number of participant sites in the replication group.

- `u_int32_t st_site_total;`
  The total number of sites in the replication group.

- `u_int32_t st_site_views;`
  The number of view sites in the replication group.

- `uintmax_t st_takeovers;`
  The number of times a subordinate process took over as the replication process after a previous replication process has finished successfully.

- `uintmax_t st_write_ops_forwarded;`
  The total number of outgoing write operations forwarded by this client.

- `uintmax_t st_write_ops_received;`
  The total number of incoming forwarded write operations received by this master.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_stat()` method may not be called before the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method is called.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_stat()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`statp`

The `statp` parameter references memory into which a pointer to the allocated statistics structure is copied.
**flags**

The **flags** parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

- **DB_STAT_CLEAR**

  Reset statistics after returning their values.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_stat()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called before `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

`Replication and Related Methods (page 523)`
DB_ENV->repmgr_stat_print()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->repmgr_stat_print(DB_ENV *env, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_stat_print()` method displays the Replication Manager statistical information, as described for the `DB_ENV->repmgr_stat()` method. The information is printed to a specified output channel (see the `DB_ENV->set_msgfile()` (page 326) method for more information), or passed to an application callback function (see the `DB_ENV->set_msgcall()` (page 324) method for more information).

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_stat_print()` method may not be called before the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method is called.

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_stat_print()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

- `DB_STAT_ALL`
  
  Display all available information.

- `DB_STAT_CLEAR`
  
  Reset statistics after displaying their values.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->repmgr_stat_print()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  
  If the method was called before `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

- `DB_ENV`

**See Also**

- Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
DB_SITE->close()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_SITE->close(DB_SITE *site);
```

The DB_SITE->close() method deallocates the DB_SITE handle. The handle must not be accessed again after this method is called, regardless of the return value.

Use of this method does not in any way affect the configuration of the site to which the handle refers, or of the replication group in general.

All DB_SITE handles must be closed before the owning DB_ENV handle is closed.

The DB_SITE->close() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Class

DB_SITE

See Also

Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
DB_ENV->txn_applied()

#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->txn_applied(DB_ENV *env, DB_TXN_TOKEN *token,
                        db_timeout_t timeout, u_int32_t flags);

The DB_ENV->txn_applied() method checks to see if a specified transaction has been replicated from the master of a replication group. It may be called by applications using either the Base API or the Replication Manager.

If the transaction has not yet arrived, this method will block for the amount of time specified on the timeout parameter while it waits for the result to be determined. For more information, please refer to the Read your writes consistency section in the Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide.

The DB_ENV->txn_applied() method may not be called before the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method.

The DB_ENV->txn_applied() method returns a non-zero error on failure and 0 to indicate that the specified transaction has been applied at the local site. It may also return one of the following non-zero return codes:

- **DB_TIMEOUT**
  Returned if the specified transaction has not yet arrived at the calling site, but can be expected to arrive soon. If a non-zero timeout parameter is given, the this method always waits for the specified amount of time before returning DB_TIMEOUT.

- **DB_NOTFOUND**
  Returned if the transaction is expected to never arrive. This occurs if the transaction has not been applied at the local site because the transaction has been rolled back due to a change of master.

**Parameters**

- **token**
  A pointer to a buffer containing a copy of a commit token previously generated at the replication group’s master environment. Commit tokens are created using the DB_TXN->set_commit_token() (page 613) method.

- **timeout**
  Specifies the maximum time to wait for the transaction to arrive by replication, expressed in microseconds. To check the status of the transaction without waiting, provide a timeout value of 0.

- **flags**
  The flags parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.
Errors

The DB_ENV->txn_applied() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_KEYEMPTY**

The specified token was generated by a transaction that did not modify the database environment (for example, a read-only transaction).

**DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**

While waiting for the result to be determined, the API became locked out due to replication role change and/or master/client synchronization. The application should abort in-flight transactions, pause briefly, and then retry.

**EINVAL**

If the database environment was not already opened; or if the specified token was generated from a non-replicated database environment.

Class

DB_ENV

See Also

Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638), Replication and Related Methods (page 523)
**DB_TXN->set_commit_token()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_TXN->set_commit_token(DB_TXN *txn, DB_TXN_TOKEN *buffer);
```

The `DB_TXN->set_commit_token()` method configures the transaction for commit token generation, and accepts the address of an application-supplied buffer to receive the token. The actual generation of the token contents does not occur until commit time.

Commit tokens are used to enable some consistency guarantees for replicated applications. Please see the Read your writes consistency section in the *Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide* for more information.

The `DB_TXN->set_commit_token()` method may be called at any time after the `DB_ENV->txn_begin()` (page 648) method has been called, and before `DB_TXN->commit()` (page 660) has been called.

The `DB_TXN->set_commit_token()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **buffer**

  The address of an application-supplied buffer. The buffer memory must remain available, and will be filled in later by Berkeley DB, at the time of the commit() call.

**Errors**

The `DB_TXN->set_commit_token()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  If the transaction is a nested transaction; if this method is called on a replication client; if the database environment is not configured for logging.

**Class**

- **DB_TXN**

**See Also**

- *Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)*, *Replication and Related Methods (page 523)*
Chapter 11. The DB_SEQUENCE Handle

Sequences provide an arbitrary number of persistent objects that return an increasing or decreasing sequence of integers. Opening a sequence handle associates it with a record in a database. The handle can maintain a cache of values from the database so that a database update is not needed as the application allocates a value.

A sequence is stored as a record pair in a database. The database may be of any type, but must not have been configured to support duplicate data items. The sequence is referenced by the key used when the sequence is created, therefore the key must be compatible with the underlying access method. If the database stores fixed-length records, the record size must be at least 64 bytes long.

You create a sequence using the `db_sequence_create` (page 616) method.

For more information on sequences, see the Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide guide.
## Sequences and Related Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequences and Related Methods</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>db_sequence_create</code></td>
<td>Create a sequence handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_SEQUENCE-&gt;close()</code></td>
<td>Close a sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_SEQUENCE-&gt;get()</code></td>
<td>Get the next sequence element(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_SEQUENCE-&gt;get_dbp()</code></td>
<td>Return a handle for the underlying sequence database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_SEQUENCE-&gt;get_key()</code></td>
<td>Return the key for a sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_SEQUENCE-&gt;initial_value()</code></td>
<td>Set the initial value of a sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_SEQUENCE-&gt;open()</code></td>
<td>Open a sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_SEQUENCE-&gt;remove()</code></td>
<td>Remove a sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_SEQUENCE-&gt;stat()</code></td>
<td>Return sequence statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_SEQUENCE-&gt;stat_print()</code></td>
<td>Print sequence statistics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sequences Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequences Configuration</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_SEQUENCE-&gt;set_cachesize()</code>, <code>DB_SEQUENCE-&gt;get_cachesize()</code></td>
<td>Set/get the cache size of a sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_SEQUENCE-&gt;set_flags()</code>, <code>DB_SEQUENCE-&gt;get_flags()</code></td>
<td>Set/get the flags for a sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_SEQUENCE-&gt;set_range()</code>, <code>DB_SEQUENCE-&gt;get_range()</code></td>
<td>Set/get the range for a sequence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The `db_sequence_create` function

```c
#include <db.h>

int db_sequence_create(DB_SEQUENCE **seq, DB *db, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `db_sequence_create` function creates a sequence handle, which can then be opened with `DB_SEQUENCE->open()` (page 627).

`DB_SEQUENCE` handles are free-threaded if the `DB_THREAD` flag is specified to the `DB_SEQUENCE->open()` (page 627) method when the sequence is opened. Once the `DB_SEQUENCE->close()` (page 618) or `DB_SEQUENCE->remove()` (page 629) methods are called, the handle can not be accessed again, regardless of the method’s return.

Each handle opened on a sequence may maintain a separate cache of values which are returned to the application using the `DB_SEQUENCE->get()` (page 619) method either singly or in groups depending on its `delta` parameter.

Calling the `DB_SEQUENCE->close()` (page 618) or `DB_SEQUENCE->remove()` (page 629) methods discards this handle.

The `db_sequence_create()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

- **seq**
  - The `seq` parameter references the memory into which the returned structure pointer is stored.

- **db**
  - The `db` parameter is an open database handle which holds the persistent data for the sequence. The database may be of any type, but must not have been configured to support duplicate data items.

- **flags**
  - The `flags` parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

### Errors

The `db_sequence_create` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  - An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

### Class

`DB_SEQUENCE`
See Also

Sequences and Related Methods (page 615)
DB_SEQUENCE->close()

```
#include <db.h>

int
DB_SEQUENCE->close(DB_SEQUENCE *seq, u_int32_t flags);
```

The DB_SEQUENCE->close() method closes the sequence handle. Any unused cached values are lost.

The DB_SEQUENCE handle may not be accessed again after DB_SEQUENCE->close() is called, regardless of its return.

The DB_SEQUENCE->close() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**flags**

The flags parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

**Errors**

The DB_SEQUENCE->close() method method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB_SEQUENCE

**See Also**

Sequences and Related Methods (page 615)
The DB_SEQUENCE->get() method returns the next available element in the sequence and changes the sequence value by \( \text{delta} \). The value of \( \text{delta} \) must be greater than zero. If there are enough cached values in the sequence handle then they will be returned. Otherwise the next value will be fetched from the database and incremented (decremented) by enough to cover the \( \text{delta} \) and the next batch of cached values.

For maximum concurrency a non-zero cache size should be specified prior to opening the sequence handle and DB_TXN_NOSYNC should be specified for each DB_SEQUENCE->get() method call.

By default, sequence ranges do not wrap; to cause the sequence to wrap around the beginning or end of its range, specify the DB_SEQ_WRAP flag to the DB_SEQUENCE->set_flags() (page 632) method.

The DB_SEQUENCE->get() method will return EINVAL if the record in the database is not a valid sequence record, or the sequence has reached the beginning or end of its range and is not configured to wrap.

**Parameters**

**txnid**

If the operation is part of an application-specified transaction, the \( \text{txnid} \) parameter is a transaction handle returned from DB_ENV->txn_begin() (page 648); if the operation is part of a Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store group, the \( \text{txnid} \) parameter is a handle returned from DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin() (page 640); otherwise NULL. If no transaction handle is specified, but the operation occurs in a transactional database, the operation will be implicitly transaction protected. No \( \text{txnid} \) handle may be specified if the sequence handle was opened with a non-zero cache size.

If the underlying database handle was opened in a transaction, calling DB_SEQUENCE->get() may result in changes to the sequence object; these changes will be automatically committed in a transaction internal to the Berkeley DB library. If the thread of control calling DB_SEQUENCE->get() has an active transaction, which holds locks on the same database as the one in which the sequence object is stored, it is possible for a thread of control calling DB_SEQUENCE->get() to self-deadlock because the active transaction's locks conflict with the internal transaction's locks. For this reason, it is often preferable for sequence objects to be stored in their own database.

**delta**

Specifies the amount to increment or decrement the sequence.
retp

retp points to the memory to hold the return value from the sequence.

flags

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

- DB_TXN_NOSYNC

  If the operation is implicitly transaction protected (the txnid argument is NULL but the operation occurs to a transactional database), do not synchronously flush the log when the transaction commits.

Class

DB_SEQUENCE

See Also

Sequences and Related Methods (page 615)
DB_SEQUENCE->get_cachesize()

```
#include <db.h>

int DB_SEQUENCE->get_cachesize(DB_SEQUENCE *seq, u_int32_t *sizep);
```

The DB_SEQUENCE->get_cachesize() method returns the current cache size.

The DB_SEQUENCE->get_cachesize() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_SEQUENCE->get_cachesize() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**sizep**

The DB_SEQUENCE->get_cachesize() method returns the current cache size in sizep.

**Class**

DB_SEQUENCE

**See Also**

Sequences and Related Methods (page 615)
The `DB_SEQUENCE->get_dbp()` method returns the database handle used by the sequence. The `DB_SEQUENCE->get_dbp()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application. The `DB_SEQUENCE->get_dbp()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**dbp**

The `dbp` parameter references memory into which a pointer to the database handle is copied.

### Class

`DB_SEQUENCE`

### See Also

"Sequences and Related Methods (page 615)"
DB_SEQUENCE->get_flags()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_SEQUENCE->get_flags(DB_SEQUENCE *seq, u_int32_t *flagsp);
```

The DB_SEQUENCE->get_flags() method returns the current flags.

The DB_SEQUENCE->get_flags() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_SEQUENCE->get_flags() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

*flagsp*

The DB_SEQUENCE->get_flags() method returns the current flags in *flagsp*.

**Class**

DB_SEQUENCE

**See Also**

Sequences and Related Methods (page 615)
DB_SEQUENCE->get_key()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_SEQUENCE->get_key(DB_SEQUENCE *seq, DBT *key);
```

The DB_SEQUENCE->get_key() method returns the key for the sequence.

The DB_SEQUENCE->get_key() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_SEQUENCE->get_key() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **key**

  The key parameter references memory into which a pointer to the key data is copied.

**Class**

DB_SEQUENCE

**See Also**

Sequences and Related Methods (page 615)
DB_SEQUENCE->get_range()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_SEQUENCE->get_range(DB_SEQUENCE *seq, db_seq_t *minp, db_seq_t *maxp);
```

The `DB_SEQUENCE->get_range()` method returns the range of values in the sequence.

The `DB_SEQUENCE->get_range()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_SEQUENCE->get_range()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`minp`

The `DB_SEQUENCE->get_range()` method returns the minimum value in `minp`.

`maxp`

The `DB_SEQUENCE->get_range()` method returns the maximum value in `maxp`.

**Class**

`DB_SEQUENCE`

**See Also**

Sequences and Related Methods (page 615)
DB_SEQUENCE->initial_value()

```
#include <db.h>

int DB_SEQUENCE->initial_value(DB_SEQUENCE *seq, db_seq_t value);
```

Set the initial value for a sequence. This call is only effective when the sequence is being created.

The DB_SEQUENCE->initial_value() method may not be called after the DB_SEQUENCE->open() (page 627) method is called.

The DB_SEQUENCE->initial_value() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **value**
  
The initial value to set.

**Errors**

The DB_SEQUENCE->initial_value() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  
  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

- **DB_SEQUENCE**

**See Also**

- Sequences and Related Methods (page 615)
The `DB_SEQUENCE->open()` method opens the sequence represented by the `key`. The key must be compatible with the underlying database specified in the corresponding call to `db_sequence_create (page 616)`.

The `DB_SEQUENCE->open()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**key**

The `key` specifies which record in the database stores the persistent sequence data.

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

- **DB_CREATE**
  
  Create the sequence. If the sequence does not already exist and the `DB_CREATE` flag is not specified, the `DB_SEQUENCE->open()` method will fail.

- **DB_EXCL**
  
  Return an error if the sequence already exists. This flag is only meaningful when specified with the `DB_CREATE` flag.

- **DB_THREAD**
  
  Cause the `DB_SEQUENCE` handle returned by `DB_SEQUENCE->open()` to be free-threaded; that is, usable by multiple threads within a single address space. Note that if multiple threads create multiple sequences using the same database handle that handle must have been opened specifying this flag.

  Be aware that enabling this flag will serialize calls to DB when using the handle across threads. If concurrent scaling is important to your application we recommend opening separate handles for each thread (and not specifying this flag), rather than sharing handles between threads.

**txnid**

If the operation is part of an application-specified transaction, the `txnid` parameter is a transaction handle returned from `DB_ENV->txn_begin()` (page 648); if the operation is part
of a Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store group, the `txnid` parameter is a handle returned from `DB_ENV->csgroup_begin()` (page 640); otherwise NULL. If no transaction handle is specified, but the operation occurs in a transactional database, the operation will be implicitly transaction protected. Transactionally protected operations on a `DB_SEQUENCE` handle require the `DB_SEQUENCE` handle itself be transactionally protected during its open if the open creates the sequence.

**Class**

`DB_SEQUENCE`

**See Also**

`Sequences and Related Methods (page 615)`
**DB_SEQUENCE->remove()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_SEQUENCE->remove(DB_SEQUENCE *seq, DB_TXN *txnid, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB_SEQUENCE->remove()` method removes the sequence from the database. This method should not be called if there are other open handles on this sequence.

The `DB_SEQUENCE` handle may not be accessed again after `DB_SEQUENCE->remove()` is called, regardless of its return.

The `DB_SEQUENCE->remove()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **txnid**

If the operation is part of an application-specified transaction, the `txnid` parameter is a transaction handle returned from `DB_ENV->txn_begin()` (page 648); if the operation is part of a Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store group, the `txnid` parameter is a handle returned from `DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin()` (page 640); otherwise NULL. If no transaction handle is specified, but the operation occurs in a transactional database, the operation will be implicitly transaction protected.

- **flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

  - `DB_TXN_NOSYNC`

    If the operation is implicitly transaction protected (the `txnid` argument is NULL but the operation occurs to a transactional database), do not synchronously flush the log when the transaction commits.

**Errors**

The `DB_SEQUENCE->remove()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**

  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_SEQUENCE`
See Also

Sequences and Related Methods (page 615)
DB_SEQUENCE->set_cachesize()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_SEQUENCE->set_cachesize(DB_SEQUENCE *seq, u_int32_t size);
```

Configure the number of elements cached by a sequence handle.

The DB_SEQUENCE->set_cachesize() method may not be called after the DB_SEQUENCE->open() method is called.

The DB_SEQUENCE->set_cachesize() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **size**
  - The number of elements in the cache.

**Errors**

The DB_SEQUENCE->set_cachesize() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  - An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB_SEQUENCE

**See Also**

Sequences and Related Methods (page 615)
The DB_SEQUENCE Handle

DB_SEQUENCE->set_flags()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_SEQUENCE->set_flags(DB_SEQUENCE *seq, u_int32_t flags);
```

Configure a sequence. The flags are only effective when creating a sequence. Calling DB_SEQUENCE->set_flags() is additive; there is no way to clear flags.

The DB_SEQUENCE->set_flags() method may not be called after the DB_SEQUENCE->open() (page 627) method is called.

The DB_SEQUENCE->set_flags() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**flags**

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

- **DB_SEQ_DEC**
  Specify that the sequence should be decremented.

- **DB_SEQ_INC**
  Specify that the sequence should be incremented. This is the default.

- **DB_SEQ_WRAP**
  Specify that the sequence should wrap around when it is incremented (decremented) past the specified maximum (minimum) value.

**Errors**

The DB_SEQUENCE->set_flags() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB_SEQUENCE

**See Also**

Sequences and Related Methods (page 615)
DB_SEQUENCE->set_range()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_SEQUENCE->set_range(DB_SEQUENCE *seq, db_seq_t min, db_seq_t max);
```

Configure a sequence range. This call is only effective when the sequence is being created. The range is limited to a signed 64 bit integer.

The DB_SEQUENCE->set_range() method may not be called after the DB_SEQUENCE->open() (page 627) method is called.

The DB_SEQUENCE->set_range() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- `min`
  Specifies the minimum value for the sequence.

- `max`
  Specifies the maximum value for the sequence.

**Errors**

The DB_SEQUENCE->set_range() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

- **DB_SEQUENCE**

**See Also**

Sequences and Related Methods (page 615)
The `DB_SEQUENCE->stat()` method creates a statistical structure and copies a pointer to it into user-specified memory locations. Specifically, if `spp` is non-NULL, a pointer to the statistics for the database are copied into the memory location to which it refers.

Statistical structures are stored in allocated memory. If application-specific allocation routines have been declared (see `DB_ENV->set_alloc()` (page 279) for more information), they are used to allocate the memory; otherwise, the standard C library `malloc(3)` is used. The caller is responsible for deallocating the memory. To deallocate the memory, free the memory reference; references inside the returned memory need not be individually freed.

In the presence of multiple threads or processes accessing an active sequence, the information returned by `DB_SEQUENCE->stat()` may be out-of-date.

The `DB_SEQUENCE->stat()` method cannot be transaction-protected. For this reason, it should be called in a thread of control that has no open cursors or active transactions.

The `DB_SEQUENCE->stat()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

The statistics are stored in a structure of type `DB_SEQUENCE_STAT`. The following fields will be filled in:

- `u_int32_t st_cache_size;`
  The number of values that will be cached in this handle.

- `db_seq_t st_current;`
  The current value of the sequence in the database.

- `u_int32_t st_flags;`
  The flags value for the sequence.

- `db_seq_t st_last_value;`
  The last cached value of the sequence.

- `db_seq_t st_max;`
  The maximum permitted value of the sequence.

- `db_seq_t st_min;`
  The minimum permitted value of the sequence.
• `uintmax_t st_nowait;`
  The number of times that a thread of control was able to obtain handle mutex without waiting.

• `db_seq_t st_value;`
  The current cached value of the sequence.

• `uintmax_t st_wait;`
  The number of times a thread of control was forced to wait on the handle mutex.

**Parameters**

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

• `DB_STAT_ALL`
  Display all available information.

• `DB_STAT_CLEAR`
  Reset statistics after printing their values.

**Class**

`DB_SEQUENCE`

**See Also**

*Sequences and Related Methods (page 615)*
The `DB_SEQUENCE->stat_print()` method prints diagnostic information to the output channel described by the `DB_ENV->set_msgfile()` (page 326) method.

The `DB_SEQUENCE->stat_print()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`flags`

The `flags` parameter must be set by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

- `DB_STAT_ALL`
  
  Display all available information.

- `DB_STAT_CLEAR`
  
  Reset statistics after printing their values.

**Class**

`DB_SEQUENCE`

**See Also**

`Sequences and Related Methods (page 615)`
Chapter 12. The DB_TXN Handle

```
#include <db.h>

typedef struct __db_txn DB_TXN;
```

The DB_TXN object is the handle for a transaction. Methods of the DB_TXN handle are used to configure, abort and commit the transaction. DB_TXN handles are provided to DB methods in order to transactionally protect those database operations.

DB_TXN handles are not free-threaded; transactions handles may be used by multiple threads, but only serially, that is, the application must serialize access to the DB_TXN handle. Once the DB_TXN->abort() (page 659) or DB_TXN->commit() (page 660) methods are called, the handle may not be accessed again, regardless of the method's return. In addition, parent transactions may not issue any Berkeley DB operations while they have active child transactions (child transactions that have not yet been committed or aborted) except for DB_ENV->txn_begin() (page 648), DB_TXN->abort() (page 659) and DB_TXN->commit() (page 660).
## Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;txn_recover()</td>
<td>Distributed transaction recovery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;txn_checkpoint()</td>
<td>Checkpoint the transaction subsystem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;txn_stat()</td>
<td>Return transaction subsystem statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;txn_stat_print()</td>
<td>Print transaction subsystem statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_TXN-&gt;set_timeout()</td>
<td>Set transaction timeout</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Transaction Subsystem Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DB_ENV-&gt;set_timeout(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_timeout()</th>
<th>Set/get lock and transaction timeout</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;get_transactional()</td>
<td>Does the DB have transaction support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;cdsgroup_begin()</td>
<td>Get a locker ID in Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_tx_max(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_tx_max()</td>
<td>Set/get maximum number of transactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_tx_timestamp(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_tx_timestamp()</td>
<td>Set/get recovery timestamp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Transaction Operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DB_ENV-&gt;txn_begin()</th>
<th>Begin a transaction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB_TXN-&gt;abort()</td>
<td>Abort a transaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_TXN-&gt;commit()</td>
<td>Commit a transaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_TXN-&gt;discard()</td>
<td>Discard a prepared but not resolved transaction handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_TXN-&gt;id()</td>
<td>Return a transaction's ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_TXN-&gt;prepare()</td>
<td>Prepare a transaction for commit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_TXN-&gt;set_name(), DB_TXN-&gt;get_name()</td>
<td>Associate a string with a transaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_TXN-&gt;set_priority(), DB_TXN-&gt;get_priority()</td>
<td>Set/get transaction's priority</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DB->get_transactional()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->get_transactional(DB *db);
```

The DB->get_transactional() method returns non-zero if the DB handle has been opened in a transactional mode, otherwise it returns 0.

The DB->get_transactional() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

**Class**

DB

**See Also**

Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)
**DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin()**

```
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin(DB_ENV *dbenv, DB_TXN **tid);
```

The `DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin()` method allocates a locker ID in an environment configured for Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store applications. It copies a pointer to a `DB_TXN` that uniquely identifies the locker ID into the memory to which `tid` refers. Calling the `DB_TXN->commit()` method will discard the allocated locker ID.

See Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store applications for more information about when this is required.

This method may not be called on a sliced database.

The `DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->cdsgroup_begin()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If this method is called on a sliced database; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**ENOMEM**

The maximum number of lockers has been reached.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_TXN`

**See Also**

`Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)`
The DB_ENV->get_tx_max() method returns the maximum number of active transactions currently configured for the environment. You can manage this value using the DB_ENV->set_tx_max() method.

The DB_ENV->get_tx_max() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->get_tx_max() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **tx_maxp**

  The DB_ENV->get_tx_max() method returns the number of active transactions in `tx_maxp`.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_TXN

**See Also**

Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638), DB_ENV->set_tx_max() (page 643)
The DB_ENV->get_tx_timestamp() method returns the recovery timestamp. This value can be modified using the DB_ENV->set_tx_timestamp() (page 645) method.

The DB_ENV->get_tx_timestamp() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_ENV->get_tx_timestamp() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

timestamp

The DB_ENV->get_tx_timestamp() method returns the recovery timestamp in timestamp.

Class

DB_ENV, DB_TXN

See Also

Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638), DB_ENV->set_tx_timestamp() (page 645)
DB_ENV->set_tx_max()

#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->set_tx_max(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t max);

Configure the Berkeley DB database environment to support at least \texttt{max} active transactions. This value bounds the size of the memory allocated for transactions. Child transactions are counted as active until they either commit or abort.

Transactions that update multiversion databases are not freed until the last page version that the transaction created is flushed from cache. This means that applications using multiversion concurrency control may need a transaction for each page in cache, in the extreme case.

When all of the memory available in the database environment for transactions is in use, calls to DB_ENV->txn_begin() (page 648) will fail (until some active transactions complete). If DB_ENV->set_tx_max() is never called, the database environment is configured to support at least 100 active transactions.

The database environment’s number of active transactions may also be configured using the environment’s DB_CONFIG file. The syntax of the entry in that file is a single line with the string “set_tx_max”, one or more whitespace characters, and the number of transactions. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The DB_ENV->set_tx_max() method configures a database environment, not only operations performed using the specified DB_ENV handle.

The DB_ENV->set_tx_max() method may not be called after the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called. If the database environment already exists when DB_ENV->open() (page 271) is called, the information specified to DB_ENV->set_tx_max() will be ignored.

The DB_ENV->set_tx_max() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

\textbf{Parameters}

\texttt{max}

The \texttt{max} parameter configures the minimum number of simultaneously active transactions supported by Berkeley DB database environment.

\textbf{Errors}

The DB_ENV->set_tx_max() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

\textbf{EINVAL}

If the method was called after DB_ENV->open() (page 271) was called; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.
Class

DB_ENV, DB_TXN

See Also

Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)
DB_ENV->set_tx_timestamp()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->set_tx_timestamp(DB_ENV *dbenv, time_t *timestamp);
```

Recover to the time specified by `timestamp` rather than to the most current possible date.

Once a database environment has been upgraded to a new version of Berkeley DB involving a log format change (see Upgrading Berkeley DB installations), it is no longer possible to recover to a specific time before that upgrade.

The `DB_ENV->set_tx_timestamp()` method configures operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

The `DB_ENV->set_tx_timestamp()` method may not be called after the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method is called.

The `DB_ENV->set_tx_timestamp()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**timestamp**

The `timestamp` parameter references the memory location where the recovery timestamp is located.

The `timestamp` parameter should be the number of seconds since 0 hours, 0 minutes, 0 seconds, January 1, 1970, Coordinated Universal Time; that is, the Epoch.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->set_tx_timestamp()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If it is not possible to recover to the specified time using the log files currently present in the environment; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_TXN`

**See Also**

Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)
**DB_ENV->txn_recover()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->txn_recover(DB_ENV *dbenv, DB_PREPLIST preplist[],
long count, long *retp, u_int32_t flags);
```

Database environment recovery restores transactions that were prepared, but not yet resolved at the time of the system shut down or crash, to their state prior to the shut down or crash, including any locks previously held. The DB_ENV->txn_recover() method returns a list of those prepared transactions.

The DB_ENV->txn_recover() method should only be called after the environment has been recovered.

Multiple threads of control may call DB_ENV->txn_recover(), but only one thread of control may resolve each returned transaction, that is, only one thread of control may call DB_TXN->commit() (page 660) or DB_TXN->abort() (page 659) on each returned transaction. Callers of DB_ENV->txn_recover() must call DB_TXN->discard() (page 662) to discard each transaction they do not resolve.

On return from DB_ENV->txn_recover(), the preplist parameter will be filled in with a list of transactions that must be resolved by the application (committed, aborted or discarded). The preplist parameter is a structure of type DB_PREPLIST; the following DB_PREPLIST fields will be filled in:

- `DB_TXN * txn;`
  
  The transaction handle for the transaction.

- `u_int8_t gid[DB_GID_SIZE];`
  
  The global transaction ID for the transaction. The global transaction ID is the one specified when the transaction was prepared. The application is responsible for ensuring uniqueness among global transaction IDs.

The DB_ENV->txn_recover() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **preplist**
  
  The preplist parameter references memory into which the list of transactions to be resolved by the application is copied.

- **count**
  
  The count parameter specifies the number of available entries in the passed-in preplist array. The retp parameter returns the number of entries DB_ENV->txn_recover() has filled in, in the array.
**flags**

The *flags* parameter must be set to one of the following values:

- **DB_FIRST**

  Begin returning a list of prepared, but not yet resolved transactions. Specifying this flag begins a new pass over all prepared, but not yet completed transactions, regardless of whether they have already been returned in previous calls to `DB_ENV->txn_recover()`. Calls to `DB_ENV->txn_recover()` from different threads of control should not be intermixed in the same environment.

- **DB_NEXT**

  Continue returning a list of prepared, but not resolved transactions, starting where the last call to `DB_ENV->txn_recover()` left off.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_TXN`

**See Also**

*Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)*
DB_ENV->txn_begin()

#include <db.h>

int
DB_ENV->txn_begin(DB_ENV *env,
                   DB_TXN *parent, DB_TXN **tid, u_int32_t flags);

The DB_ENV->txn_begin() method creates a new transaction in the environment and copies a pointer to a DB_TXN that uniquely identifies it into the memory to which tid refers. Calling the DB_TXN->abort() (page 659), DB_TXN->commit() (page 660) or DB_TXN->discard() (page 662) methods will discard the returned handle.

Note

Transactions may only span threads if they do so serially; that is, each transaction must be active in only a single thread of control at a time. This restriction holds for parents of nested transactions as well; no two children may be concurrently active in more than one thread of control at any one time.

Note

Cursors may not span transactions; that is, each cursor must be opened and closed within a single transaction.

Note

A parent transaction may not issue any Berkeley DB operations — except for DB_ENV->txn_begin(), DB_TXN->abort() (page 659) and DB_TXN->commit() (page 660) — while it has active child transactions (child transactions that have not yet been committed or aborted).

The DB_ENV->txn_begin() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

parent

If the parent parameter is non-NULL, the new transaction will be a nested transaction, with the transaction indicated by parent as its parent. Transactions may be nested to any level. In the presence of distributed transactions and two-phase commit, only the parental transaction, that is a transaction without a parent specified, should be passed as an parameter to DB_TXN->prepare() (page 667).

flags

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:
• **DB_READ_COMMITTED**

This transaction will have degree 2 isolation. This provides for cursor stability but not repeatable reads. Data items which have been previously read by this transaction may be deleted or modified by other transactions before this transaction completes.

• **DB_READ_UNCOMMITTED**

This transaction will have degree 1 isolation. Read operations performed by the transaction may read modified but not yet committed data. Silently ignored if the **DB_READ_UNCOMMITTED** flag was not specified when the underlying database was opened.

• **DB_TXN_BULK**

Enable transactional bulk insert optimization. When this flag is set, the transaction avoids logging the contents of insertions on newly allocated database pages. In a transaction that inserts a large number of new records, the I/O savings of choosing this option can be significant.

Users of this option should be aware of several issues. When the optimization is in effect, page allocations that extend the database file are logged as usual; this allows transaction aborts to work correctly, both online and during recovery. At commit time, the database's pages are flushed to disk, eliminating the need to roll-forward the transaction during normal recovery. However, there are other recovery operations that depend on roll-forward, and care must be taken when **DB_TXN_BULK** transactions interact with them.

In particular, **DB_TXN_BULK** is incompatible with replication, and is simply ignored when replication is enabled. Also, hot backup procedures must follow a particular protocol, introduced in Berkeley DB 11gR2.5.1, which is to set the **DB_HOTBACKUP_IN_PROGRESS** (page 309) flag in the environment before starting to copy files. It is important to note that incremental hot backups can be invalidated by use of the bulk insert optimization. For more information, see the section on Hot Backup in the **Getting Started With Transaction Processing Guide** and the description of the flag **DB_HOTBACKUP_IN_PROGRESS** (page 309) in **DB_ENV->set_flags**.

The bulk insert optimization is effective only for top-level transactions. The **DB_TXN_BULK** flag is ignored when **parent** is non-null.

• **DB_TXN_NOSYNC**

Do not synchronously flush the log when this transaction commits or prepares. This means the transaction will exhibit the ACI (atomicity, consistency, and isolation) properties, but not D (durability); that is, database integrity will be maintained but it is possible that this transaction may be undone during recovery.

This behavior may be set for a Berkeley DB environment using the **DB_ENV->set_flags()** (page 308) method. Any value specified to this method overrides that setting.

• **DB_TXN_NOWAIT**
If a lock is unavailable for any Berkeley DB operation performed in the context of this transaction, cause the operation to return DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK (or DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED if the database environment has been configured using the DB_TIME_NOTGRANTED flag).

This behavior may be set for a Berkeley DB environment using the `DB_ENV->set_flags()` (page 308) method. Any value specified to this method overrides that setting.

- **DB_TXN_SNAPSHOT**

  This transaction will execute with snapshot isolation. For databases with the `DB_MULTIVERSION` flag set, data values will be read as they are when the transaction begins, without taking read locks. Silently ignored for operations on databases with `DB_MULTIVERSION` not set on the underlying database (read locks are acquired). Snapshot isolation is not supported with replication.

  The error DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK will be returned from update operations if a snapshot transaction attempts to update data which was modified after the snapshot transaction read it.

- **DB_TXN_SYNC**

  Synchronously flush the log when this transaction commits or prepares. This means the transaction will exhibit all of the ACID (atomicity, consistency, isolation, and durability) properties.

  This behavior is the default for Berkeley DB environments unless the DB_TXN_NOSYNC flag was specified to the `DB_ENV->set_flags()` (page 308) method. Any value specified to this method overrides that setting.

- **DB_TXN_WAIT**

  If a lock is unavailable for any Berkeley DB operation performed in the context of this transaction, wait for the lock.

  This behavior is the default for Berkeley DB environments unless the DB_TXN_NOWAIT flag was specified to the `DB_ENV->set_flags()` (page 308) method. Any value specified to this method overrides that setting.

- **DB_TXN_WRITE_NOSYNC**

  Write, but do not synchronously flush, the log when this transaction commits. This means the transaction will exhibit the ACI (atomicity, consistency, and isolation) properties, but not D (durability); that is, database integrity will be maintained, but if the system fails, it is possible some number of the most recently committed transactions may be undone during recovery. The number of transactions at risk is governed by how often the system flushes dirty buffers to disk and how often the log is flushed or checkpointed.

  This behavior may be set for a Berkeley DB environment using the `DB_ENV->set_flags()` (page 308) method. Any value specified to this method overrides that setting.
Errors

The `DB_ENV->txn_begin()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**ENOMEM**

The maximum number of concurrent transactions has been reached.

Class

`DB_ENV, DB_TXN`

See Also

Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)
DB_ENV->txn_checkpoint()

#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->txn_checkpoint(const DB_ENV *env,
                           u_int32_t kbyte, u_int32_t min, u_int32_t flags);

If there has been any logging activity in the database environment since the last checkpoint, the DB_ENV->txn_checkpoint() method flushes the underlying memory pool, writes a checkpoint record to the log, and then flushes the log.

The DB_ENV->txn_checkpoint() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

The DB_ENV->txn_checkpoint() method is the underlying method used by the db_checkpoint utility. See the db_checkpoint utility source code for an example of using DB_ENV->txn_checkpoint() in a IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 ( POSIX) environment.

Parameters

kbyte

If the kbyte parameter is non-zero, a checkpoint will be done if more than kbyte kilobytes of log data have been written since the last checkpoint.

min

If the min parameter is non-zero, a checkpoint will be done if more than min minutes have passed since the last checkpoint.

flags

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

• DB_FORCE

Force a checkpoint record, even if there has been no activity since the last checkpoint.

Errors

The DB_ENV->txn_checkpoint() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV, DB_TXN
See Also

Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)
The DB_ENV->txn_stat() method returns the transaction subsystem statistics.

The DB_ENV->txn_stat() method creates a statistical structure of type DB_TXN_STAT and copies a pointer to it into a user-specified memory location.

Statistical structures are stored in allocated memory. If application-specific allocation routines have been declared (see DB_ENV->set Alloc()) (page 279) for more information), they are used to allocate the memory; otherwise, the standard C library malloc(3) is used. The caller is responsible for deallocating the memory. To deallocate the memory, free the memory reference; references inside the returned memory need not be individually freed.

The following DB_TXN_STAT fields will be filled in:

- **u_int32_t st_inittxns**;
  The initial number of transactions configured.

- **DB_LSN st_last_ckpt**;
  The LSN of the last checkpoint.

- **u_int32_t st_last_txnid**;
  The last transaction ID allocated.

- **u_int32_t st_maxnactive**;
  The maximum number of active transactions at any one time.

- **u_int32_t st_maxnsnapshot**;
  The maximum number of transactions on the snapshot list at any one time.

- **u_int32_t st_maxtxns**;
  The maximum number of active transactions configured.

- **uintmax_t st_naborts**;
  The number of transactions that have aborted.

- **u_int32_t st_nactive**;
  The number of transactions that are currently active.

- **uintmax_t st_nbegins**;
  The number of transactions that have begun.
• `uintmax_t st_ncommits;`
  
The number of transactions that have committed.

• `u_int32_t st_nrestores;`
  
The number of transactions that have been restored.

• `u_int32_t st_nsnapshot;`
  
The number of transactions on the snapshot list. These are transactions which modified a database opened with `DB_MULTIVERSION`, and which have committed or aborted, but the copies of pages they created are still in the cache.

• `uintmax_t st_region_nowait;`
  
The number of times that a thread of control was able to obtain the transaction region mutex without waiting.

• `uintmax_t st_region_wait;`
  
The number of times that a thread of control was forced to wait before obtaining the transaction region mutex.

• `roff_t st_regsize;`
  
The region size, in bytes.

• `time_t st_time_ckp;`
  
The time the last completed checkpoint finished (as the number of seconds since the Epoch, returned by the IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) `time` function).

• `DB_TXN_ACTIVE *st_txnarray;`
  
A pointer to an array of `st_nactive DB_TXN_ACTIVE` structures, describing the currently active transactions. The following fields of the `DB_TXN_ACTIVE` structure will be filled in:

• `u_int8_t gid[DB_GID_SIZE];`
  
If the transaction was prepared using `DB_TXN->prepare()` (page 667), then `gid` contains the transaction's Global ID. Otherwise, `gid`'s contents are undefined.

• `DB_LSN lsn;`
  
The log sequence number of the transaction's first log record.

• `u_int32_t mvcc_ref;`
  
The number of buffer copies created by this transaction that remain in cache.

• `char name[];`
If a name was specified for the transaction, up to the first 50 bytes of that name, followed by a null termination byte.

- **u_int32_t parentid;**
  The transaction ID of the parent transaction (or 0, if no parent).

- **pid_t pid;**
  The process ID of the originator of the transaction.

- **u_int32_t priority;**
  This transaction's deadlock resolution priority.

- **DB_LSN read_Lsn;**
  The log sequence number of reads for snapshot transactions.

- **DB_TXNACTIVE_SLICE *slice_txns;**
  Either NULL, or a DB_ENV->get_slice_count() (page 258) sized array. If the entry for a slice is non-zero, then that slice is participating in the transaction, and the value of the entry is the integer transaction ID of the subordinate transaction.

- **u_int32_t status;**
  Provides one of the following constants, indicating the transaction status:

  TXN_ABORTED
  TXN_COMMITTED
  TXN_NEED_ABORT
  TXN_PREPARED
  TXN_RUNNING

- **db_threadid_t tid;**
  The thread of control ID of the originator of the transaction.

- **u_int32_t txnid;**
  The transaction ID of the transaction.

- **u_int32_t xa_status;**
  Provides one of the following constants, which indicate the XA status:

  TXN_XA_ACTIVE
  TXN_XA_DEADLOCKED
  TXN_XA_IDLE
  TXN_XA_PREPARED
TXN_XA_ROLLED_BACK

The DB_ENV->txn_stat() method may not be called before the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method is called.

The DB_ENV->txn_stat() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

statp

The statp parameter references memory into which a pointer to the allocated statistics structure is copied.

flags

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

- DB_STAT_CLEAR

  Reset statistics after returning their values.

Errors

The DB_ENV->txn_stat() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV, DB_TXN

See Also

Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)
The `DB_ENV->txn_stat_print()` method displays the transaction subsystem statistical information, as described for the `DB_ENV->txn_stat()` method. The information is printed to a specified output channel (see the `DB_ENV->set_msgfile()` (page 326) method for more information), or passed to an application callback function (see the `DB_ENV->set_msgcall()` (page 324) method for more information).

The `DB_ENV->txn_stat_print()` method may not be called before the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method is called.

The `DB_ENV->txn_stat_print()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

- `DB_STAT_ALL`
  
  Display all available information.

- `DB_STAT_ALLOC`
  
  Display allocation information. To display allocation information, both `DB_STAT_ALLOC` and `DB_STAT_ALL` need to be set.

- `DB_STAT_CLEAR`
  
  Reset statistics after displaying their values.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`, `DB_TXN`

**See Also**

`Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods` (page 638)
DB_TXN->abort()

```
#include <db.h>

int
DB_TXN->abort(DB_TXN *tid);
```

The `DB_TXN->abort()` method causes an abnormal termination of the transaction. The log is played backward, and any necessary undo operations are done through the `tx_recover` function specified to `DB_ENV->set_app_dispatch()` (page 281). Before `DB_TXN->abort()` returns, any locks held by the transaction will have been released.

In the case of nested transactions, aborting a parent transaction causes all children (unresolved or not) of the parent transaction to be aborted.

All cursors opened within the transaction must be closed before the transaction is aborted. If they are not closed, they will be closed by this function. If a close operation fails, the rest of the cursors are closed, and the database environment is set to the panic state.

After `DB_TXN->abort()` has been called, regardless of its return, the `DB_TXN` handle may not be accessed again.

The `DB_TXN->abort()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_TXN`

**See Also**

*Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)*
DB_TXN->commit()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_TXN->commit(DB_TXN *tid, u_int32_t flags);
```

The DB_TXN->commit() method ends the transaction.

In the case of nested transactions, if the transaction is a parent transaction, committing the parent transaction causes all unresolved children of the parent to be committed. In the case of nested transactions, if the transaction is a child transaction, its locks are not released, but are acquired by its parent. Although the commit of the child transaction will succeed, the actual resolution of the child transaction is postponed until the parent transaction is committed or aborted; that is, if its parent transaction commits, it will be committed; and if its parent transaction aborts, it will be aborted.

All cursors opened within the transaction must be closed before the transaction is committed. If they are not closed, they will be closed by this function. When the close operation for a cursor fails, the method returns a non-zero error value for the first instance of such an error, closes the rest of the cursors, and then aborts the transaction.

After DB_TXN->commit() has been called, regardless of its return, the DB_TXN handle may not be accessed again. If DB_TXN->commit() encounters an error, the transaction and all child transactions of the transaction are aborted.

The DB_TXN->commit() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success. The errors values that this method returns include the error values of the DBcursor->close() method and the following:

**DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**

A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.

**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**

A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.

You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See DB->set_lk_exclusive() (page 126) for more information.

**DB_REP_LEASE_EXPIRED**

The operation failed because the site's replication master lease has expired.

**EINVAL**

If the cursor is already closed; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.
Parameters

flags

The flags parameter must be set to 0 or one of the following values:

• DB_TXN_NOSYNC

Do not synchronously flush the log. This means the transaction will exhibit the ACI (atomicity, consistency, and isolation) properties, but not D (durability); that is, database integrity will be maintained, but it is possible that this transaction may be undone during recovery.

This behavior may be set for a Berkeley DB environment using the DB_ENV->set_flags() (page 308) method or for a single transaction using the DB_ENV->txn_begin() (page 648) method. Any value specified to this method overrides both of those settings.

• DB_TXN_SYNC

Synchronously flush the log. This means the transaction will exhibit all of the ACID (atomicity, consistency, isolation, and durability) properties.

This behavior is the default for Berkeley DB environments unless the DB_TXN_NOSYNC flag was specified to the DB_ENV->set_flags() (page 308) method. This behavior may also be set for a single transaction using the DB_ENV->txn_begin() (page 648) method. Any value specified to this method overrides both of those settings.

• DB_TXN_WRITE_NOSYNC

Write but do not synchronously flush the log on transaction commit. This means that transactions exhibit the ACI (atomicity, consistency, and isolation) properties, but not D (durability); that is, database integrity will be maintained, but if the system fails, it is possible some number of the most recently committed transactions may be undone during recovery. The number of transactions at risk is governed by how often the system flushes dirty buffers to disk and how often the log is checkpointed.

This form of commit protects you against application crashes, but not against OS crashes. This method offers less room for the possibility of data loss than does DB_TXN_NOSYNC.

This behavior may be set for a Berkeley DB environment using the DB_ENV->set_flags() (page 308) method or for a single transaction using the DB_ENV->txn_begin() (page 648) method. Any value specified to this method overrides both of those settings.

Class

DB_ENV, DB_TXN

See Also

Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)
# DB_TXN->discard()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_TXN->discard(DB_TXN *tid, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB_TXN->discard()` method frees up all the per-process resources associated with the specified `DB_TXN` handle, neither committing nor aborting the transaction. This call may be used only after calls to `DB_ENV->txn_recover()` (page 646) when there are multiple global transaction managers recovering transactions in a single Berkeley DB environment. Any transactions returned by `DB_ENV->txn_recover()` (page 646) that are not handled by the current global transaction manager should be discarded using `DB_TXN->discard()`.

All open cursors in the transaction are closed and the first cursor close error, if any, is returned.

The `DB_TXN->discard()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success. The errors values that this method returns include the error values of `DBCursor->close()` and the following:

**DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**

A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.

**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**

A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.

You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See `DB->set_lk_exclusive()` (page 126) for more information.

**EINVAL**

If the cursor is already closed; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

After `DB_TXN->discard()` has been called, regardless of its return, the `DB_TXN` handle may not be accessed again.

## Parameters

**flags**

The `flags` parameter is currently unused, and must be set to 0.

## Errors

The `DB_TXN->discard()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:
**EINVAL**

If the transaction handle does not refer to a transaction that was recovered into a prepared but not yet completed state; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_TXN

**See Also**

Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)
The DB_TXN->get_name() method returns the string associated with the transaction.

The DB_TXN->get_name() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_TXN->get_name() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

*namep*

The DB_TXN->get_name() method returns a reference to the string associated with the transaction in *namep*.

**Class**

DB_ENV, DB_TXN

**See Also**

Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)
The DB_TXN->get_priority() method gets the priority value of the specified transaction. The DB_TXN->get_priority() method may be called at any time during the life of the transaction. The DB_TXN->get_priority() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **priority**
  
  Upon return, the **priority** parameter will point to a value between 0 and $2^{32}-1$.

**Errors**

The DB_TXN->get_priority() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  
  An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

- DB_ENV, DB_TXN

**See Also**

- Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)
The `DB_TXN->id()` method returns the unique transaction id associated with the specified transaction. Locking calls made on behalf of this transaction should use the value returned from `DB_TXN->id()` as the locker parameter to the `DB_ENV->lock_get()` (page 374) or `DB_ENV->lock_vec()` (page 388) calls.

**Class**

`DB_ENV, DB_TXN`

**See Also**

Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)
DB_TXN->prepare()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_TXN->prepare(DB_TXN *tid, u_int8_t gid[DB_GID_SIZE]);
```

The DB_TXN->prepare() method initiates the beginning of a two-phase commit.

In a distributed transaction environment, Berkeley DB can be used as a local transaction manager. In this case, the distributed transaction manager must send `prepare` messages to each local manager. The local manager must then issue a DB_TXN->prepare() and await its successful return before responding to the distributed transaction manager. Only after the distributed transaction manager receives successful responses from all of its `prepare` messages should it issue any `commit` messages.

In the case of nested transactions, preparing the parent causes all unresolved children of the parent transaction to be committed. Child transactions should never be explicitly prepared. Their fate will be resolved along with their parent's during global recovery.

All open cursors in the transaction are closed and the first cursor close error will be returned.

The DB_TXN->prepare() method can not be used with sliced environments.

The DB_TXN->prepare() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success. The errors that this method returns include the error values of DBcursor->close() and the following:

**DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK**

A transactional database environment operation was selected to resolve a deadlock.

**DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED**

A Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store database environment configured for lock timeouts was unable to grant a lock in the allowed time.

You attempted to open a database handle that is configured for no waiting exclusive locking, but the exclusive lock could not be immediately obtained. See DB->set_lk_exclusive() (page 126) for more information.

**EINVAL**

If the cursor is already closed; or if an invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Parameters**

**gid**

The `gid` parameter specifies the global transaction ID by which this transaction will be known. This global transaction ID will be returned in calls to DB_ENV->txn_recover() (page 646) telling the application which global transactions must be resolved.
Class

DB_ENV, DB_TXN

See Also

Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)
The `DB_TXN->set_name()` method associates the specified string with the transaction. The string is returned by `DB_ENV->txn_stat()` (page 654) and displayed by `DB_ENV->txn_stat_print()` (page 658).

If the database environment has been configured for logging and the Berkeley DB library was configured with `--enable-diagnostic`, a debugging log record is written including the transaction ID and the name.

The `DB_TXN->set_name()` method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The `DB_TXN->set_name()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**name**

The `name` parameter is the string to associate with the transaction.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`, `DB_TXN`

**See Also**

`Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)`
The DB_TXN->set_priority() method sets the priority for the transaction. The deadlock detector will reject lock requests from lower priority transactions before those from higher priority transactions.

By default, all transactions are created with a priority of 100.

The DB_TXN->set_priority() method may be called at any time during the life of the transaction.

The DB_TXN->set_priority() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

**priority**

The `priority` parameter must be a value between 0 and $2^{32}-1$.

Errors

The DB_TXN->set_priority() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV, DB_TXN

See Also

Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)
DB_TXN->set_timeout()

#include <db.h>

u_int32_t
DB_TXN->set_timeout(DB_TXN *tid, db_timeout_t timeout, u_int32_t flags);

The DB_TXN->set_timeout() method sets timeout values for locks or transactions for the specified transaction.

Timeouts are checked whenever a thread of control blocks on a lock or when deadlock detection is performed. In the case of DB_SET_LOCK_TIMEOUT, the timeout is for any single lock request. In the case of DB_SET_TXN_TIMEOUT, the timeout is for the life of the transaction. As timeouts are only checked when the lock request first blocks or when deadlock detection is performed, the accuracy of the timeout depends on how often deadlock detection is performed.

Timeout values may be specified for the database environment as a whole. Also, the database environment must enable the locking subsystem before timeout values can be specified. See DB_ENV->set_timeout() (page 336) for more information.

The DB_TXN->set_timeout() method configures operations performed on the underlying transaction, not only operations performed using the specified DB_TXN handle.

The DB_TXN->set_timeout() method may be called at any time during the life of the application.

The DB_TXN->set_timeout() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

timeout

The timeout parameter is specified as an unsigned 32-bit number of microseconds, limiting the maximum timeout to roughly 71 minutes. A value of 0 disables timeouts for the transaction.

flags

The flags parameter must be set to one of the following values:

- DB_SET_LOCK_TIMEOUT
  Set the timeout value for locks in this transaction.
- DB_SET_TXN_TIMEOUT
  Set the timeout value for this transaction.

Errors

The DB_TXN->set_timeout() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:
EINVAL

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_ENV, DB_TXN

See Also

Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)
Chapter 13. External Files

External file support is designed for efficient storage of large objects. An object is considered to be large if it is more than a third of the size of a page. Without external file support, large objects must be broken up into smaller pieces, and then reassembled and/or disassembled every time the record is read or updated. Berkeley DB external file support avoids this assembly/disassembly process by storing the large object in a special directory set aside for the purpose. The data itself is not kept in the database, nor is it placed into the in-memory cache.

External files can only be stored using the data portion of a key/data pair. They are supported only for Btree, Hash, and Heap databases, and only so long as the database is not configured for duplicate records, or duplicate sorted records. In addition, the DBT that you use to access the external file data cannot be configured as a partial DBT if you want to access the data using the external file’s streaming interface (introduced below).

Note that if the environment is transactionally-protected, then all access to the external file is also transactionally protected.

External files cannot be used with in-memory-only databases.

In order to use Berkeley DB’s external file support, you must set the external file threshold to a non-zero positive value. (The default value is 0, which means that external files are not enabled). You set the external file threshold using either DB->set_ext_file_threshold() (page 678) or DB_ENV->set_ext_file_threshold() (page 691).

Once external files are enabled, there are two ways to create an external file record:

- Configure the DBT used to access the external file data (that is, the DBT used for the data portion of the record) with the DB_DBT_EXT_FILE (page 195) flag. This causes the data to be stored as an external file regardless of its size, so long as the database otherwise supports external files.

- Alternatively, creating a data item with a size greater than the external file threshold will cause that data item to be stored as an external file. Of course, for this method to work, the external file threshold must be greater than 0.

External files may be accessed in the same way as other DBT data, so long as the data itself will fit into memory. More likely, you will find it necessary to use the external file streaming API to read and write external file data. You open an external file stream using the DBC->db_stream() (page 680) method, close it with the DB_STREAM->close() (page 682) method, write to it using the the DB_STREAM->write() (page 686) method, and read it using the DB_STREAM->read() (page 683) method.
# External Files and Related Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>External File Operations</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DBC-&gt;db_stream()</td>
<td>Create an external file stream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_STREAM-&gt;close()</td>
<td>Close an external file stream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_STREAM-&gt;read()</td>
<td>Read an external file stream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_STREAM-&gt;size()</td>
<td>Returns the size of an external file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_STREAM-&gt;write()</td>
<td>Write an external file stream</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### External File Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setup/Get Methods</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_ext_file_dir(), DB-&gt;get_ext_file_dir()</td>
<td>Sets/gets the location where external file data is stored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB-&gt;set_ext_file_threshold(), DB-&gt;get_ext_file_threshold()</td>
<td>Sets/gets the size when data records are stored as external files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_ext_file_dir(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_ext_file_dir()</td>
<td>Sets/gets the location where external file data is stored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_ENV-&gt;set_ext_file_threshold(), DB_ENV-&gt;get_ext_file_threshold()</td>
<td>Sets/gets the default size for the environment when external files are used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**DB->get_ext_file_dir()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->get_ext_file_dir(DB *dbenv, const char **dirp);
```

The `DB->get_ext_file_dir()` method returns the directory location where external file data is stored. The default location can be set using `DB->set_ext_file_dir()` (page 677). Use this method only if the database was not opened in an environment. If the database was opened within an encompassing environment, use `DB_ENV->get_ext_file_dir()` (page 688) instead.

The `DB->get_ext_file_dir()` method always returns 0 to indicate success.

**Parameters**

- **dirp**
  
The `dirp` parameter references memory into which is copied the path to the external file data directory.

**Class**

- **DB_ENV**

**See Also**

- **External Files and Related Methods (page 674)**
**DB->get_ext_file_threshold()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->get_ext_file_threshold(DB *db, u_int32_t *bytes);
```

The `DB->get_ext_file_threshold()` method returns the threshold value, in bytes, beyond which data items are stored as external files. This value can be set using `DB->set_ext_file_threshold()` (page 678). A value of 0 indicates that external files are not in use for this database.

The `DB->get_ext_file_threshold()` method always returns 0 to indicate success.

**Parameters**

- **bytes**
  References memory into which is copied the external file threshold value.

**Class**

- **DB**

**See Also**

- External Files and Related Methods (page 674)
DB->set_ext_file_dir()

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB->set_ext_file_dir(DB *db, const char *dir);
```

The `DB->set_ext_file_dir()` method sets the directory where external file data is stored. Use this method if the database is not opened within an encompassing environment. If an environment is in use, use `DB_ENV->set_ext_file_dir()` (page 690) instead.

By default, if this method is not called then external file data is placed in a directory local to the current working directory.

Use `DB->get_ext_file_dir()` (page 675) to identify the current storage location used for external file data.

This method configures operations performed using the specified `DB` handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database.

This method may not be called after `DB->open()` (page 74) is called.

Unless otherwise specified, the `DB->set_ext_file_dir()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- **dir**
  
  Provides the name of the directory where external file data is to be stored. If an absolute path is not provided, then the directory identified here is relative to the current working directory.

**Errors**

The `DB->set_ext_file_dir()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

- **EINVAL**
  
  If the database was opened within a named environment; or if the method was called after `DB->open()` (page 74) was called; or if an invalid parameter was specified.

**Class**

- **DB**

**See Also**

- External Files and Related Methods (page 674)
DB->set_ext_file_threshold()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB->set_ext_file_threshold(DB *db, u_int32_t bytes, u_int32_t flags);
```

The DB->set_ext_file_threshold() method sets a size which is used to determine when a data item will be stored as an external file. Data items sized less than this threshold are stored as normal data within the database. Data items larger than this size are stored on-disk in a subdirectory set aside for the purpose.

If this threshold value is set to 0, then external files will never be used by the database.

It is illegal to set an external file threshold if any of the following flags were specified for the database: DB_DUP (page 113), and DB_DUPSORT (page 113).

It is also illegal to set an external file threshold if compression is turned on for the database. That is, if DB->set bt_compress() (page 93) has been called for the database handle.

This method configures the underlying database. The external file threshold is stored in the database at database creation time. Any external file threshold set after creating the database is ignored.

This method may not be called after DB->open() (page 74) is called.

Unless otherwise specified, the DB->set_ext_file_threshold() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

*bytes*

The `bytes` parameter identifies the threshold size, in bytes, beyond which a data item is stored as an external file.

*flags*

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0.

**Errors**

The DB->set_ext_file_threshold() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after DB->open() (page 74) was called; or if an invalid flag or parameter was specified; or if compression is turned on for the database; or if the database is configured with one or more of the following flags: DB_DUP (page 113), and DB_DUPSORT (page 113).
Class

DB

See Also

External Files and Related Methods (page 674)
DBC->db_stream()

#include <db.h>

int
DBC->db_stream(DBC *dbc, DB_STREAM **dbs, u_int32_t flags);

The DBcursor->db_stream() method points to a key/value pair where the data item is an external file. Use the flags parameter to indicate whether the stream is to be opened for reading, or for reading and writing.

Once the stream is opened, you read it using DB_STREAM->read() (page 683), and you write to it using DB_STREAM->write() (page 686).

Close this stream using DB_STREAM->close() (page 682).

If the data item is not an external file, this method returns an error.

Unless otherwise specified, the DBcursor->db_stream() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

dbs

The dbs parameter references memory into which is copied the newly opened stream.

flags

The flags parameter must be set by bitwise inclusively OR'ing together one or more of the following values:

• DB_STREAM_READ
  Indicates that the stream is to be opened for read-only access.

• DB_STREAM_WRITE
  Indicates that the stream is to be opened for read write access. The stream is sync'd to disc when the stream is closed.

• DB_STREAM_SYNC_WRITE
  Indicates that the stream is to be opened for read and write access. The stream is sync'd to disc after each write, instead of when the stream is closed.

Errors

The DBcursor->db_stream() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL

If the data item is not an external file; or if an invalid flag or parameter is specified.
Class

DBcursor

See Also

External Files and Related Methods (page 674)
**DB_STREAM->close()**

```c
#include <db.h>

int DB_STREAM->close(DB_STREAM *dbs, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB_STREAM->close()` method flushes any unwritten data to disk, frees allocated resources, and closes the underlying file which contains the external file. You open an external file stream using `DBC->db_stream()` (page 680).

Once this method is called, the stream can not be used again even if this method returns an error.

Unless otherwise specified, the `DB_STREAM->close()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0.

**Errors**

The `DB_STREAM->close()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_STREAM`

**See Also**

*External Files and Related Methods (page 674)*
DB_STREAM->read()

```c
#include <db.h>

int
DB_STREAM->read(DB_STREAM *dbs, DBT *data, db_off_t offset,
     u_int32_t size, u_int32_t flags);
```

The `DB_STREAM->read()` method reads `size` bytes from the external file, starting at `offset`, into the DBT `data`.

The stream is created using `DBC->db_stream()` (page 680).

Unless otherwise specified, the `DB_STREAM->read()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**data**

The `data` parameter is the DBT into which you want to place the data read using this method.

Note that the data DBT must be set with one of the following flags, or this method will return an error: `DB_DBT_MALLOC` (page 195), `DB_DBT_REALLOC` (page 195), `DB_DBT_USERMEM` (page 196), or `DB_DBT_APPMALLOC` (page 197).

**offset**

The `offset` parameter indicates the starting position, in bytes, from the beginning of the external file where you want the read to begin.

**size**

The `size` parameter indicates the number of bytes to read.

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0.

**Errors**

The `DB_STREAM->read()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**DB_BUFFER_SMALL**

The DBT provided to this method was not configured appropriately, and so there is not enough space allocated for the bytes you are trying to read.

**EINVAL**

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified; or if the DBT was configured with `DB_DBT_PARTIAL` (page 196).
Class

DB_STREAM

See Also

External Files and Related Methods (page 674)
DB_STREAM->size()

#include <db.h>

int DB_STREAM->size(DB_STREAM *dbs, db_off_t *size, u_int32_t flags);

The DB_STREAM->size() method returns the size of the external file in bytes.

Unless otherwise specified, the DB_STREAM->size() method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

size

The size parameter references memory into which the size of the external file is copied.

flags

The flags parameter must be set to 0.

Errors

The DB_STREAM->size() method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

EINVAL

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified.

Class

DB_STREAM

See Also

External Files and Related Methods (page 674)
The **DB_STREAM->write()** method writes data to an existing external file object in the database. This method writes data contained in the DBT `data` to the external file stream. Data is written into the stream starting at the position indicated by `offset`. The amount of data written is determined by the size field in the DBT.

If this method writes data in the middle of the external file, it will overwrite existing data, instead of shifting it. If this method writes data to the end of the external file, the data is appended to the existing external file. You can determine how large an external file is using `DB_STREAM->size()` (page 685).

To open a stream, use `DBC->db_stream()` (page 680).

Unless otherwise specified, the **DB_STREAM->write()** method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**data**

The `data` parameter is the DBT containing the data to be written to the external file. The amount of data to be written is determined by the DBT's size field.

**offset**

The `offset` parameter identifies the position in the external file where the write operation will begin.

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0 or the following value:

- **DB_STREAM_SYNC_WRITE**

  A sync to disk operation is performed on the stream at the end of the write operation. By default, the sync is performed only when the stream is closed using `DB_STREAM->close()` (page 682). Note that this flag can also be specified when the stream is created using `DBC->db_stream()` (page 680), in which case the sync behavior becomes the default behavior for this stream instance.

### Errors

The **DB_STREAM->write()** method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:
EINVAL

An invalid flag value or parameter was specified; or if the stream is read-only; or if the input DBT was configured with DB_DBT_PARTIAL (page 196).

Class

DB_STREAM

See Also

External Files and Related Methods (page 674)
DB_ENV->get_ext_file_dir()

```
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_ext_file_dir(DB_ENV *dbenv, const char **dirp);
```

The DB_ENV->get_ext_file_dir() method returns the directory location where external file data is stored. The default location can be set using DB_ENV->set_ext_file_dir() (page 690). Use this method only if the database was opened in an environment. If the database was not opened within an encompassing environment, use DB->get_ext_file_dir() (page 675) instead.

The DB_ENV->get_ext_file_dir() method always returns 0 to indicate success.

**Parameters**

*dirp*

The *dirp* parameter references memory into which is copied the path to the external file data directory. If DB_ENV->set_ext_file_dir() (page 690) has not been called prior to calling this method, or if external files are not supported by this environment, then this parameter is set to NULL.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

External Files and Related Methods (page 674)
DB_ENV->get_ext_file_threshold()

```
#include <db.h>

int DB_ENV->get_ext_file_threshold(DB_ENV *dbenv, u_int32_t *bytes);
```

The DB_ENV->get_ext_file_threshold() method returns the threshold value, in bytes, beyond which data items are stored as external files. This value can be set using DB_ENV->set_ext_file_threshold() (page 691). A value of 0 indicates that external files are not in use by default in this environment, unless DB->set_ext_file_threshold() (page 678) is called to set an external file threshold for a specific database.

The DB_ENV->get_ext_file_threshold() method always returns 0 to indicate success.

**Parameters**

*bytes*

References memory into which is copied the external file threshold value.

**Class**

DB_ENV

**See Also**

External Files and Related Methods (page 674)
The `DB_ENV->set_ext_file_dir()` method sets the directory where external file data is stored. Use this method when the database is opened within an encompassing environment. If an environment is not in use, use `DB->set_ext_file_dir()` (page 677) instead.

By default, if this method is not called then external file data is placed in a subdirectory within the DB's environment.

Once this method has been used, you can call `DB_ENV->get_ext_file_dir()` (page 688) to identify the current storage location used for external file data.

This method configures operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

This method may not be called after `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) is called.

Unless otherwise specified, the `DB_ENV->set_ext_file_dir()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`dir`

Provides the name of the directory where external file data is to be stored. If an absolute path is not provided, then the directory identified here is relative to the environment's home directory.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->set_ext_file_dir()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If the method was called after `DB->open()` (page 74) was called; or if an invalid parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`

**See Also**

`External Files and Related Methods (page 674)`
The `DB_ENV->set_ext_file_threshold()` method sets a default size for the environment which is used to determine when a data item will be stored as an external file. Data items sized less than this threshold are stored as normal data within the database. Data items larger than this size are stored on-disk in a subdirectory set aside for the purpose.

If this threshold value is set to 0, then external file support is turned off by default for databases created in the environment. If this method is never called, then the default external file threshold is 0.

This method only sets the default external file threshold for the environment. The external file threshold can be set for individual databases created within the environment using `DB_ENV->set_ext_file_threshold()` (page 678).

This method configures operations performed using the specified `DB_ENV` handle, not all operations performed on the underlying database environment.

You may call this method at any time after the `DB_ENV` handle has been created.

Unless otherwise specified, the `DB_ENV->set_ext_file_threshold()` method returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**bytes**

The `bytes` parameter identifies the threshold size, in bytes, beyond which a data item is stored as an external file.

**flags**

The `flags` parameter must be set to 0.

**Errors**

The `DB_ENV->set_ext_file_threshold()` method may fail and return one of the following non-zero errors:

**EINVAL**

If an invalid flag or parameter was specified.

**Class**

`DB_ENV`
See Also

External Files and Related Methods (page 674)
Appendix A. Berkeley DB Command Line Utilities

The following describes the command line utilities that are available for Berkeley DB.
# Utilities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Utility</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>db_archive</td>
<td>Archival utility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_checkpoint</td>
<td>Transaction checkpoint utility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_convert</td>
<td>Database convert utility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_deadlock</td>
<td>Deadlock detection utility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_dump</td>
<td>Database dump utility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_hotbackup</td>
<td>Hot backup utility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_load</td>
<td>Database load utility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_log_verify</td>
<td>Log verification utility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_printlog</td>
<td>Transaction log display utility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_recover</td>
<td>Recovery utility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_replicate</td>
<td>Replication utility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_sql_codegen</td>
<td>SQL schema to Berkeley DB code in C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dbsql</td>
<td>Command line interface to libdb_sql</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_stat</td>
<td>Statistics utility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_tuner</td>
<td>Suggest a page size for optimal operation in a btree database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_upgrade</td>
<td>Database upgrade utility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>db_verify</td>
<td>Verification utility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sqlite3</td>
<td>Command line tool for wrapper library libsqlite3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
db_archive

db_archive [-adlsVv] [-h home] [-P password]

The db_archive utility writes the pathnames of log files that are no longer in use (for example, no longer involved in active transactions), to the standard output, one pathname per line. These log files should be written to backup media to provide for recovery in the case of catastrophic failure (which also requires a snapshot of the database files), but they may then be deleted from the system to reclaim disk space.

Note

If the application(s) that use the environment make use of any of the following methods:

DB_ENV->add_data_dir() (page 216)
DB_ENV->set_data_dir() (page 288)
DB_ENV->set_lg_dir() (page 421)
DB_ENV->set_region_dir() (page 469)
	hen in order for this utility to run correctly, you need a DB_CONFIG file which sets the proper paths using the add_data_dir (page 780), or set_lg_dir (page 804), or set_region_dir (page 820) configuration parameters.

The options are as follows:

• -a

Write all pathnames as absolute pathnames, instead of relative to the database home directory.

• -d

Remove log files that are no longer needed; no filenames are written. This automatic log file removal is likely to make catastrophic recovery impossible.

• -h

Specify a home directory for the database environment; by default, the current working directory is used.

• -l

Write out the pathnames of all the database log files, whether or not they are involved in active transactions.

• -P

Specify an environment password. Although Berkeley DB utilities overwrite password strings as soon as possible, be aware there may be a window of vulnerability on systems where unprivileged users can see command-line arguments or where utilities are not able to overwrite the memory containing the command-line arguments.
• `-s`

Write the pathnames of all the database files that need to be archived in order to recover the database from catastrophic failure. If any of the database files have not been accessed during the lifetime of the current log files, `db_archive` will not include them in this output.

It is possible that some of the files to which the log refers have since been deleted from the system. In this case, `db_archive` will ignore them. When `db_recover` (page 721) is run, any files to which the log refers that are not present during recovery are assumed to have been deleted and will not be recovered.

• `-V`

Write the library version number to the standard output, and exit.

• `-v`

Run in verbose mode.

Log cursor handles (returned by the `DB_ENV->log_cursor()` (page 402) method) may have open file descriptors for log files in the database environment. Also, the Berkeley DB interfaces to the database environment logging subsystem (for example, `DB_ENV->log_put()` (page 408) and `DB_TXN->abort()` (page 659) may allocate log cursors and have open file descriptors for log files as well. On operating systems where filesystem related system calls (for example, rename and unlink on Windows/NT) can fail if a process has an open file descriptor for the affected file, attempting to move or remove the log files listed by `db_archive` may fail. All Berkeley DB internal use of log cursors operates on active log files only and furthermore, is short-lived in nature. So, an application seeing such a failure should be restructured to close any open log cursors it may have, and otherwise to retry the operation until it succeeds. (Although the latter is not likely to be necessary; it is hard to imagine a reason to move or rename a log file in which transactions are being logged or aborted.)

The `db_archive` utility uses a Berkeley DB environment (as described for the `-h` option, the environment variable `DB_HOME`, or because the utility was run in a directory containing a Berkeley DB environment). In order to avoid environment corruption when using a Berkeley DB environment, `db_archive` should always be given the chance to detach from the environment and exit gracefully. To cause `db_archive` to release all environment resources and exit cleanly, send it an interrupt signal (SIGINT).

The `DB_ENV->log_archive()` (page 399) method is the underlying method used by the `db_archive` utility. See the `db_archive` utility source code for an example of using `DB_ENV->log_archive()` in an IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) environment.

The `db_archive` utility exits 0 on success, and >0 if an error occurs.

**Environment Variables**

**DB_HOME**

If the `-h` option is not specified and the environment variable `DB_HOME` is set, it is used as the path of the database home, as described in the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method.
db_checkpoint

The `db_checkpoint` utility is a daemon process that monitors the database log, and periodically calls `DB_ENV->txn_checkpoint()` (page 652) to checkpoint it.

**Note**

This utility cannot be used to checkpoint a database environment which is replicated using the base replication API.

The options are as follows:

- `-1`
  
  Force a single checkpoint of the log (regardless of whether or not there has been activity since the last checkpoint), and then exit.

  When the `-1` flag is specified, the `db_checkpoint` utility will checkpoint the log even if unable to find an existing database environment. This functionality is useful when upgrading database environments from one version of Berkeley DB to another.

- `-h`
  
  Specify a home directory for the database environment; by default, the current working directory is used.

- `-k`
  
  Checkpoint the database at least as often as every `kbytes` of log file are written.

- `-L`
  
  Log the execution of the `db_checkpoint` utility to the specified file in the following format, where `###` is the process ID, and the date is the time the utility was started.

  ```
  db_checkpoint: ### Wed Jun 15 01:23:45 EDT 1995
  ```

  This file will be removed if the `db_checkpoint` utility exits gracefully.

- `-P`
  
  Specify an environment password. Although Berkeley DB utilities overwrite password strings as soon as possible, be aware there may be a window of vulnerability on systems where unprivileged users can see command-line arguments or where utilities are not able to overwrite the memory containing the command-line arguments.

- `-p`
  
  Checkpoint the database at least every `min` minutes if there has been any activity since the last checkpoint.
-V
Write the library version number to the standard output, and exit.

-v
Write the time of each checkpoint attempt to the standard output.

At least one of the -1, -k, and -p options must be specified.

The `db_checkpoint` utility uses a Berkeley DB environment (as described for the -h option, the environment variable DB_HOME, or because the utility was run in a directory containing a Berkeley DB environment). In order to avoid environment corruption when using a Berkeley DB environment, `db_checkpoint` should always be given the chance to detach from the environment and exit gracefully. To cause `db_checkpoint` to release all environment resources and exit cleanly, send it an interrupt signal (SIGINT).

The `db_checkpoint` utility does not attempt to create the Berkeley DB shared memory regions if they do not already exist. The application that creates the region should be started first, and once the region is created, the `db_checkpoint` utility should be started.

The `DB_ENV->txn_checkpoint()` (page 652) method is the underlying method used by the `db_checkpoint` utility. See the `db_checkpoint` utility source code for an example of using `DB_ENV->txn_checkpoint()` in a IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) environment.

The `db_checkpoint` utility exits 0 on success, and >0 if an error occurs.

**Environment Variables**

**DB_HOME**

If the -h option is not specified and the environment variable DB_HOME is set, it is used as the path of the database home, as described in the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method.
The `db_convert` utility converts one or more files and the databases they contain to a specified byte order. If the byte order is not specified, databases are converted to the native byte order of the machine.

The options are as follows:

- `-b`
  
  Convert the files and databases to the big endian order.

- `-h`
  
  Specify a home directory for the database environment; by default, the current working directory is used.

- `-l`
  
  Convert the files and databases to the little endian order.

- `-P`
  
  Specify an environment password. Although Berkeley DB utilities overwrite password strings as soon as possible, be aware there may be a window of vulnerability on systems where unprivileged users can see command-line arguments or where utilities are not able to overwrite the memory containing the command-line arguments.

- `-V`
  
  Write the library version number to the standard output, and exit.

- `-v`
  
  Run in verbose mode, displaying a message for each successful convert.

It is important to realize that Berkeley DB database conversions are done in place, and so are potentially destructive. This means that if the system crashes during the convert procedure, or if the convert procedure runs out of disk space, the databases may be left in an inconsistent and unrecoverable state.

The `db_convert` utility may be used with a Berkeley DB environment (as described for the `-h` option, the environment variable `DB_HOME`), or because the utility was run in a directory containing a Berkeley DB environment). In order to avoid environment corruption when using a Berkeley DB environment, `db_convert` should always be given the chance to detach from the environment and exit gracefully. To cause `db_convert` to release all environment resources and exit cleanly, send it an interrupt signal (SIGINT).

The `db_convert` utility exits 0 on success, and >0 if an error occurs.
Environment Variables

**DB_HOME**

If the -h option is not specified and the environment variable DB_HOME is set, it is used as the path of the database home, as described in the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method.
db_deadlock

```
db_deadlock [-Vv] 
  [-a e | m | n | o | W | w | y] [-h home] [-L file] [-t sec.usec]
```

The `db_deadlock` utility traverses the database environment lock region, and aborts a lock request each time it detects a deadlock or a lock request that has timed out. By default, in the case of a deadlock, a random lock request is chosen to be aborted.

This utility should be run as a background daemon, or the underlying Berkeley DB deadlock detection interfaces should be called in some other way, whenever there are multiple threads or processes accessing a database and at least one of them is modifying it.

The options are as follows:

- **-a**
  When a deadlock is detected, abort the locker:
  
  - **m**
    with the most locks
  - **n**
    with the fewest locks
  - **o**
    with the oldest locks
  - **W**
    with the most write locks
  - **w**
    with the fewest write locks
  - **y**
    with the youngest locks
  - **e**
    When lock or transaction timeouts have been specified, abort any lock request that has timed out. Note that this option does not perform the entire deadlock detection algorithm, but instead only checks for timeouts.

- **-h**
  Specify a home directory for the database environment; by default, the current working directory is used.
• `-L`

Log the execution of the `db_deadlock` utility to the specified file in the following format, where `###` is the process ID, and the date is the time the utility was started.

```
db_deadlock: ### Wed Jun 15 01:23:45 EDT 1995
```

This file will be removed if the `db_deadlock` utility exits gracefully.

• `-t`

Check the database environment every `sec` seconds plus `usec` microseconds to see if a process has been forced to wait for a lock; if one has, review the database environment lock structures.

• `-V`

Write the library version number to the standard output, and exit.

• `-v`

Run in verbose mode, generating messages each time the detector runs.

If the `-t` option is not specified, `db_deadlock` will run once and exit.

The `db_deadlock` utility uses a Berkeley DB environment (as described for the `-h` option, the environment variable `DB_HOME`, or because the utility was run in a directory containing a Berkeley DB environment). In order to avoid environment corruption when using a Berkeley DB environment, `db_deadlock` should always be given the chance to detach from the environment and exit gracefully. To cause `db_deadlock` to release all environment resources and exit cleanly, send it an interrupt signal (SIGINT).

The `db_deadlock` utility does not attempt to create the Berkeley DB shared memory regions if they do not already exist. The application which creates the region should be started first, and then, once the region is created, the `db_deadlock` utility should be started.

The `DB_ENV->lock_detect()` (page 372) method is the underlying method used by the `db_deadlock` utility. See the `db_deadlock` utility source code for an example of using `DB_ENV->lock_detect()` in a IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) environment.

The `db_deadlock` utility exits 0 on success, and >0 if an error occurs.

**Environment Variables**

**DB_HOME**

If the `-h` option is not specified and the environment variable `DB_HOME` is set, it is used as the path of the database home, as described in the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method.
db_dump

```
db_dump [-klnPvr] [-b ext_file_dir]
  [-d a | h | r] [-f output] [-h home] [-P password] [-s database]
  [-D bytes] [-V o | v] file

db_dump [-klnP] [-d a | h | r] [-f output] [-h home] [-V o | v]
  -m database

db_dump185 [-p] [-f output] file
```

The `db_dump` utility reads the database file `file` and writes it to the standard output using a portable flat-text format understood by the `db_load` (page 711) utility. The `file` argument must be a file produced using the Berkeley DB library functions.

The `db_dump185` utility is similar to the `db_dump` utility, except that it reads databases in the format used by Berkeley DB versions 1.85 and 1.86.

The options are as follows:

- **-b**
  Specifies the directory where external file data is stored for the database you are dumping.

- **-d**
  Dump the specified database in a format helpful for debugging the Berkeley DB library routines.
  
  - **a**
    Display all information. See also the `-D` option.
  
  - **h**
    Display only page headers.
  
  - **r**
    Do not display the free-list or pages on the free list. This mode is used by the recovery tests.

  The output format of the `-d` option is not standard and may change, without notice, between releases of the Berkeley DB library.

- **-D**
  Specifies the maximum number of bytes to dump for each key/data item found in the specified database. This option is only valid when `-da` is also specified. This option overrides the value set for the “set_data_len” parameter in your `DB_CONFIG` file, if any.

- **-f**
Write to the specified file instead of to the standard output.

- **-h**
  Specify a home directory for the database environment; by default, the current working directory is used.

- **-k**
  Dump record numbers from Queue and Recno databases as keys.

- **-l**
  List the databases stored in the file.

- **-m**
  Specify a named in-memory database to dump. In this case the file argument must be omitted.

- **-N**
  Do not acquire shared region mutexes while running. Other problems, such as potentially fatal errors in Berkeley DB, will be ignored as well. This option is intended only for debugging errors, and should not be used under any other circumstances.

- **-P**
  Specify an environment password. Although Berkeley DB utilities overwrite password strings as soon as possible, be aware there may be a window of vulnerability on systems where unprivileged users can see command-line arguments or where utilities are not able to overwrite the memory containing the command-line arguments.

- **-p**
  If characters in either the key or data items are printing characters (as defined by isprint(3)), use printing characters in file to represent them. This option permits users to use standard text editors and tools to modify the contents of databases.

  Note: different systems may have different notions about what characters are considered printing characters, and databases dumped in this manner may be less portable to external systems.

- **-R**
  Aggressively salvage data from a possibly corrupt file. The -R flag differs from the -r option in that it will return all possible data from the file at the risk of also returning already deleted or otherwise nonsensical items. Data dumped in this fashion will almost certainly have to be edited by hand or other means before the data is ready for reload into another database.
Note that this option causes the utility to verify the integrity of the database before performing the database dump. If this verification fails, the utility will exit with error return DB_VERIFY_BAD even though the database is successfully dumped. If you are dumping a database known to be corrupt, you can safely ignore a DB_VERIFY_BAD error return.

- **-r**

Salvage data from a possibly corrupt file. When used on an uncorrupted database, this option should return equivalent data to a normal dump, but most likely in a different order.

Note that this option causes the utility to verify the integrity of the database before performing the database dump. If this verification fails, the utility will exit with error return DB_VERIFY_BAD even though the database is successfully dumped. If you are dumping a database known to be corrupt, you can safely ignore a DB_VERIFY_BAD error return.

- **-s**

Specify a single database to dump. If no database is specified, all databases in the database file are dumped.

- **-v**

Verify the specified database before performing a normal dump. Unlike the -R or -r option, no data is dumped if the database is corrupted. Use this option when you are not sure about the integrity of the database.

- **-O**

Skip the database checks for btree and duplicate sort order and for hashing. See also the -O option for db_verify.

- **-V**

Perform the standard verification on the database as performed by db_verify without options.

- **-V**

Write the library version number to the standard output, and exit.

Dumping and reloading Hash databases that use user-defined hash functions will result in new databases that use the default hash function. Although using the default hash function may not be optimal for the new database, it will continue to work correctly.

Dumping and reloading Btree databases that use user-defined prefix or comparison functions will result in new databases that use the default prefix and comparison functions. In this case, it is quite likely that the database will be damaged beyond repair permitting neither record storage or retrieval.

The only available workaround for either case is to modify the sources for the db_load (page 711) utility to load the database using the correct hash, prefix, and comparison functions.
The `db_dump185` utility may not be available on your system because it is not always built when the Berkeley DB libraries and utilities are installed. If you are unable to find it, see your system administrator for further information.

The `db_dump` and `db_dump185` utility output formats are documented in the Dump Output Formats section of the Berkeley DB Reference Guide.

The `db_dump` utility may be used with a Berkeley DB environment (as described for the `-h` option, the environment variable `DB_HOME`, or because the utility was run in a directory containing a Berkeley DB environment). In order to avoid environment corruption when using a Berkeley DB environment, `db_dump` should always be given the chance to detach from the environment and exit gracefully. To cause `db_dump` to release all environment resources and exit cleanly, send it an interrupt signal (SIGINT).

Even when using a Berkeley DB database environment, the `db_dump` utility does not use any kind of database locking if it is invoked with the `-d`, `-R`, or `-r` arguments. If used with one of these arguments, the `db_dump` utility may only be safely run on databases that are not being modified by any other process; otherwise, the output may be corrupt.

The `db_dump` utility exits 0 on success, and >0 if an error occurs. Note that this utility might return `DB_VERIFY_BAD` if the `-R`, `-r` or `-v` command line options are used. This indicates a corrupt database. However, the dump may still have been successful.

The `db_dump185` utility exits 0 on success, and >0 if an error occurs.

**Environment Variables**

**DB_HOME**

If the `-h` option is not specified and the environment variable `DB_HOME` is set, it is used as the path of the database home, as described in the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method.
**db_hotbackup**

```
  db_hotbackup [-cDEguVv] [-d data_dir ...] [-h home]
    [-l log_dir] [-P password] -b backup_dir
```

The `db_hotbackup` utility creates "hot backup" or "hot failover" snapshots of Berkeley DB database environments. Hot backups can also be performed using the `DB_ENV->backup()` (page 218) or `DB_ENV->dbbackup()` (page 224) methods.

The `db_hotbackup` utility performs the following steps:

1. Sets the `DB_HOTBACKUP_IN_PROGRESS` (page 309) flag in the home database environment.
2. If the `-c` option is specified, checkpoint the source home database environment, and remove any unnecessary log files.
3. If the target directory for the backup does not exist, it is created with mode read-write-execute for the owner.
   
   If the target directory for the backup does exist and the `-u` option was specified, all log files in the target directory are removed; if the `-u` option was not specified, all files in the target directory are removed.
4. If the `-u` option was not specified, copy application-specific files found in the database environment home directory, and any directories specified using the `-d` option, into the target directory for the backup.
5. Copy all log files found in the directory specified by the `-l` option (or in the database environment home directory, if no `-l` option was specified), into the target directory for the backup.
6. Perform catastrophic recovery in the target directory for the backup.
7. Remove any unnecessary log files from the target directory for the backup.
8. Reset the `DB_HOTBACKUP_IN_PROGRESS` (page 309) flag in the environment.

The `db_hotbackup` utility does not resolve pending transactions that are in the prepared state. Applications that use `DB_TXN->prepare()` (page 667) must specify `DB_RECOVER_FATAL` when opening the environment, and run `DB_ENV->txn_recover()` (page 646) to resolve any pending transactions, when failing over to the backup.

The options are as follows:

- **-b**
  
  Specify the target directory for the backup.

- **-c**

  Before performing the backup, checkpoint the source database environment and remove any log files that are no longer required in that environment. **To avoid making catastrophic recovery impossible, log file removal must be integrated with log file archival.**
Note

This option cannot be used when backing up environments replicated using the base replication API.

- **-D**

Use the data and log directories listed in a DB_CONFIG configuration file in the source directory. This option has four effects:

- The specified data and log directories will be created relative to the target directory, with mode read-write-execute owner, if they do not already exist.

- In step #3 above, all files in any source data directories specified in the DB_CONFIG file will be copied to the target data directories.

- In step #4 above, log files will be copied from any log directory specified in the DB_CONFIG file, instead of from the default locations.

- The DB_CONFIG configuration file will be copied from the source directory to the target directory, and subsequently used for configuration if recovery is run in the target directory.

Care should be taken with the **-D** option where data and log directories are named relative to the source directory but are not subdirectories (that is, the name includes the element ".") Specifically, the constructed target directory names must be meaningful and distinct from the source directory names, otherwise running recovery in the target directory might corrupt the source data files.

It is an error to use absolute pathnames for data or log directories in this mode, as the DB_CONFIG configuration file copied into the target directory would then point at the source directories and running recovery would corrupt the source data files.

- **-d**

Specify one or more directories that contain data files to be copied to the target directory.

As all database files are copied into a single target directory, files named the same, stored in different source directories, would overwrite each other when copied to the target directory.

Please note the database environment recovery log references database files as they are named by the application program. If the application uses absolute or relative pathnames to name database files, (rather than filenames and the DB_ENV->add_data_dir() (page 216) method or the DB_CONFIG configuration file to specify filenames), running recovery in the target directory may not properly find the copies of the files or might even find the source files, potentially resulting in corruption.

- **-F**
Directly copy from the filesystem. This option can CORRUPT the backup if used while the environment is active and the operating system does not support atomic file system reads. This option is known to be safe only on UNIX systems, not Linux or Windows systems.

• -g
  Turn on debugging options. In particular this will leave the log files in the backup directory after running recovery.

• -h
  Specify the source directory for the backup. That is, the database environment home directory.

• -l
  Specify a source directory that contains log files; if none is specified, the database environment home directory will be searched for log files. If a relative path is specified, the path is evaluated relative to the home directory.

• -P
  Specify an environment password. Although Berkeley DB utilities overwrite password strings as soon as possible, be aware there may be a window of vulnerability on systems where unprivileged users can see command-line arguments or where utilities are not able to overwrite the memory containing the command-line arguments.

• -u
  Update a pre-existing hot backup snapshot by copying in new log files. If the -u option is specified, no databases will be copied into the target directory. If applications that update the environment are using the transactional bulk insert optimization, this option must be used with special care. For more information, see the section on Hot Backup in the Getting Started With Transaction Processing Guide.

• -V
  Write the library version number to the standard output, and exit.

• -v
  Run in verbose mode, listing operations as they are done.

The `db_hotbackup` utility uses a Berkeley DB environment (as described for the -h option, the environment variable DB_HOME, or because the utility was run in a directory containing a Berkeley DB environment). In order to avoid environment corruption when using a Berkeley DB environment, `db_hotbackup` should always be given the chance to detach from the environment and exit gracefully. To cause `db_hotbackup` to release all environment resources and exit cleanly, send it an interrupt signal (SIGINT).

The `db_hotbackup` utility exits 0 on success, and >0 if an error occurs.
Environment Variables

DB_HOME

If the -h option is not specified and the environment variable DB_HOME is set, it is used as the path of the database home, as described in the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method.
The `db_load` utility reads from the standard input and loads it into the database file. The database file is created if it does not already exist.

The input to `db_load` must be in the output format specified by the `db_dump` (page 703) utility or as specified by the `-T` option below.

The options are as follows:

- `-b`
  Identifies the directory where external file data is stored. If this option is not specified, then external file data is placed in a subdirectory within the DB's environment. See also the `-o` option.

- `-c`
  Specify configuration options ignoring any value they may have based on the input. The command-line format is `name=value`. See the Supported Keywords section below for a list of keywords supported by the `-c` option.

- `-f`
  Read from the specified input file instead of from the standard input.

- `-h`
  Specify a home directory for the database environment.

  If a home directory is specified, the database environment is opened using the `DB_INIT_LOCK`, `DB_INIT_LOG`, `DB_INIT_MPOOL`, `DB_INIT_TXN`, and `DB_USE_ENVIRON` flags to `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) (This means that `db_load` can be used to load data into databases while they are in use by other processes.) If the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) call fails, or if no home directory is specified, the database is still updated, but the environment is ignored; for example, no locking is done.

- `-n`
  Do not overwrite existing keys in the database when loading into an already existing database. If a key/data pair cannot be loaded into the database for this reason, a warning message is displayed on the standard error output, and the key/data pair are skipped.

- `-o`
  Identifies the external file threshold in bytes. This threshold determines when a data item will be stored as an external file. Data items sized less than this threshold are stored as
normal data within the database. Data items larger than this size are stored on-disk in a subdirectory set aside for the purpose. Use the -b command line option to identify where external file data is stored.

- -p

Specify an environment password. Although Berkeley DB utilities overwrite password strings as soon as possible, be aware there may be a window of vulnerability on systems where unprivileged users can see command-line arguments or where utilities are not able to overwrite the memory containing the command-line arguments.

- -r

Reset the database's file ID or log sequence numbers (LSNs).

All database pages in transactional environments contain references to the environment's log records. In order to copy a database into a different database environment, database page references to the old environment's log records must be reset, otherwise data corruption can occur when the database is modified in the new environment. The -r lsn option resets a database's log sequence numbers.

All databases contain an ID string used to identify the database in the database environment cache. If a database is copied, and used in the same environment as another file with the same ID string, corruption can occur. The -r fileid option resets a database's file ID to a new value.

In both cases, the physical file specified by the file argument is modified in-place.

- -T

The -T option allows non-Berkeley DB applications to easily load text files into databases.

If the database to be created is of type Btree or Hash, or the keyword keys is specified as set, the input must be paired lines of text, where the first line of the pair is the key item, and the second line of the pair is its corresponding data item. If the database to be created is of type Queue or Recno and the keyword keys is not set, the input must be lines of text, where each line is a new data item for the database.

A simple escape mechanism, where newline and backslash (\) characters are special, is applied to the text input. Newline characters are interpreted as record separators. Backslash characters in the text will be interpreted in one of two ways: If the backslash character precedes another backslash character, the pair will be interpreted as a literal backslash. If the backslash character precedes any other character, the two characters following the backslash will be interpreted as a hexadecimal specification of a single character; for example, \0a is a newline character in the ASCII character set.

For this reason, any backslash or newline characters that naturally occur in the text input must be escaped to avoid misinterpretation by db_load.

If the -T option is specified, the underlying access method type must be specified using the -t option.
• -t

Specify the underlying access method. If no -t option is specified, the database will be loaded into a database of the same type as was dumped; for example, a Hash database will be created if a Hash database was dumped.

Btree and Hash databases may be converted from one to the other. Queue and Recno databases may be converted from one to the other. If the -k option was specified on the call to db_dump (page 703) then Queue and Recno databases may be converted to Btree or Hash, with the key being the integer record number.

• -V

Write the library version number to the standard output, and exit.

The db_load utility may be used with a Berkeley DB environment (as described for the -h option, the environment variable DB_HOME, or because the utility was run in a directory containing a Berkeley DB environment). In order to avoid environment corruption when using a Berkeley DB environment, db_load should always be given the chance to detach from the environment and exit gracefully. To cause db_load to release all environment resources and exit cleanly, send it an interrupt signal (SIGINT).

The db_load utility exits 0 on success, 1 if one or more key/data pairs were not loaded into the database because the key already existed, and >1 if an error occurs.

Examples

The db_load utility can be used to load text files into databases. For example, the following command loads the standard UNIX /etc/passwd file into a database, with the login name as the key item and the entire password entry as the data item:

```plaintext
awk -F: '{print $1; print $0}' < /etc/passwd | sed 's/\|/\\/\|/g' | db_load -T -t hash passwd.db
```

Note that backslash characters naturally occurring in the text are escaped to avoid interpretation as escape characters by db_load.

Environment Variables

DB_HOME

If the -h option is not specified and the environment variable DB_HOME is set, it is used as the path of the database home, as described in the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method.

Supported Keywords

The following keywords are supported for the -c command-line option to the db_load utility. See the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method for further discussion of these keywords and what values should be specified.

The parenthetical listing specifies how the value part of the name=value pair is interpreted. Items listed as (boolean) expect value to be 1 (set) or 0 (unset). Items listed as (number) convert value to a number. Items listed as (string) use the string value without modification.
• **bt_minkey (number)**
  The minimum number of keys per page.

• **chksum (boolean)**
  Enable page checksums.

• **database (string)**
  The database to load.

• **db_lorder (number)**
  The byte order for integers in the stored database metadata. For big endian systems, the order should be 4,321 while for little endian systems is should be 1,234.

• **db_pagesize (number)**
  The size of database pages, in bytes.

• **duplicates (boolean)**
  The value of the DB_DUP flag.

• **dupsort (boolean)**
  The value of the DB_DUPSORT flag.

• **extentsize (number)**
  The size of database extents, in pages, for Queue databases configured to use extents.

• **h_ffactor (number)**
  The density within the Hash database.

• **h_nelem (number)**
  The size of the Hash database.

• **keys (boolean)**
  Specify whether keys are present for Queue or Recno databases.

• **re_len (number)**
  Specify the length for fixed-length records. This number represents different things, depending on the access method the database is using. See the DB->set_re_len() (page 141) method for details on what this number represents.

• **re_pad (string)**
  Specify the fixed-length record pad character.
• recnum (boolean)
   The value of the DB_RECNUM flag.

• renumber (boolean)
   The value of the DB_RENUMBER flag.

• subdatabase (string)
   The subdatabase to load.
The `db_log_verify` utility verifies the log files of a specific database environment. This utility verifies a specific range of log records, or changed log records of a specific database.

**Note**

If the application(s) that use the environment make use of the `DB_ENV->set_lg_dir()` method, then in order for this utility to run correctly, you need a `DB_CONFIG` file which sets the proper paths using the `set_lg_dir` configuration parameter.

The options are as follows:

- **-C**
  Specify the cache size (in megabytes) of the temporary database environment internally used during the log verification.

- **-b**
  Specify the starting log record (by lsn) to verify.

- **-c**
  Specify whether to continue the verification after an error is detected. If not specified, the verification stops when the first error is detected.

- **-D**
  Specify a database name. Only log records related to this database are verified.

- **-d**
  Specify a database file name. Only log records related this database file are verified.

- **-e**
  Specify the ending log record by lsn.

- **-h**
  Specify a home directory of the database environment whose log is to be verified.

- **-H**
  Specify a temporary home directory to use during the log verification.

- **-P**
  Specify a password to use.

- **-V**
  Specify verbose mode.

The command syntax is:

```
```
Specify a home directory for this utility to create a temporarily database environment to store runtime data during the verification.

It is an error to specify the same directory as the -h option. If this directory is not specified, all temporary databases created during the verification will be in-memory, which is not a problem if the log files to verify are not huge.

- **-N**

Do not acquire shared region mutexes while running. Other problems, such as potentially fatal errors in Berkeley DB, are ignored as well. This option is intended only for debugging errors, and should not be used under any other circumstances.

- **-P**

Specify an environment password. Although Berkeley DB utilities overwrite password strings as soon as possible, there may be a window of vulnerability on systems where unprivileged users can see command-line arguments or where utilities are not able to overwrite the memory containing the command-line arguments.

- **-s**

Specify the starting log record by time. The time range specified is not precise because the lsn of the most recent time point is used as the starting lsn.

- **-V**

Write the library version number to the standard output and exit.

- **-v**

Enable verbose mode to display verbose output during the verification process.

- **-z**

Specify the ending log record by time. The time range specified is not precise because the lsn of the most recent time point is used as the ending lsn.

To specify a range of log records, you must provide either an lsn range or a time range. You can neither specify both nor specify an lsn and a time as a range.

If the log footprint is over several megabytes, specify a home directory and a big cache size for log verification internal use. Else, the process' private memory may be exhausted before the verification completes.

The `db_log_verify` utility does not perform the locking function, even in Berkeley DB environments that are configured with a locking subsystem. All errors are written to stderr, and all normal and verbose messages are written to stdout.

The `db_log_verify` utility can be used with a Berkeley DB environment (as described for the -h option, the environment variable `DB_HOME`). To avoid environment corruption when using
a Berkeley DB environment, `db_log_verify` must be given the chance to detach from the environment and exit gracefully. For the `db_log_verify` utility to release all environment resources and exit, send an interrupt signal (SIGINT) to it.

The `db_log_verify` utility returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Environment Variables**

**DB_HOME**

If the `-h` option is not specified and the environment variable `DB_HOME` is set, it is used as the path of the database home, as described in the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method.
db_printlog


The db_printlog utility is a debugging utility that dumps Berkeley DB log files in a human-readable format.

**Note**

If the application(s) that use the environment make use of the DB_ENV->set_lg_dir() (page 421) method, then in order for this utility to run correctly, you need a DB_CONFIG file which sets the proper paths using the set_lg_dir (page 804) configuration parameter.

The options are as follows:

- **-b**
  Display log records starting at log sequence number (LSN) \texttt{start-LSN}; \texttt{start-LSN} is specified as a file number, followed by a slash (/) character, followed by an offset number, with no intervening whitespace.

- **-D**
  Specifies the maximum number of bytes to display for each key/data item found in the log. This option overrides the “set_data_len” parameter found in your DB_CONFIG file, if any.

- **-e**
  Stop displaying log records at log sequence number (LSN) \texttt{stop-LSN}; \texttt{stop-LSN} is specified as a file number, followed by a slash (/) character, followed by an offset number, with no intervening whitespace.

- **-h**
  Specify a home directory for the database environment; by default, the current working directory is used.

- **-N**
  Do not acquire shared region mutexes while running. Other problems, such as potentially fatal errors in Berkeley DB, will be ignored as well. This option is intended only for debugging errors, and should not be used under any other circumstances.

- **-P**
  Specify an environment password. Although Berkeley DB utilities overwrite password strings as soon as possible, be aware there may be a window of vulnerability on systems where unprivileged users can see command-line arguments or where utilities are not able to overwrite the memory containing the command-line arguments.
• `-r`
  Read the log files in reverse order.

• `-V`
  Write the library version number to the standard output, and exit.

For more information on the `db_printlog` output and using it to debug applications, see Reviewing Berkeley DB log files.

The `db_printlog` utility uses a Berkeley DB environment (as described for the `-h` option, the environment variable `DB_HOME`, or because the utility was run in a directory containing a Berkeley DB environment). In order to avoid environment corruption when using a Berkeley DB environment, `db_printlog` should always be given the chance to detach from the environment and exit gracefully. To cause `db_printlog` to release all environment resources and exit cleanly, send it an interrupt signal (SIGINT).

The `db_printlog` utility exits 0 on success, and >0 if an error occurs.

### Environment Variables

**DB_HOME**

If the `-h` option is not specified and the environment variable `DB_HOME` is set, it is used as the path of the database home, as described in the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method.
db_recover

The `db_recover` utility must be run after an unexpected application, Berkeley DB, or system failure to restore the database to a consistent state. All committed transactions are guaranteed to appear after `db_recover` has run, and all uncommitted transactions will be completely undone.

Note that this utility performs the same action as if the environment is opened with the `DB_RECOVER` flag. If `DB_RECOVER` is specified on environment open, then use of this utility is not necessary.

**Note**

If the application(s) that use the environment make use of any of the following methods:

- `DB_ENV->add_data_dir()` (page 216)
- `DB_ENV->set_data_dir()` (page 288)
- `DB_ENV->set_lg_dir()` (page 421)
- `DB_ENV->set_region_dir()` (page 469)

then in order for this utility to run correctly, you need a DB_CONFIG file which sets the proper paths using the `add_data_dir` (page 780), or `set_lg_dir` (page 804), or `set_region_dir` (page 820) configuration parameters.

The options are as follows:

- `-c`
  
  Perform catastrophic recovery instead of normal recovery.

- `-e`
  
  Retain the environment after running recovery. This option will rarely be used unless a DB_CONFIG file is present in the home directory. If a DB_CONFIG file is not present, then the regions will be created with default parameter values.

- `-f`
  
  Display a message on the standard output showing the percent of recovery completed.

- `-h`
  
  Specify a home directory for the database environment; by default, the current working directory is used.

- `-P`
  
  Specify an environment password. Although Berkeley DB utilities overwrite password strings as soon as possible, be aware there may be a window of vulnerability on systems where
unprivileged users can see command-line arguments or where utilities are not able to overwrite the memory containing the command-line arguments.

- **-t**

Recover to the time specified rather than to the most current possible date. The timestamp argument should be in the form `[[CC]YY]MMDDhhmm[.SS]` where each pair of letters represents the following:

- **CC**
  The first two digits of the year (the century).

- **YY**
  The second two digits of the year. If "YY" is specified, but "CC" is not, a value for "YY" between 69 and 99 results in a "CC" value of 19. Otherwise, a "CC" value of 20 is used.

- **MM**
  The month of the year, from 1 to 12.

- **DD**
  The day of the month, from 1 to 31.

- **hh**
  The hour of the day, from 0 to 23.

- **mm**
  The minute of the hour, from 0 to 59.

- **SS**
  The second of the minute, from 0 to 61.

If the "CC" and "YY" letter pairs are not specified, the values default to the current year. If the "SS" letter pair is not specified, the value defaults to 0.

- **-V**

Write the library version number to the standard output, and exit.

- **-v**

Run in verbose mode.

In the case of catastrophic recovery, an archival copy — or snapshot — of all database files must be restored along with all of the log files written since the database file snapshot was made. (If disk space is a problem, log files may be referenced by symbolic links). For further
information on creating a database snapshot, see Archival Procedures. For further information on performing recovery, see Recovery Procedures.

If the failure was not catastrophic, the files present on the system at the time of failure are sufficient to perform recovery.

If log files are missing, db_recover will identify the missing log file(s) and fail, in which case the missing log files need to be restored and recovery performed again.

The db_recover utility uses a Berkeley DB environment (as described for the -h option, the environment variable DB_HOME, or because the utility was run in a directory containing a Berkeley DB environment). In order to avoid environment corruption when using a Berkeley DB environment, db_recover should always be given the chance to detach from the environment and exit gracefully. To cause db_recover to release all environment resources and exit cleanly, send it an interrupt signal (SIGINT).

The db_recover utility exits 0 on success, and >0 if an error occurs.

**Environment Variables**

**DB_HOME**

If the -h option is not specified and the environment variable DB_HOME is set, it is used as the path of the database home, as described in the DB_ENV->open() (page 271) method.
db_replicate

```
```

The `db_replicate` utility is a daemon process that provides replication/HA services on a transactional environment. This utility enables you to upgrade an existing Transactional Data Store application to an HA application with minor modifications. For more information on the `db_replicate` utility, see the Running Replication Using the db_replicate Utility section in the Berkeley DB Programmer’s Reference Guide.

**Note**

This utility is not supported for use with the DB SQL APIs.

The options are as follows:

- **-h**
  Specify a home directory for the database environment; by default, the current working directory is used.

- **-L**
  Log the execution of the `db_replicate` utility to the specified file in the following format, where ### is the process ID, and the date is the time the utility was started.

  ```
db_replicate: ### Wed Jun 15 01:23:45 EDT 1995
  ```

  Additionally, events such as site role changes will be noted in the log file. This file will be removed if the `db_replicate` utility exits gracefully.

- **-M**
  Start the `db_replicate` utility to be the master site of the replication group. Otherwise, the site will be started as a client replica.

- **-P**
  Specify an environment password. Although Berkeley DB utilities overwrite password strings as soon as possible, be aware there may be a window of vulnerability on systems where unprivileged users can see command-line arguments or where utilities are not able to overwrite the memory containing the command-line arguments.

- **-T**
  Specify the number of replication message processing threads.

- **-t**
  Specify how often (in seconds) the utility will check for program interruption and resend the last log record.
-V
Write the library version number to the standard output, and exit.

-v
Turn on replication verbose messages. These messages will be written to the standard output and will be quite voluminous.

The `db_replicate` utility uses a Berkeley DB environment (as described for the -h option, the environment variable DB_HOME, or because the utility was run in a directory containing a Berkeley DB environment). In order to avoid environment corruption when using a Berkeley DB environment, `db_replicate` should always be given the chance to detach from the environment and exit gracefully. To cause `db_replicate` to release all environment resources and exit cleanly, send it an interrupt signal (SIGINT).

The `db_replicate` utility does not attempt to create the Berkeley DB shared memory regions if they do not already exist. The application that creates the region should be started first, and once the region is created, the `db_replicate` utility should be started. The application must use the `DB_INIT_REP` (page 272) and `DB_THREAD` (page 275) flags when creating the environment.

The `db_replicate` utility exits 0 on success, and >0 if an error occurs.

**Environment Variables**

**DB_HOME**

If the -h option is not specified and the environment variable DB_HOME is set, it is used as the path of the database home, as described in the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method.
**db_sql_codegen**

```
  db_sql_codegen [-i <ddl input file>] [-o <output C code file>
  [-h <output header file>] [-t <test output file>]
```

`db_sql_codegen` is a utility program that translates a schema description written in a SQL Data Definition Language dialect into C code that implements the schema using Berkeley DB. It is intended to provide a quick and easy means of getting started with Berkeley DB for users who are already conversant with SQL. It also introduces a convenient way to express a Berkeley DB schema in a format that is both external to the program that uses it and compatible with relational databases.

The `db_sql_codegen` command reads DDL from an input stream, and writes C code to an output stream. With no command line options, it will read from stdin and write to stdout. A more common usage mode would be to supply the DDL in a named input file (-i option). With only the -i option, `db_sql_codegen` will produce two files: a C-language source code (.c) file and a C-language header (.h) file, with names that are derived from the name of the input file. You can also control the names of these output files with the -o and -h options. The -x option causes the generated code to be transaction-aware. Finally, the -t option will produce a simple application that invokes the generated function API. This is a C-language source file that includes a main function, and serves the dual purposes of providing a simple test for the generated C code, and of being an example of how to use the generated API.

The options are as follows:

- **-i**: `<ddl input file>`
  - Names the input file containing SQL DDL.

- **-o**: `<output C code file>`
  - Names the output C-language source code file.

- **-h**: `<output header file>`
  - Names the output C-language header file.

- **-t**: `<test output file>`
  - Names the output C-language test file.

- **-x**
  - Sets the default transaction mode to TRANSACTIONAL.

The `db_sql_codegen` utility exits 0 on success, and >0 if an error occurs.

Note that the `db_sql_codegen` utility is built only when the --enable-sql_codegen option is passed as an argument when you are configuring Berkeley DB. For more information, see “Configuring Berkeley DB”

**Input Syntax**

The input file can contain the following SQL DDL statements.
• **CREATE DATABASE**

The DDL must contain a CREATE DATABASE statement. The syntax is simply

```sql
CREATE DATABASE name;
```

The name given here is used as the name of the Berkeley DB environment in which the Berkeley DB databases are created.

• **CREATE TABLE**

Each CREATE TABLE statement produces functions to create and delete a primary Berkeley DB database. Also produced are functions to perform record insertion, retrieval and deletion on this database.

CREATE TABLE establishes the field set of records that can be stored in the Berkeley DB database. Every CREATE TABLE statement must identify a primary key to be used as the lookup key in the Berkeley DB database.

Here is an example to illustrate the syntax of CREATE TABLE that is accepted by `db_sql_codegen`:

```sql
CREATE TABLE person (person_id INTEGER PRIMARY KEY,
                     name VARCHAR(64),
                     age INTEGER);
```

This results in the creation of functions to manage a database in which every record is an instance of the following C language data structure:

```c
typedef struct _person_data {
    int person_id;
    char name[PERSON_DATA_NAME_LENGTH];
    int age;
} person_data;
```

• **CREATE INDEX**

You can create secondary Berkeley DB databases to be used as indexes into a primary database. For example, to make an index on the "name" field of the "person" table mentioned above, the SQL DDL would be:

```sql
CREATE INDEX name_index ON person(name);
```

This causes `db_sql_codegen` to emit functions to manage creation and deletion of a secondary database called "name_index," which is associated with the "person" database and is set up to perform lookups on the "name" field.

**Hint Comments**

The SQL DDL input may contain comments. Two types of comments are recognized. C-style comments begin with "/*" and end with "*/". These comments may extend over multiple lines.

Single line comments begin with "--" and run to the end of the line.
If the first character of a comment is "+" then the comment is interpreted as a "hint comment." Hint comments can be used to configure Berkeley DB features that cannot be represented in SQL DDL.

Hint comments are comma-separated lists of property assignments of the form "property=value." Hint comments apply to the SQL DDL statement that immediately precedes their appearance in the input. For example:

```sql
CREATE DATABASE peopleDB; /*+ CACHESIZE = 16m */
```

This causes the generated environment creation function to set the cache size to sixteen megabytes.

In addition to the CACHESIZE example above, two other hint comment keywords are recognized: DBTYPE and MODE.

After a CREATE TABLE or CREATE INDEX statement, you may set the database type by assigning the DBTYPE property in a hint comment. Possible values for DBTYPE are BTREE and HASH.

After a CREATE DATABASE or CREATE TABLE statement, you may tell `db_sql_codegen` whether to generate transaction-aware code by assigning the MODE property in a hint comment. The possible values for MODE are TRANSACTIONAL and NONTRANSACTIONAL. By default, generated code is not transaction-aware. If MODE=TRANSACTIONAL appears on a CREATE DATABASE statement, then the default for every CREATE TABLE statement becomes TRANSACTIONAL. Individual CREATE TABLE statements may have MODE=TRANSACTIONAL or MODE=NONTRANSACTIONAL, to control whether the code generated for accessing and updating the associated Berkeley DB database is transaction aware.

**Transactions**

By default, the code generated by `db_sql_codegen` is not transaction-aware. This means that the generated API for reading and updating BDB databases operates in nontransactional mode. When transactional mode is enabled, either through the command-line option `-x` or by the inclusion of MODE-setting hint comments in the DDL source, the generated data access functions take an extra argument which is a pointer to DB_TXN. To use transactions, application code must acquire a DB_TXN from a call to DB_ENV->txn_begin, and supply a pointer to this object when invoking the `db_sql_codegen`-generated functions that require such an argument.

Transaction-aware APIs that were generated by `db_sql_codegen` can be used in nontransactional mode by passing NULL for the DB_TXN pointer arguments.

For more information about using BDB transactions, please consult the documentation for [Transaction Subsystem and Related Methods (page 638)](#).

**Type Mapping**

`db_sql_codegen` must map the schema expressed as SQL types into C language types. It implements the following mappings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SQL Type</th>
<th>C Language Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIN</td>
<td>char[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VARBIN</td>
<td>char[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Type</td>
<td>C Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAR</td>
<td>char[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VARCHAR</td>
<td>char[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VARCHAR2</td>
<td>char[]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIT</td>
<td>char</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TINYINT</td>
<td>char</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMALLINT</td>
<td>short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTEGER</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INT</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIGINT</td>
<td>long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REAL</td>
<td>float</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOUBLE</td>
<td>double</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLOAT</td>
<td>double</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DECIMAL</td>
<td>double</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUMERIC</td>
<td>double</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUMBER(p,s)</td>
<td>int, long, float, or double</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

While BIN/VARBIN and CHAR/VARCHAR are both represented as char arrays, the latter are treated as null-terminated C strings, while the former are treated as binary data.

The Oracle type NUMBER is mapped to different C types, depending on its precision and scale values. If scale is 0, then it is mapped to an integer type (long if precision is greater than 9). Otherwise it is mapped to a floating point type (float if precision is less than 7, otherwise double).

### Output

Depending on the options given on the command line, `db_sql_codegen` can produce three separate files: a .c file containing function definitions that implement the generated API; a .h file containing constants, data structures and prototypes of the generated functions; and a second .c file that contains a sample program that invokes the generated API. The latter program is usually referred to as a smoke test.

Given the following sample input in a file named "people.sql":

```sql
CREATE DATABASE peopledb;
CREATE TABLE person (person_id INTEGER PRIMARY KEY,
                      name VARCHAR(64),
                      age INTEGER);
CREATE INDEX name_index ON person(name);
```

The command

```
  db_sql_codegen -i people.sql -t test_people.c
```

Will produce files named people.h, people.c, and test_people.c.

The file people.h will contain the information needed to use the generated API. Among other things, an examination of the generated .h file will reveal:

```c
#define PERSON_DATA_NAME_LENGTH 63
```

This is just a constant for the length of the string mapped from the VARCHAR field.
typedef struct _person_data {
    int   person_id;
    char  name[PERSON_DATA_NAME_LENGTH];
    int   age;
} person_data;

This is the data structure that represents the record type that is stored in the person database. There's that constant being used.

int create_peopledb_env(DB_ENV **envpp);
int create_person_database(DB_ENV *envp, DB **dbpp);
int create_name_index_secondary(DB_ENV *envp, DB *primary_dbp, DB **secondary_dbpp);

These functions must be invoked to initialize the Berkeley DB environment. However, see the next bit:

extern DB_ENV * peopledb_envp;
extern DB *person_dbp;
extern DB *name_index_dbp;

int initialize_peopledb_environment();

For convenience, \texttt{db_sql_codegen} provides global variables for the environment and database, and a single initialization function that sets up the environment for you. You may choose to use the globals and the single initialization function, or you may declare your own DB_ENV and DB pointers, and invoke the individual create\_ functions yourself.

The word "create" in these function names might be confusing. It means "create the environment/database if it doesn't already exist; otherwise open it."

All of the functions in the generated API return Berkeley DB error codes. If the return value is non-zero, there was an error of some kind, and an explanatory message should have been printed on stderr.

int person_insert_struct(DB *dbp, person_data *personp);
int person_insert_fields(DB * dbp,
    int person_id,
    char *name,
    int age);

These are the functions that you'd use to store a record in the database. The first form takes a pointer to the data structure that represents this record. The second form takes each field as a separate argument.

If two records with the same primary key value are stored, the first one is lost.

int get_person_data(DB *dbp, int person_key, person_data *data);

This function retrieves a record from the database. It seeks the record with the supplied key, and populates the supplied structure with the contents of the record. If no matching record is found, the function returns DB\_NOTFOUND.
int delete_person_key(DB *dbp, int person_key);

This function removes the record matching the given key.

typedef void (*person_iteration_callback)(void *user_data,
                   person_data *personp);

int person_full_iteration(DB *dbp,
                          person_iteration_callback user_func,
                          void *user_data);

This function performs a complete iteration over every record in the person table.
The user must provide a callback function which is invoked once for every record found. The user's callback function must match the prototype provided in the typedef "person_iteration_callback." In the callback, the "user_data" argument is passed unchanged from the "user_data" argument given to person_full_iteration. This is provided so that the caller of person_full_iteration can communicate some context information to the callback function. The "personp" argument to the callback is a pointer to the record that was retrieved from the database. Personp points to data that is valid only for the duration of the callback invocation.

int name_index_query_iteration(DB *secondary_dbp,
                               char *name_index_key,
                               person_iteration_callback user_func,
                               void *user_data);

This function performs lookups through the secondary index database. Because duplicate keys are allowed in secondary indexes, this query might return multiple instances. This function takes as an argument a pointer to a user-written callback function, which must match the function prototype typedef mentioned above (person_iteration_callback). The callback is invoked once for each record that matches the secondary key.

Test output

The test output file is useful as an example of how to invoke the generated API. It will contain calls to the functions mentioned above, to store a single record and retrieve it by primary key and through the secondary index.

To compile the test, you would issue a command such as

```
cc -I$BDB_INSTALL/include -L$BDB_INSTALL/lib -o test_people people.c \
test_people.c -ldb-4.8
```

This will produce the executable file test_people, which can be run to exercise the generated API. The program generated from people.sql will create a database environment in a directory named "peopledb." This directory must be created before the program is run.
**dbsql**

```
dbsql [OPTIONS] FILENAME SQL
```

*dbsql* is a command line tool that provides access to the Berkeley DB SQL interface.

To build this tool, run the configure script with the `--enable-sql` option when you are building the Berkeley DB SQL interface. For more information on building this tool, see "Building for UNIX/POSIX".

FILENAME is the name of a Berkeley DB database file created with the SQL interface. A new database is created if the file does not exist. The options are as follows:

- **-init filename**
  Reads/processes named file.

- **-echo**
  Prints commands before execution.

- **-[no]header**
  Turns headers on or off.

- **-bail**
  Stops after hitting an error.

- **-interactive**
  Forces interactive I/O.

- **-batch**
  Forces batch I/O.

- **-column**
  Sets output mode to column.

- **-csv**
  Sets output mode to csv.

- **-html**
  Sets output mode to HTML.

- **-line**
  Sets output mode to line.

- **-list**
Sets output mode to list.

- `-separator 'x'`
  Sets output field separator (|).

- `-nullvalue 'text'`
  Sets text string for NULL values.

- `-version`
  Shows SQLite version.

The `dbsql` executable provides the same interface as the `sqlite3` executable that is part of SQLite. For more information on how to use `dbsql` see the SQLite Documentation page.

**Command Line Features Unique to dbsql**

This section describes pre-defined query statements that can be executed from the `dbsql` command line. These queries take the form of:

```
.stat ITEM
```

where `ITEM` is an optional parameter that indicates what statistics to print. If `ITEM` is not specified, then this command prints statistics for the Berkeley DB environment, followed by statistics for all tables and indexes within the database.

If `ITEM` is the name of a table or index, then this command prints statistics for the table or index using the `DB->stat_print()` (page 158) method.

Otherwise, `ITEM` can be one of several keywords. They are:

- `:env:`
  
  ```
dbsql> .stat :env:
  ```
  Causes this command to print statistics for the Berkeley DB environment using the `DB_ENV->stat_print()` (page 344) method.

- `:rep:`
  
  ```
dbsql> .stat :rep:
  ```
  Causes this command to print a summary of replication statistics.
**db_stat**

```
db_stat -d file [-fN] [-h home] [-P password] [-s database]
        [-X A] [-P password]
```

The **db_stat** utility displays statistics for Berkeley DB environments.

The options are as follows:

- **-a**
  
  Display allocation information.

- **-C**
  
  Display detailed information about the locking subsystem.

  - **A**
    
    Display all information.

  - **c**
    
    Display lock conflict matrix.

  - **l**
    
    Display lockers within hash chains.

  - **o**
    
    Display lock objects within hash chains.

  - **p**
    
    Display locking subsystem parameters.

- **-c**
  
  Display locking subsystem statistics, as described in the `DB_ENV->lock_stat()` (page 380) method.

- **-d**
  
  Display database statistics for the specified file, as described in the `DB->stat()` (page 150) method.

If the database contains multiple databases and the `-s` flag is not specified, the statistics are for the internal database that describes the other databases the file contains, and not for the file as a whole.

- **-E**
Display detailed information about the database environment.

- **-e**
  Display information about the database environment, including all configured subsystems of the database environment.

- **-f**
  Display only those database statistics that can be acquired without traversing the database.

- **-h**
  Specify a home directory for the database environment; by default, the current working directory is used.

- **-l**
  Display logging subsystem statistics, as described in the `DB_ENV->log_stat()` (page 414) method.

- **-L**
  Display all logging subsystem statistics.

  - **A**
    Display all information.

- **-M**
  Display detailed information about the cache.

  - **A**
    Display all information.

  - **h**
    Display buffers within hash chains.

- **-m**
  Display cache statistics, as described in the `DB_ENV->memp_stat()` (page 448) method.

- **-N**
  Do not acquire shared region mutexes while running. Other problems, such as potentially fatal errors in Berkeley DB, will be ignored as well. This option is intended only for debugging errors, and should not be used under any other circumstances.

- **-P**
Specify an environment password. Although Berkeley DB utilities overwrite password strings as soon as possible, be aware there may be a window of vulnerability on systems where unprivileged users can see command-line arguments or where utilities are not able to overwrite the memory containing the command-line arguments.

- **-R**
  Display detailed information about the replication subsystem.
  
  - **A**
    Display all information.
  
- **-r**
  Display replication statistics, as described in the `DB_ENV->rep_stat()` (page 576) method.

- **-s**
  Display statistics for the specified database contained in the file specified with the `-d` flag.

- **-t**
  Display transaction subsystem statistics, as described in the `DB_ENV->txn_stat()` (page 654) method.

- **-V**
  Write the library version number to the standard output, and exit.

- **-X**
  Display detailed information about the mutex subsystem.
  
  - **A**
    Display all information.
  
  - **X**
    Display mutex subsystem statistics, as described in the `DB_ENV->mutex_stat()` (page 518) method.

- **-Z**
  Reset the statistics after reporting them; valid only with the `-C`, `-c`, `-E`, `-e`, `-L`, `-l`, `-M`, `-m`, `-R`, `-r`, and `-t` options.

Values normally displayed in quantities of bytes are displayed as a combination of gigabytes (GB), megabytes (MB), kilobytes (KB), and bytes (B). Otherwise, values smaller than 10 million are displayed without any special notation, and values larger than 10 million are displayed as a number followed by "M".
The `db_stat` utility may be used with a Berkeley DB environment (as described for the `-h` option, the environment variable `DB_HOME`, or because the utility was run in a directory containing a Berkeley DB environment). In order to avoid environment corruption when using a Berkeley DB environment, `db_stat` should always be given the chance to detach from the environment and exit gracefully. To cause `db_stat` to release all environment resources and exit cleanly, send it an interrupt signal (SIGINT).

The `db_stat` utility exits 0 on success, and >0 if an error occurs.

For information on the statistics feature for Berkeley DB SQL interface, see Command Line Features Unique to dbsql (page 733).

**Environment Variables**

**DB_HOME**

If the `-h` option is not specified and the environment variable `DB_HOME` is set, it is used as the path of the database home, as described in the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method.
db_tuner

```
db_tuner [-c cachesize] -d file [-h home] [-s database] [-v]
```

The `db_tuner` utility analyzes the data in a btree database, and suggests a page size that is likely to deliver optimal operation.

**Note**

The `db_tuner` utility assumes that databases are compacted when analysing the data. The analysis is based on a static view of the data and the data access and update patterns are not take into account.

The options are as follows:

- **-c**
  
  Specify a value of the cachesize, otherwise, the default value will be set.

- **-d**
  
  Display database statistics for the specified file. If the database contains multiple databases and the `-s` flag is not specified, the statistics are for the internal database that describes the other databases the file contains, and not for the file as a whole.

- **-h**
  
  Specify a home directory for the database environment.

- **-s**
  
  Display page size recommendation for the specified database contained in the file specified with the `-d` flag.

- **-v**
  
  Display verbose information.
The `db_upgrade` utility upgrades the Berkeley DB version of one or more files and the databases they contain to the current release version.

The options are as follows:

- **-h**
  Specify a home directory for the database environment; by default, the current working directory is used.

- **-N**
  Do not acquire shared region mutexes while running. Other problems, such as potentially fatal errors in Berkeley DB, will be ignored as well. This option is intended only for debugging errors, and should not be used under any other circumstances.

- **-P**
  Specify an environment password. Although Berkeley DB utilities overwrite password strings as soon as possible, be aware there may be a window of vulnerability on systems where unprivileged users can see command-line arguments or where utilities are not able to overwrite the memory containing the command-line arguments.

- **-s**
  This flag is only meaningful when upgrading databases from releases before the Berkeley DB 3.1 release.

As part of the upgrade from the Berkeley DB 3.0 release to the 3.1 release, the on-disk format of duplicate data items changed. To correctly upgrade the format requires that applications specify whether duplicate data items in the database are sorted or not. Specifying the `-s` flag means that the duplicates are sorted; otherwise, they are assumed to be unsorted. Incorrectly specifying the value of this flag may lead to database corruption.

Because the `db_upgrade` utility upgrades a physical file (including all the databases it contains), it is not possible to use `db_upgrade` to upgrade files where some of the databases it includes have sorted duplicate data items, and some of the databases it includes have unsorted duplicate data items. If the file does not have more than a single database, if the databases do not support duplicate data items, or if all the databases that support duplicate data items support the same style of duplicates (either sorted or unsorted), `db_upgrade` will work correctly as long as the `-s` flag is correctly specified. Otherwise, the file cannot be upgraded using `db_upgrade`, and must be upgraded manually using the `db_dump (page 703)` and `db_load (page 711)` utilities.

- **-V**
  Write the library version number to the standard output, and exit.
-v

Run in verbose mode, displaying a message for each successful upgrade.

It is important to realize that Berkeley DB database upgrades are done in place, and so are potentially destructive. This means that if the system crashes during the upgrade procedure, or if the upgrade procedure runs out of disk space, the databases may be left in an inconsistent and unrecoverable state. See Upgrading databases for more information.

The `db_upgrade` utility may be used with a Berkeley DB environment (as described for the `-h` option, the environment variable `DB_HOME`, or because the utility was run in a directory containing a Berkeley DB environment). In order to avoid environment corruption when using a Berkeley DB environment, `db_upgrade` should always be given the chance to detach from the environment and exit gracefully. To cause `db_upgrade` to release all environment resources and exit cleanly, send it an interrupt signal (SIGINT).

The `db_upgrade` utility exits 0 on success, and >0 if an error occurs.

### Environment Variables

**DB_HOME**

If the `-h` option is not specified and the environment variable `DB_HOME` is set, it is used as the path of the database home, as described in the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method.
db_verify

```
db_verify [-mNoqV] [-b ext_file_dir] [-h home] [-P password] name ...
```

The `db_verify` utility verifies the structure of one or more files and the databases they contain. If `-m` option is specified, it verifies one or more named in-memory databases.

The options are as follows:

- `-b`
  Specify the directory where external file data is stored. By default, if using a database environment, the external file data is placed in a subdirectory within the environment, otherwise, it is placed in a directory local to the current working directory.

- `-h`
  Specify a home directory for the database environment; by default, the current working directory is used.

- `-m`
  Verify the named in-memory databases.

- `-o`
  Skip the database checks for btree and duplicate sort order and for hashing.

  If the file being verified contains databases with non-default comparison or hashing configurations, calling the `db_verify` utility without the `-o` flag will usually return failure. The `-o` flag causes `db_verify` to ignore database sort or hash ordering and allows `db_verify` to be used on these files. To fully verify these files, verify them explicitly using the `DB->verify()` (page 165) method, after configuring the correct comparison or hashing functions.

- `-N`
  Do not acquire shared region mutexes while running. Other problems, such as potentially fatal errors in Berkeley DB, will be ignored as well. This option is intended only for debugging errors, and should not be used under any other circumstances.

- `-P`
  Specify an environment password. Although Berkeley DB utilities overwrite password strings as soon as possible, be aware there may be a window of vulnerability on systems where unprivileged users can see command-line arguments or where utilities are not able to overwrite the memory containing the command-line arguments.

- `-q`
  Suppress the printing of any error descriptions, simply exit success or failure.

- `-V`
Write the library version number to the standard output, and exit.

The `db_verify` utility does not perform any locking, even in Berkeley DB environments that are configured with a locking subsystem. As such, it should only be used on files that are not being modified by another thread of control.

The `db_verify` utility may be used with a Berkeley DB environment (as described for the `-h` option, the environment variable `DB_HOME`, or because the utility was run in a directory containing a Berkeley DB environment). In order to avoid environment corruption when using a Berkeley DB environment, `db_verify` should always be given the chance to detach from the environment and exit gracefully. To cause `db_verify` to release all environment resources and exit cleanly, send it an interrupt signal (SIGINT).

The `db_verify` utility exits 0 on success, and >0 if an error occurs.

**Environment Variables**

**DB_HOME**

If the `-h` option is not specified and the environment variable `DB_HOME` is set, it is used as the path of the database home, as described in the `DB_ENV->open()` (page 271) method.
sqlite3

Sqlite3 is a command line tool that enables you to manually enter and execute SQL commands. It is identical to the dbsql executable but named so that existing scripts for SQLite can easily work with Berkeley DB. To build this tool, run the configure script with the `--enable-sql_compat` option when you are building the Berkeley DB SQL interface.

For more information on building this tool, see the "Building for UNIX/POSIX".

For more information on how to use Sqlite3 see the SQLite Documentation page.
Appendix B. Historic Interfaces

This appendix describe the usage of several historic interfaces that previous users of Berkeley DB may have made use of.
## Historic Interfaces

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Historic Interfaces</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dbm/ndbm</td>
<td>Compatibility for applications written to the historic dbm or hdbm interfaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hsearch</td>
<td>Compatibility for applications written to the historic hsearch interface</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
#dbm/ndbm

```c
#define DB_DBM_HSEARCH 1
#include <db.h>

typedef struct {
    char *dptr;
    int dsize;
} datum;

Dmb Functions

int
dbminit(char *file);

int
dbmclose();

datum
fetch(datum key);

int
store(datum key, datum content);

int
delete(datum key);

datum
firstkey(void);

datum
nextkey(datum key);

Ndbm Functions

DBM *
dbm_open(char *file, int flags, int mode);

void
dbm_close(DBM *db);

datum
dbm_fetch(DBM *db, datum key);

int
dbm_store(DBM *db, datum key, datum content, int flags);

int
dbm_delete(DBM *db, datum key);

datum
```
The dbm functions are intended to provide high-performance implementations and source code compatibility for applications written to historic interfaces. They are not recommended for any other purpose. The historic dbm database format is not supported, and databases previously built using the real dbm libraries cannot be read by the Berkeley DB functions.

To compile dbm applications, replace the application's `#include` of the dbm or ndbm include file (for example, `#include <dbm.h>` or `#include <ndbm.h>`) with the following two lines:

```c
#define DB_DBM_HSEARCH 1
#include <db.h>
```

and recompile. If the application attempts to load against a dbm library (for example, `-ldbm`), remove the library from the load line.

Key and content parameters are objects described by the `datum` typedef. A `datum` specifies a string of `dsize` bytes pointed to by `dptr`. Arbitrary binary data, as well as normal text strings, are allowed.

### Dbm Functions

Before a database can be accessed, it must be opened by dbminit. This will open and/or create the database `file.db`. If created, the database file is created read/write by owner only (as described in `chmod(2)`) and modified by the process' umask value at the time of creation (see `umask(2)`). The group ownership of created files is based on the system and directory defaults, and is not further specified by Berkeley DB.

A database may be closed, and any held resources released, by calling dbmclose.

Once open, the data stored under a key is accessed by fetch, and data is placed under a key by store. A key (and its associated contents) are deleted by delete. A linear pass through all keys in a database may be made, in an (apparently) random order, by using firstkey and nextkey. The firstkey method will return the first key in the database. The nextkey method will return the next key in the database.

The following code will traverse the database:

```c
for (key = firstkey(key);
    key.dptr != NULL; key = nextkey(key)) {
    ...
}
```
**Ndbm Functions**

Before a database can be accessed, it must be opened by dbm_open. This will open and/or create the database file `file.db`, depending on the flags parameter (see open(2)). If created, the database file is created with mode `mode` (as described in chmod(2)) and modified by the process' umask value at the time of creation (see umask(2)). The group ownership of created files is based on the system and directory defaults, and is not further specified by Berkeley DB.

Once open, the data stored under a key is accessed by dbm_fetch, and data is placed under a key by dbm_store. The `flags` field can be either `DBM_INSERT` or `DBM_REPLACE`. `DBM_INSERT` will only insert new entries into the database, and will not change an existing entry with the same key. `DBM_REPLACE` will replace an existing entry if it has the same key. A key (and its associated contents) are deleted by dbm_delete. A linear pass through all keys in a database may be made, in an (apparently) random order, by using dbm_firstkey and dbm_nextkey. The dbm_firstkey method will return the first key in the database. The dbm_nextkey method will return the next key in the database.

The following code will traverse the database:

```c
for (key = dbm_firstkey(db);
    key.dptr != NULL; key = dbm_nextkey(db)) {
    ...
}
```

**Compatibility Notes**

The historic dbm library created two underlying database files, traditionally named `file.dir` and `file.pag`. The Berkeley DB library creates a single database file named `file.db`. Applications that are aware of the underlying database filenames may require additional source code modifications.

The historic dbminit function required that the underlying `.dir` and `.pag` files already exist (empty databases were created by first manually creating zero-length `.dir` and `.pag` files). Applications that expect to create databases using this method may require additional source code modifications.

The historic dbm_dirfno and dbm_pagfno macros are supported, but will return identical file descriptors because there is only a single underlying file used by the Berkeley DB hashing access method. Applications using both file descriptors for locking may require additional source code modifications.

If applications using the dbm function exits without first closing the database, it may lose updates because the Berkeley DB library buffers writes to underlying databases. Such applications will require additional source code modifications to work correctly with the Berkeley DB library.

**Dbm Diagnostics**

The dbminit function returns -1 on failure, setting `errno`, and 0 on success.
The fetch function sets the `dptr` field of the returned `datum` to NULL on failure, setting `errno`, and returns a non-NULL `dptr` on success.

The store function returns -1 on failure, setting `errno`, and 0 on success.

The delete function returns -1 on failure, setting `errno`, and 0 on success.

The firstkey function sets the `dptr` field of the returned `datum` to NULL on failure, setting `errno`, and returns a non-NULL `dptr` on success.

The nextkey function sets the `dptr` field of the returned `datum` to NULL on failure, setting `errno`, and returns a non-NULL `dptr` on success.

### Dbm Errors

The `dbminit`, `fetch`, `store`, `delete`, `firstkey`, and `nextkey` functions may fail and return an error for errors specified for other Berkeley DB and C library or system functions.

### Ndbm Diagnostics

The `dbm_close` method returns non-zero when an error has occurred reading or writing the database.

The `dbm_close` method resets the error condition on the named database.

The `dbm_open` function returns NULL on failure, setting `errno`, and a DBM reference on success.

The `dbm_fetch` function sets the `dptr` field of the returned `datum` to NULL on failure, setting `errno`, and returns a non-NULL `dptr` on success.

The `dbm_store` function returns -1 on failure, setting `errno`, 0 on success, and 1 if `DBM_INSERT` was set and the specified key already existed in the database.

The `dbm_delete` function returns -1 on failure, setting `errno`, and 0 on success.

The `dbm_firstkey` function sets the `dptr` field of the returned `datum` to NULL on failure, setting `errno`, and returns a non-NULL `dptr` on success.

The `dbm_nextkey` function sets the `dptr` field of the returned `datum` to NULL on failure, setting `errno`, and returns a non-NULL `dptr` on success.

The `dbm_close` function returns -1 on failure, setting `errno`, and 0 on success.

The `dbm_close` function returns -1 on failure, setting `errno`, and 0 on success.

### Ndbm Errors

The `dbm_open`, `dbm_close`, `dbm_fetch`, `dbm_store`, `dbm_delete`, `dbm_firstkey`, and `dbm_nextkey` functions may fail and return an error for errors specified for other Berkeley DB and C library or system functions.
**hsearch**

```c
#define DB_DBM_HSEARCH 1
#include <db.h>

typedef enum {
    FIND, ENTER
} ACTION;

typedef struct entry {
    char *key;
    void *data;
} ENTRY;

ENTRY *
hsearch(ENTRY item, ACTION action);

int
hcreate(size_t nelem);

void
hdestroy(void);
```

The hsearch functions are intended to provide a high-performance implementation and source code compatibility for applications written to the historic hsearch interface. It is not recommended for any other purpose.

To compile hsearch applications, replace the application's `#include` of the hsearch include file (for example, `#include <search.h>`) with the following two lines:

```c
#define DB_DBM_HSEARCH 1
#include <db.h>
```

and recompile.

The hcreate function creates an in-memory database. The `nelem` parameter is an estimation of the maximum number of key/data pairs that will be stored in the database.

The hdestroy function discards the database.

Database elements are structures of type `ENTRY`, which contain at least two fields: **key** and **data**. The field **key** is declared to be of type `char *`, and is the key used for storage and retrieval. The field **data** is declared to be of type `void *`, and is its associated data.

The hsearch function retrieves key/data pairs from, and stores key/data pairs into the database.

The **action** parameter must be set to one of two values:

- ENTER
If the key does not already appear in the database, insert the key/data pair into the
database. If the key already appears in the database, return a reference to an ENTRY
structure which refers to the existing key and its associated data element.

- **FIND**

Retrieve the specified key/data pair from the database.

**Compatibility Notes**

Historically, hsearch required applications to maintain the keys and data in the application's
memory for as long as the hsearch database existed. Because Berkeley DB handles key
and data management internally, there is no requirement that applications maintain local
copies of key and data items, although the only effect of doing so should be the allocation of
additional memory.

**Hsearch Diagnostics**

The hcreate function returns 0 on failure, setting errno, and non-zero on success.

The hsearch function returns a pointer to an ENTRY structure on success, and NULL, setting
errno, if the action specified was FIND and the item did not appear in the database.

**Hsearch Errors**

The hsearch function will fail, setting errno to 0, if the action specified was FIND and the
item did not appear in the database.

In addition, the hcreate, hsearch and hdestroy functions may fail and return an error for
errors specified for other Berkeley DB and C library or system functions.
Appendix C. Berkeley DB Application Space Static Functions

This appendix describes functionality that existed on the DB_ENV handle in releases prior to Berkeley DB 3.1. In 3.1, this functionality was moved to as series of static functions, as in this appendix.
### Static Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Static Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_close</code></td>
<td>Replace Berkeley DB calls to close() with the identified function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_dirfree</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to free memory obtained due to a directory walk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_dirlist</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to free memory obtained due to a directory list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_exists</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to determine whether a file exists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_file_map</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to map a file into memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_free</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to free memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_fsync</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to sync a file to disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_ftruncate</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to truncate a file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_ioinfo</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to determine file characteristics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_malloc</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to allocate memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_open</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to open a file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_pread</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to read data from an object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_pwrite</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to write data to an object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_read</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to read data from an object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_realloc</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to change the size of memory pointed to by a pointer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_region_map</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to created shared memory regions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_rename</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to change the name of a file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_seek</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to specify a location in a file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_unlink</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to delete a file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_write</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to write data to an object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>db_env_set_func_yield</code></td>
<td>Specify function used to yield the processor to another thread of control.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**db_env_set_func_close**

```c
#include <db.h>

int db_env_set_func_close(int (*func_close)(int fd));
```

Replace Berkeley DB calls to the IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) `close` function with `func_close`, which must conform to the standard interface specification.

The `db_env_set_func_close()` function configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the `db_env_set_func_close()` function may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the `db_env_create` (page 223) or `db_create` (page 21) methods.

The `db_env_set_func_close()` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**func_close**

The `func_close` parameter is the replacement function. It must conform to the standard interface specification.

**See Also**

Run-time configuration
db_env_set_func_dirfree

```c
#include <db.h>

int
db_env_set_func_dirfree(void (*func_dirfree)(char **namesp, int cnt));
```

The Berkeley DB library requires the ability to return any memory allocated as part of the routine which reads through a directory and creates a list of files that the directory contains (see `db_env_set_func_dirlist` (page 756)).

The `db_env_set_func_dirfree()` function configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the `db_env_set_func_dirfree()` function may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the `db_env_create` (page 223) or `db_create` (page 21) methods.

The `db_env_set_func_dirfree()` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**func_dirfree**

The `func_dirfree` parameter is a function which frees the memory returned from the `db_env_set_func_dirlist` (page 756) function.

The `namesp` and `cnt` parameters to this function are the same values as were returned by the `db_env_set_func_dirlist` (page 756) function.

**See Also**

Run-time configuration
db_env_set_func_dirlist

```c
#include <db.h>

int
db_env_set_func_dirlist(int (*func_dirlist)(const char *dir,
                                            char ***namesp, int *cntp));
```

The Berkeley DB library requires the ability to read through a directory and create a list of files that the directory contains.

The `db_env_set_func_dirlist` method configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the `db_env_set_func_dirlist` method may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the `db_env_create (page 223)` or `db_create (page 21)` methods.

The `db_env_set_func_dirlist()` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**func_dirlist**

The `func_dirlist` parameter is the function which reads through a directory and returns a list of the files it contains.

The `dir` parameter to this function is the name of the directory to be searched.

The function must return a pointer to an array of nul-terminated file names into the memory location to which the `namesp` parameter refers, and a count of the number of elements in the array into the memory location to which `cntp` refers.

**See Also**

Run-time configuration
db_env_set_func_exists

```c
#include <db.h>

int 
db_env_set_func_exists(int (*func_exists)(const char *path,
int *isdirp));
```

The Berkeley DB library requires the ability to determine whether a file exists and whether it is a file of type directory.

The `db_env_set_func_exists()` function configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the `db_env_set_func_exists()` function may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the `db_env_create (page 223)` or `db_create (page 21)` methods.

The `db_env_set_func_exists()` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- `func_exists`

  The `func_exists` parameter is the function which returns if a file exists and if it is a file of type directory.

  The `path` parameter to this function is the pathname of the file to be checked.

  If the `isdirp` parameter is non-NULL, it must be set to non-0 if `path` is a directory, and 0 if `path` is not a directory.

  The `func_exists` function must return the value of `errno` on failure and 0 on success.

**See Also**

- Run-time configuration
db_env_set_func_file_map

```c
#include <db.h>

int db_env_set_func_file_map(int (*func_file_map)(DB_ENV *dbenv, char *path,
                                            size_t len, int is_rdonly, void **addr),
                              int (*func_file_unmap)(DB_ENV *dbenv, void *addr));
```

The Berkeley DB library optionally uses the ability to map a file into memory. The `db_env_set_func_file_map()` function configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the `db_env_set_func_file_map()` function may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the `db_env_create` (page 223) or `db_create` (page 21) methods.

The `db_env_set_func_file_map()` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**func_file_map**

The `func_file_map` parameter is the function which maps a file into memory. The function takes 5 parameters:

- **dbenv**
  
The `dbenv` parameter is the enclosing database environment handle.

- **path**
  
The `path` parameter is the name of file. Repeated requests for the mapping of the same name should return a reference to the same memory.

- **len**
  
The `len` parameter is the length, in bytes, of the file.

- **is_rdonly**
  
The `is_rdonly` parameter will be non-zero if the mapped file is read-only.

- **addr**
  
The `addr` parameter is the memory location into which a pointer to the mapped file is returned.

The `func_file_map` function must return the value of `errno` on failure and 0 on success.
**func_file_unmap**

The `func_file_unmap` parameter is the function which unmaps a file from memory. The function takes 2 parameters:

- **dbenv**

  The `dbenv` parameter is the enclosing database environment handle.

- **addr**

  The `addr` parameter is the value returned by the `func_file_map` function when the file or region was mapped into memory.

**See Also**

Run-time configuration
db_env_set_func_free

```c
#include <db.h>

int
db_env_set_func_free(void (*func_free)(void *ptr));
```

Replace Berkeley DB calls to the ANSI C X3.159-1989 (ANSI C) standard `free` function with `func_free`, which must conform to the standard interface specification.

The `db_env_set_func_free()` function configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the `db_env_set_func_free()` function may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the `db_env_create` (page 223) or `db_create` (page 21) methods.

The `db_env_set_func_free()` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**func_free**

The `func_free` parameter is the replacement function. It must conform to the standard interface specification.

**See Also**

Run-time configuration
db_env_set_func_fsync

```c
#include <db.h>

int db_env_set_func_fsync(int (*func_fsync)(int fd));
```

Replace Berkeley DB calls to the IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) fsync function with `func_fsync`, which must conform to the standard interface specification.

The `db_env_set_func_fsync()` function configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the `db_env_set_func_fsync()` function may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the `db_env_create` (page 223) or `db_create` (page 21) methods.

The `db_env_set_func_fsync` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**func_fsync**

The `func_fsync` parameter is the replacement function. It must conform to the standard interface specification.

**See Also**

Run-time configuration
db_env_set_func_ftruncate

```c
#include <db.h>

int db_env_set_func_ftruncate(int (*func_ftruncate)(int fd, off_t offset));
```

The Berkeley DB library requires the ability to truncate a file.

The `db_env_set_func_ftruncate` function configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the `db_env_set_func_ftruncate` function may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the `db_env_create (page 223)` or `db_create (page 21)` methods.

The `db_env_set_func_ftruncate()` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**func_ftruncate**

The `func_ftruncate` parameter is the function which truncates a file.

The `fd` parameter is an open file descriptor on the file.

The `ftruncate` function must truncate the file to the byte length specified by the `offset` parameter.

The `func_ftruncate` function must return the value of `errno` on failure and 0 on success.

**See Also**

Run-time configuration
db_env_set_func_ioinfo

#include <db.h>

int
  db_env_set_func_ioinfo(int (*func_ioinfo)(const char *path,
                     int fd, u_int32_t *mbytesp, u_int32_t *bytesp, u_int32_t *iosizep));

The Berkeley DB library requires the ability to determine the size and I/O characteristics of a file.

The db_env_set_func_ioinfo() function configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the db_env_set_func_ioinfo() function may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the db_env_create (page 223) or db_create (page 21) methods.

The db_env_set_func_ioinfo() function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

Parameters

func_ioinfo

The func_ioinfo parameter is the function which returns the size and I/O characteristics of a file.

The path parameter is the pathname of the file to be checked, and the fd parameter is an open file descriptor on the file.

If the mbytesp and bytesp parameters are non-NULL, the ioinfo function must return in them the size of the file: the number of megabytes in the file into the memory location to which the mbytesp parameter refers, and the number of bytes over and above that number of megabytes into the memory location to which the bytesp parameter refers.

In addition, if the iosizep parameter is non-NULL, the ioinfo function must return the optimum granularity for I/O operations to the file into the memory location to which it refers.

The func_ioinfo function must return the value of errno on failure and 0 on success.

See Also

Run-time configuration
# db_env_set_func_malloc

```c
#include <db.h>

int db_env_set_func_malloc(void *(*func_malloc)(size_t size));
```

Replace Berkeley DB calls to the ANSI C X3.159-1989 (ANSI C) standard `malloc` function with `func_malloc`, which must conform to the standard interface specification.

The `db_env_set_func_malloc()` function configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the `db_env_set_func_malloc()` function may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the `db_env_create` (page 223) or `db_create` (page 21) methods.

The `db_env_set_func_malloc()` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

## Parameters

### `func_malloc`

The `func_malloc` parameter is the replacement function. It must conform to the standard interface specification.

## See Also

Run-time configuration
db_env_set_func_open

```
#include <db.h>

int
db_env_set_func_open(int (*func_open)(const char *path, int flags,
int mode));
```

Replace Berkeley DB calls to the IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) `open` function with `func_open`, which must conform to the standard interface specification.

The `db_env_set_func_open()` function configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the `db_env_set_func_open()` function may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the `db_env_create (page 223)` or `db_create (page 21)` methods.

The `db_env_set_func_open()` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- `func_open`

  The `func_open` parameter is the replacement function. It must conform to the standard interface specification.

**See Also**

Run-time configuration
### db_env_set_func_pread

```c
#include <db.h>

int
db_env_set_func_pread(ssize_t (*func_pread)(int fd, void *buf,
                          size_t nbytes, off_t offset));
```

Replace Berkeley DB calls to the IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) `pread` function with `func_pread`, which must conform to the standard interface specification.

The `db_env_set_func_pread()` configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the `db_env_set_func_pread()` may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the `db_env_create` (page 223) or `db_create` (page 21) methods.

The `db_env_set_func_pread()` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

#### Parameters

**func_pread**

The `func_pread` parameter is the replacement function. It must conform to the standard interface specification.

#### See Also

Run-time configuration
### db_env_set_func_pwrite

```c
#include <db.h>

int
db_env_set_func_pwrite(ssize_t (*func_pwrite)(int fd, const void *buf,
    size_t nbytes, off_t offset));
```

Replace Berkeley DB calls to the IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) `pwrite` function with `func_pwrite`, which must conform to the standard interface specification.

The `db_env_set_func_pwrite()` configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the `db_env_set_func_pwrite()` may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the `db_env_create (page 223)` or `db_create (page 21)` methods.

The `db_env_set_func_pwrite()` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

#### Parameters

**func_pwrite**

The `func_pwrite` parameter is the replacement function. It must conform to the standard interface specification.

#### See Also

Run-time configuration
db_env_set_func_read

```c
#include <db.h>

int db_env_set_func_read(ssize_t (*func_read)(int fd, void *buf,
                       size_t nbytes));
```

Replace Berkeley DB calls to the IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) `read` function with `func_read`, which must conform to the standard interface specification.

The `db_env_set_func_read()` function configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the `db_env_set_func_read()` function may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the `db_env_create` (page 223) or `db_create` (page 21) methods.

The `db_env_set_func_read()` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

- `func_read`

  The `func_read` parameter is the replacement function. It must conform to the standard interface specification.

**See Also**

Run-time configuration
db_env_set_func_realloc

```c
#include <db.h>

int db_env_set_func_realloc(void *(*func_realloc)(void *ptr, size_t size));
```

Replace Berkeley DB calls to the ANSI C X3.159-1989 (ANSI C) standard `realloc` function with `func_realloc`, which must conform to the standard interface specification.

The `db_env_set_func_realloc()` function configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the `db_env_set_func_realloc()` function may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the `db_env_create (page 223)` or `db_create (page 21)` methods.

The `db_env_set_func_realloc()` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**func_realloc**

The `func_realloc` parameter is the replacement function. It must conform to the standard interface specification.

### See Also

Run-time configuration
db_env_set_func_region_map

```c
#include <db.h>

int db_env_set_func_region_map(int (*func_region_map)(DB_ENV *dbenv,  
            char *path, size_t len, int *is_create, void **addr),
            int (*func_region_unmap)(DB_ENV *dbenv, void *addr));
```

The Berkeley DB library optionally uses the ability to create shared memory regions (which
may or may not be backed by physical files). The memory will be used as a shared memory
region for synchronization between Berkeley DB threads/processes; while the returned
memory may be of any kind (for example, anonymous memory), it must be able to support
semaphores.

The `db_env_set_func_region_map()` function configures all operations performed by
a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database
environment.

Although the `db_env_set_func_region_map()` function may be called at any time
during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the
db_env_create (page 223) or db_create (page 21) methods.

The `db_env_set_func_region_map()` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0
on success.

**Parameters**

- **func_region_map**

The `func_region_map` parameter is the function which creates shared memory regions. The
function takes 5 parameters:

- **dbenv**

  The `dbenv` parameter is the enclosing database environment handle. This handle is provided
to uniquely identify a shared memory region: the `dbenv` parameter and the path are a
unique identifier pair for mapping any new region, and the `dbenv` parameter and the
address are a unique identifier pair for unmapping any region.

- **path**

  The `path` parameter is the name of the region. Repeated requests for the shared regions of
the same name, in the same database environment, should return a reference to the same
memory.

- **len**

  The `len` parameter is the length, in bytes, needed for the region.

- **is_create**
The memory referenced by the `is_create` parameter will be non-zero if flags to Berkeley DB allowed creation of the mapped region; the memory referenced by the `is_create` parameter must be set to non-zero if the region is created by the `func_region_map` function, and set to zero if the region is not created by the function. This returned information will determine if the region is subsequently initialized by Berkeley DB.

- **addr**

  The `addr` parameter is the memory location into which a pointer to the region or mapped file is returned.

### `func_region_unmap`

The `func_region_unmap` parameter is the function which unmaps a shared memory region. The function takes 2 parameters:

- **dbenv**

  The `dbenv` parameter is the enclosing database environment handle.

- **addr**

  The `addr` parameter is the value returned by the `func_region_map` function when the region was mapped into memory.

### See Also

Run-time configuration
**db_env_set_func_rename**

```c
#include <db.h>

int
db_env_set_func_rename(int (*func_rename)(const char *from,
                const char *to));
```

Replace Berkeley DB calls to the IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) rename function with func_rename, which must conform to the standard interface specification.

The db_env_set_func_rename() function configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the db_env_set_func_rename() function may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the db_env_create (page 223) or db_create (page 21) methods.

The db_env_set_func_rename() function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**func_rename**

The func_rename parameter is the replacement function. It must conform to the standard interface specification.

**See Also**

Run-time configuration
The Berkeley DB library requires the ability to specify that a subsequent read from or write to a file will occur at a specific location in that file.

The `db_env_set_func_seek()` function configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the `db_env_set_func_seek()` function may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the `db_env_create` (page 223) or `db_create` (page 21) methods.

The `db_env_set_func_seek()` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

### Parameters

**func_seek**

The `func_seek` parameter is the function which seeks to a specific location in a file.

The `fd` parameter is an open file descriptor on the file.

The `seek` function must cause a subsequent read from or write to the file to occur at the byte offset specified by the `offset` parameter.

The `whence` parameter specifies where in the file the byte offset is relative to, as described by the IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) `lseek` system call.

The `func_seek` function must return the value of `errno` on failure and 0 on success.

### See Also

Run-time configuration
db_env_set_func_unlink

```
#include <db.h>

int
db_env_set_func_unlink(int (*func_unlink)(const char *path));
```

Replace Berkeley DB calls to the IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) unlink function with `func_unlink`, which must conform to the standard interface specification.

The `db_env_set_func_unlink()` function configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the `db_env_set_func_unlink()` function may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the `db_env_create` (page 223) or `db_create` (page 21) methods.

The `db_env_set_func_unlink()` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`func_unlink`

The `func_unlink` parameter is the replacement function. It must conform to the standard interface specification.

**See Also**

Run-time configuration
db_env_set_func_write

```c
#include <db.h>

int db_env_set_func_write(ssize_t (*func_write)(int fd, const void *buffer,
                                      size_t nbytes));
```

Replace Berkeley DB calls to the IEEE/ANSI Std 1003.1 (POSIX) `write` function with `func_write`, which must conform to the standard interface specification.

The `db_env_set_func_write()` function configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the `db_env_set_func_write()` function may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the `db_env_create` (page 223) or `db_create` (page 21) methods.

The `db_env_set_func_write()` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

**func_write**

The `func_write` parameter is the replacement function. It must conform to the standard interface specification.

**See Also**

Run-time configuration
**db_env_set_func_yield**

```c
#include <db.h>

int db_env_set_func_yield(int (*func_yield)(u_long secs, u_long usecs));
```

The Berkeley DB library requires the ability to yield the processor from the current thread of control to any other waiting threads of control.

The `func_yield` function must be able to cause the rescheduling of all participants in the current Berkeley DB environment, whether threaded or not. It may be incorrect to supply a thread `yield` function if more than a single process is operating in the Berkeley DB environment. This is because many thread-yield functions will not allow other processes to run, and the contented lock may be held by another process, not by another thread.

The `db_env_set_func_yield()` function configures all operations performed by a process and all of its threads of control, not operations confined to a single database environment.

Although the `db_env_set_func_yield()` function may be called at any time during the life of the application, it should normally be called before making calls to the `db_env_create` (page 223) or `db_create` (page 21) methods.

The `db_env_set_func_yield()` function returns a non-zero error value on failure and 0 on success.

**Parameters**

`func_yield`

The `func_yield` parameter is the function which yields the processor.

The `secs` parameter is the number of seconds to pause before the thread of control should run again, or 0.

The `usecs` parameter is the number of microseconds to pause before the thread of control should run again, or 0.

The `func_yield` function must return the value of `errno` on failure and 0 on success.

**See Also**

Run-time configuration
Appendix D. DB_CONFIG Parameter Reference

The following DB_CONFIG parameters can be used to manage various aspects of your application's database environment.
# DB_CONFIG Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DB_CONFIG Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>add_data_dir</td>
<td>Adds a directory to be searched for database files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>home_dir</td>
<td>Sets the home directory for a database slice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutex_set_align</td>
<td>Sets the mutex alignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutex_set_increment</td>
<td>Configures the number of additional mutexes to allocate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutex_set_max</td>
<td>Configures the total number of mutexes to allocate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutex_set_tas_spins</td>
<td>Specifies the number of times the test-and-set mutexes should spin without blocking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rep_set_clockskew</td>
<td>Sets the clock skew ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rep_set_config</td>
<td>Configures the Berkeley DB replication subsystem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rep_set_limit</td>
<td>Sets record transmission throttling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rep_set_nsites</td>
<td>Specifies the total number of sites in a replication group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rep_set_priority</td>
<td>Specifies the database environment's priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rep_set_request</td>
<td>Sets a threshold before requesting retransmission of a missing message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rep_set_timeout</td>
<td>Specifies a variety of replication timeout values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repmgr_set_ack_policy</td>
<td>Specifies how master and client sites will handle acknowledgment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repmgr_set_incoming_queue_max</td>
<td>Configure the Replication Manager incoming queue size limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repmgr_site</td>
<td>Identifies a Replication Manager host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_cachesize</td>
<td>Sets the size of the shared memory buffer pool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_cache_max</td>
<td>Sets the maximum size for set_cachesize parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_create_dir</td>
<td>Sets the directory path to create the access method database files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_data_len</td>
<td>Sets the maximum number of bytes displayed by some utilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_flags</td>
<td>Configures a database environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_intermediate_dir_mode</td>
<td>Configures the directory permissions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_lg_bsize</td>
<td>Sets the size of the in-memory log buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DB_CONFIG Parameters</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_lg_dir</td>
<td>Sets the path of the directory for logging files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_lg_filemode</td>
<td>Sets the absolute file mode for created log files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_lg_max</td>
<td>Sets the maximum size of a single file in the log</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_lg_regionmax</td>
<td>Sets the size of the underlying logging area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_lk_detect</td>
<td>Sets the maximum number of locking entities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_lk_max_lockers</td>
<td>Sets the maximum number of locking entities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_lk_max_locks</td>
<td>Sets the maximum number of locks supported by the Berkeley DB environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_lk_max_objects</td>
<td>Sets the maximum number of locked objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_lk_partitions</td>
<td>Sets the number of lock table partitions in the Berkeley DB environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_slice_count</td>
<td>Sets the number of slices used for a sliced database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slice</td>
<td>Sets a configuration option for a database slice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>log_set_config</td>
<td>Configures the Berkeley DB logging subsystem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_mp_max_openfd</td>
<td>Limits the number of file descriptors the library will open concurrently when flushing dirty pages from the cache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_mp_max_write</td>
<td>Limits the number of sequential write operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_mp_mmapsize</td>
<td>Sets the maximum file size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_open_flags</td>
<td>Initializes specific subsystems of the Berkeley DB environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_region_dir</td>
<td>Sets the path of the directory for disk backed region files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_shm_key</td>
<td>Configures the database environment's base segment ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_thread_count</td>
<td>Declares an approximate number of threads in the database environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_timeout</td>
<td>Sets timeout values for locks or transactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_tmp_dir</td>
<td>Specifies the directory path of temporary files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_tx_max</td>
<td>Configures support of simultaneously active transactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set_verbose</td>
<td>Enables/disables the Berkeley DB message output</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
add_data_dir

Add the path of a directory to be used as the location of the access method database files. Paths specified to the DB->open() (page 74) function will be searched relative to this path. Paths set using this method are additive, and specifying more than one will result in each specified directory being searched for database files.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string add_data_dir, one or more whitespace characters, and the directory name.

For more information, see DB_ENV->add_data_dir() (page 216).
**home_dir**

Sets the home directory where a database slice environment will be physically placed. This parameter can only be set using the slice (page 814) parameter.
mutex_set_align

Sets the mutex alignment, in bytes. It is sometimes advantageous to align mutexes on specific byte boundaries in order to minimize cache line collisions. This parameter specifies an alignment for mutexes allocated by Berkeley DB.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string mutex_set_align, one or more whitespace characters, and the mutex alignment in bytes. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

For more information, see DB_ENV->mutex_set_align() (page 511).
mutex_set_increment

Configures the number of additional mutexes to allocate. If an application will allocate mutexes for its own use, this parameter is used to add a number of mutexes to the default allocation.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string mutex_set_increment, one or more whitespace characters, and the number of additional mutexes. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

For more information, see DB_ENV->mutex_set_increment() (page 512).
mutex_set_max

Configures the total number of mutexes to allocate. Berkeley DB allocates a default number of mutexes based on the initial configuration of the database environment. That default calculation may be too small if the application has an unusual need for mutexes. This parameter is used to specify an absolute number of mutexes to allocate.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string mutex_set_max, one or more whitespace characters, and the total number of mutexes. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

For more information, see DB_ENV->mutex_set_max() (page 515).
mutex_set_tas_spins

Specifies the number of times the test-and-set mutexes should spin without blocking. The value defaults to 1 time on uniprocessor systems and to 50 times the number of processors on multiprocessor systems, up to a maximum of 200.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string set_tas_spins, one or more whitespace characters, and the number of spins.

For more information, see DB_ENV->mutex_set_tas_spins() (page 517).
**rep_set_clockskew**

Sets the clock skew ratio among replication group members based on the fastest and slowest measurements among the group for use with master leases.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string `rep_set_clockskew`, one or more whitespace characters, and the clockskew specified in two parts: the fast_clock and the slow_clock.

For example:

```
rep_set_clockskew 102 100
```

Sets the fast_clock to 102 and the slow_clock to 100 if a group of sites has a 2% variance.

For more information, see `DB_ENV->rep_set_clockskew()` (page 552).
rep_set_config

Rep_configures the Berkeley DB replication subsystem.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string
rep_set_config, one or more whitespace characters, and the method parameter as a string
and optionally one or more whitespace characters, and the string on or off. If the optional
string is omitted, the default is on. For example:

rep_set_config DB_REP_CONF_NOWAIT on

or

rep_set_config DB_REP_CONF_NOWAIT

Configures the Berkeley DB replication subsystem such that the method calls that would
normally block while clients are in recovery will return errors immediately.

The method parameters are:

• DB_REP_CONF_AUTOINIT
• DB_REP_CONF_BULK
• DB_REP_CONF_DELAYCLIENT
• DB_REP_CONF_INMEM
• DB_REP_CONF_LEASE
• DB_REP_CONF_NOWAIT
• DB_REPMGR_CONF_ELECTIONS
• DB_REPMGR_CONF_PREFMAS_CLIENT
• DB_REPMGR_CONF_PREFMAS_MASTER
• DB_REPMGR_CONF_2SITE_STRICT

For more information, see DB_ENV->rep_set_config() (page 554).
**rep_set_limit**

Sets record transmission throttling. This is a bytecount limit on the amount of data that will be transmitted from a site in response to a single message processed by the `DB_ENV->rep_process_message` method.

The syntax of this parameter in the `DB_CONFIG` file is a single line with the string `rep_set_limit`, one or more whitespace characters, and the limit specified in two parts: the gigabytes and the bytes values. For example:

```
rep_set_limit 0 1048576
```

Sets a 1 megabyte limit.

For more information, see `DB_ENV->rep_set_limit()` (page 558).
rep_set_nsites

Specifies the total number of sites in a replication group. This parameter is ignored for Replication Manager applications.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string rep_set_nsites, one or more whitespace characters, and the number of sites specified. For example:

```
rep_set_nsites 5
```

Sets the number of sites to 5.

For more information, see DB_ENV->rep_set_nsites() (page 560).
rep_set_priority

Specifies the database environment's priority in replication group elections. A special value of 0 indicates that this environment cannot be a replication group master.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string rep_set_priority, one or more whitespace characters, and the priority of this site. For example:

```plaintext
rep_set_priority 1
```

Sets the priority of this site to 1.

For more information, see DB_ENV->rep_set_priority() (page 562).
**rep_set_request**

Sets a threshold for the minimum and maximum time that a client waits before requesting retransmission of a missing message.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string `rep_set_request`, one or more whitespace characters, and the request time specified in two parts: the min and the max. Specifically, if the client detects a gap in the sequence of incoming log records or database pages, Berkeley DB will wait for at least min microseconds before requesting retransmission of the missing record. Berkeley DB will double that amount before requesting the same missing record again, and so on, up to a maximum threshold of max microseconds.

By default the minimum is 40000 and the maximum is 1280000 (1.28 seconds). These defaults are fairly arbitrary and the application likely needs to adjust these. The values should be based on expected load and performance characteristics of the master and client host platforms and transport infrastructure as well as round-trip message time.

For more information, see `DB_ENV->rep_set_request()` (page 564).
**rep_set_timeout**

Specifies a variety of replication timeout values.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string `rep_set_timeout`, one or more whitespace characters, and the flag specified as a string and the timeout specified as two parts. For example:

```
rep_set_timeout DB_REP_CONNECTION_RETRY 1500000
```

Specifies the connection retry timeout as 15 seconds.

The flag value can be any one of the following:

- `DB_REP_ACK_TIMEOUT`
- `DB_REP_CHECKPOINT_DELAY`
- `DB_REP_CONNECTION_RETRY`
- `DB_REP_ELECTION_TIMEOUT`
- `DB_REP_ELECTION_RETRY`
- `DB_REP_FULL_ELECTION_TIMEOUT`
- `DB_REP_HEARTBEAT_MONITOR`
- `DB_REP_HEARTBEAT_SEND`
- `DB_REP_LEASE_TIMEOUT`

For more information, see `DB_ENV->rep_set_timeout()` (page 566).
repmgr_set_ack_policy

Specifies how master and client sites will handle acknowledgment of replication messages which are necessary for “permanent” records.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string `repmgr_set_ack_policy`, one or more whitespace characters, and the `ack_policy` parameter specified as a string. For example:

```
repmgr_set_ack_policy DB_REPMGR_ACKS_ALL
```

Specifies that the master should wait until all replication clients have acknowledged each permanent replication message.

The `ack_policy` parameters are:

- `DB_REPMGR_ACKS_ALL`
- `DB_REPMGR_ACKS_ALL_AVAILABLE`
- `DB_REPMGR_ACKS_ALL_PEERS`
- `DB_REPMGR_ACKS_NONE`
- `DB_REPMGR_ACKS_ONE`
- `DB_REPMGR_ACKS_ONE_PEER`
- `DB_REPMGR_ACKS_QUORUM`

For more information, see `DB_ENV->repmgr_set_ack_policy()` (page 592).
repmgr_set_incoming_queue_max

Sets a byte-count limit on the amount of dynamic memory used by the Replication Manager incoming queue.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string repmgr_set_incoming_queue_max, one or more whitespace characters, and the limit specified in two parts: the gigabytes and the bytes values. For example:

repmgr_set_incoming_queue_max 0 104857600

Sets a 100 megabyte limit.

For more information, see DB_ENV->repmgr_set_incoming_queue_max() (page 594).
**repmgr_site**

Identifies a Replication Manager site.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string `repmgr_site`, one or more whitespace characters, the host and port parameters specified as a string and an integer respectively. This can optionally be followed by one or more space-delimited keywords and `on/off`. For example:

```
repmgr_site example.com 49200 db_local_site on db_legacy off
```

Available keywords are:

- **db_bootstrap_helper**

  If turned on, the identified site may be used as a "helper" when the local site is first joining the replication group. Once the local site has been established as a member of the group, this setting is ignored.

- **db_group_creator**

  If turned on, this site should create the initial group membership database contents, defining a "group" of just the one site, rather than trying to join an existing group when it starts for the first time. This setting is only used on the local site, and is ignored when configured on a remote site.

- **db_legacy**

  If turned on, specifies that the site is already part of an existing group. This setting causes the site to be upgraded from a previous version of Berkeley DB. All sites in the legacy group must specify this setting for themselves (the local site) and for all other sites currently existing in the group. Once the upgrade has been completed, this setting is no longer required.

- **db_local_site**

  If turned on, specifies that this site is the local site within the replication group. The application must identify exactly one site as the local site before replication is started.

- **db_repmgr_peer**

  If turned on, specifies that the site may be used as a target for "client-to-client" synchronization messages. This setting is ignored if it is turned on for the local site.

For more information, see `DB_SITE->set_config()` (page 537).
set_cachesize

Sets the size of the shared memory buffer pool — that is, the cache. The cache should be the size of the normal working data set of the application, with some small amount of additional memory for unusual situations. (Note: the working set is not the same as the number of pages accessed simultaneously, and is usually much larger.)

The value specified for this parameter is the maximum value that your application will be able to use for your in-memory cache. If your application does not have enough data to fill up the amount of space specified here, then your application will only use the amount of memory required by the data that your application does have.

For the DB, the default cache size is 8MB. You cannot specify a cache size value of less than 100KB.

Any cache size less than 500MB is automatically increased by 25% to account for cache overhead; cache sizes larger than 500MB are used as specified. The maximum size of a single cache is 4GB on 32-bit systems and 10TB on 64-bit systems. (All sizes are in powers-of-two, that is, 256KB is $2^{18}$ not 256,000.)

It is possible to specify cache sizes large enough they cannot be allocated contiguously on some architectures. For example, some releases of Solaris limit the amount of memory that may be allocated contiguously by a process. If `ncache` is 0 or 1, the cache will be allocated contiguously in memory. If it is greater than 1, the cache will be split across `ncache` separate regions, where the region size is equal to the initial cache size divided by `ncache`.

The cache size supplied to this parameter will be rounded to the nearest multiple of the region size and may not be larger than the maximum possible cache size configured for your application (use the `set_cache_max` (page 797) to do this). The `ncache` parameter is ignored when resizing the cache.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string `set_cachesize`, one or more whitespace characters, and the initial cache size specified in three parts: the gigabytes of cache, the additional bytes of cache, and the number of caches, also separated by whitespace characters. For example:

```
set_cachesize 2 524288000 1
```

Creates a single 2.5GB physical cache.

Note that this parameter is ignored unless it is specified before you initially create your environment, or you re-create your environment after changing it.

For more information, see `DB_ENV->set_cachesize()` (page 459).
set_cache_max

Sets the maximum size that the set_cachesize parameter is allowed to set. The specified size is rounded to the nearest multiple of the cache region size, which is the initial cache size divided by the number of regions specified to the set_cachesize parameter. If no value is specified, it defaults to the initial cache size.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string set_cache_max, one or more whitespace characters, and the maximum cache size in bytes, specified in two parts: the gigabytes of cache and the additional bytes of cache. For example:

```
set_cache_max 2 524288000
```

Sets the maximum cache size to 2.5GB.

This parameter can be changed with a simple restart of your application; you do not need to re-create your environment for it to be changed.

For more information, see DB_ENV->set_cache_max() (page 457).
**set_create_dir**

Sets the path of a directory to be used as the location to create the access method database files.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string `set_create_dir`, one or more whitespace characters, and the directory name.

For example:

```
  set_create_dir /b/data2
```

Sets data2 as the location to create the access method database files. When the `DB->open()` (page 74) function is used to create a file, it will be created relative to this path.

For more information, see `DB_ENV->set_create_dir()` (page 291).
**set_data_len**

Limits the amount of data displayed when `DB_ENV->lock_stat_print()` (page 386) is called with the `DB_STAT_ALL` flag.

If the `db_printlog` (page 719) or `db_dump` (page 703) utility uses a DB_CONFIG file with this setting, it sets the default for the amount of data displayed for each key/data item. This value may be overridden using the `-D` option for both utilities.

The value set here must be greater than 0. The default value is 100.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string `set_data_len`, one or more whitespace characters, and the directory name.

For example:

```
set_data_len 1048576
```
set_flags

Configures a database environment.

The syntax of the entry in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string set_flags, one or more whitespace characters, the method flag parameter as a string, optionally one or more whitespace characters, and the string on or off. If the optional string is omitted, the default is on; for example, set_flags DB_TXN_NOSYNC or set_flags DB_TXN_NOSYNC on. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The method flag parameters are as follows:

- **DB_AUTO_COMMIT**
  Enables/disables to automatically enclose those DB handle operations for which no explicit transaction handle was specified, and which modify databases in the database environment, within a transaction.

- **DB_CDB_ALLDB**
  Enables/disables Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store applications to perform locking on an environment-wide basis rather than on a per-database basis.

- **DB_DIRECT_DB**
  Enables/disables turning off system buffering of Berkeley DB database files to avoid double caching.

- **DB_DSYNC_DB**
  Enables/disables configuring Berkeley DB to flush database writes to the backing disk before returning from the write system call, rather than flushing database writes explicitly in a separate system call, as necessary.

- **DB_MULTIVERSION**
  Enables/disables all databases in the environment from being opened as if DB_MULTIVERSION is passed to the DB->open method. This flag will be ignored for queue databases for which DB_MULTIVERSION is not supported.

- **DB_NOMMAP**
  Enables/disables Berkeley DB from copying read-only database files into the local cache instead of potentially mapping them into process memory.

- **DB_REGION_INIT**
  Enables/disables Berkeley DB to page-fault shared regions into memory when initially creating or joining a Berkeley DB environment. In addition, Berkeley DB will write the shared regions when creating an environment, forcing the underlying virtual memory and filesystems to instantiate both the necessary memory and the necessary disk space.

- **DB_TIME_NOTGRANTED**
  Enables/disables those database calls timing out based on lock or transaction timeout values to return DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED instead of DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK. This allows applications to distinguish between operations which have deadlocked and operations which have exceeded their time limits.
- **DB_TXN_NOSYNC**
  Enables/disables Berkeley DB to not write or synchronously flush the log on transaction commit.

- **DB_TXN_NOWAIT**
  Enables/disables the operation to return DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK if a lock is unavailable for any Berkeley DB operation performed in the context of a transaction.

- **DB_TXN_SNAPSHOT**
  Enables/disables all transactions in the environment to be started as if DB_TXN_SNAPSHOT were passed to the DB_ENV->txn_begin method, and all non-transactional cursors to be opened as if DB_TXN_SNAPSHOT were passed to the DB->cursor method.

- **DB_TXN_WRITE_NOSYNC**
  Enables/disables Berkeley DB to write, but not synchronously flush, the log on transaction commit.

- **DB_YIELDCPU**
  Enables/disables Berkeley DB to yield the processor immediately after each page or mutex acquisition.

For more information, see `DB_ENV->set_flags()` (page 308).
**set_intermediate_dir_mode**

Configures the database environment's intermediate directory permissions.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string set_intermediate_dir_mode, one or more whitespace characters, and the directory permissions.

Directory permissions are interpreted as a string of nine characters, using the character set r (read), w (write), x (execute or search), and - (none). The first character is the read permissions for the directory owner (set to either r or -). The second character is the write permissions for the directory owner (set to either w or -). The third character is the execute permissions for the directory owner (set to either x or -).

Similarly, the second set of three characters are the read, write and execute/search permissions for the directory group, and the third set of three characters are the read, write and execute/search permissions for all others. For example, the string rwx------ would configure read, write and execute/search access for the owner only. The string rwxrwx--- would configure read, write and execute/search access for both the owner and the group. The string rwxr----- would configure read, write and execute/search access for the directory owner and read-only access for the directory group.

For more information, see DB_ENV->set_intermediate_dir_mode() (page 315).
**set_lg_bsize**

Sets the size of the in-memory log buffer, in bytes.

For the DB, when the logging subsystem is configured for on-disk logging, the default size of the in-memory log buffer is approximately 32KB. For the BDB SQL interface, when the logging subsystem is configured for on-disk logging, the default size of the in-memory log buffer is approximately 64KB. Log information is stored in-memory until the storage space fills up or a transaction commit forces the information to be flushed to stable storage. In the presence of long-running transactions or transactions producing large amounts of data, larger buffer sizes can increase throughput.

When the logging subsystem is configured for in-memory logging, the default size of the in-memory log buffer is 1MB. Log information is stored in-memory until the storage space fills up or transaction abort or commit frees up the memory for new transactions. In the presence of long-running transactions or transactions producing large amounts of data, the buffer size must be sufficient to hold all log information that can accumulate during the longest running transaction. When choosing log buffer and file sizes for in-memory logs, applications should ensure the in-memory log buffer size is large enough that no transaction will ever span the entire buffer, and avoid a state where the in-memory buffer is full and no space can be freed because a transaction that started in the first log "file" is still active.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string `set_lg_bsize`, one or more whitespace characters, and the log buffer size in bytes.

If the database environment already exists when this parameter is changed, it is ignored. To change this value after the environment has been created, re-create your environment.

For more information, see `DB_ENV->set_lg_bsize()` (page 419).
set_lg_dir

Sets the path of the directory to be used as the location of logging files. Log files created by the Log Manager subsystem will be created in this directory. If no logging directory is specified, log files are created in the environment home directory.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string set_lg_dir, one or more whitespace characters, and the directory name.

For more information, see DB_ENV->set_lg_dir() (page 421).
set_lg_filemode

Sets the absolute file mode for created log files. This method is only useful for the rare Berkeley DB application that does not control its umask value.

Normally, if Berkeley DB applications set their umask appropriately, all processes in the application suite will have read permission on the log files created by any process in the application suite. However, if the Berkeley DB application is a library, a process using the library might set its umask to a value preventing other processes in the application suite from reading the log files it creates. In this rare case, use the set_lg_filemode parameter to set the mode of created log files to an absolute value.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string set_lg_filemode, one or more whitespace characters, and the absolute mode of created log files.

For more information, see DB_ENV->set_lg_filemode() (page 423).
set_lg_max

Sets the maximum size of a single file in the log, in bytes. The value set for this parameter may not be larger than the maximum unsigned four-byte value.

When the logging subsystem is configured for on-disk logging, the default size of a log file is 10MB.

When the logging subsystem is configured for in-memory logging, the default size of a log file is 256KB. In addition, the configured log buffer size must be larger than the log file size. (The logging subsystem divides memory configured for in-memory log records into “files”, as database environments configured for in-memory log records may exchange log records with other members of a replication group, and those members may be configured to store log records on-disk.) When choosing log buffer and file sizes for in-memory logs, applications should ensure the in-memory log buffer size is large enough that no transaction will ever span the entire buffer, and avoid a state where the in-memory buffer is full and no space can be freed because a transaction that started in the first log “file” is still active.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string set_lg_max, one or more whitespace characters, and the maximum log file size in bytes.

If the database environment already exists when this parameter is changed, it is ignored. To change this value after the environment has been created, re-create your environment.

For more information, see DB_ENV->set_lg_max() (page 424).
**set_lg_regionmax**

Sets the size of the underlying logging area of the Berkeley DB environment, in bytes. By default, or if the value is set to 0, the minimum region size is used, approximately 128KB. The log region is used to store filenames, and so may need to be increased in size if a large number of files will be opened and registered with the specified Berkeley DB environment’s log manager.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string `set_lg_regionmax`, one or more whitespace characters, and the log region size in bytes.

If the database environment already exists when this parameter is changed, it is ignored. To change this value after the environment has been created, re-create your environment.

For more information, see `DB_ENV->get_lg_regionmax()` (page 398).
**set_fk_detect**

Sets the maximum number of locking entities supported by the Berkeley DB environment. This value is used by Berkeley DB to estimate how much space to allocate for various lock-table data structures. When using the DB, the default value is 2,000 lockers.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string `set_fk_detect`, one or more whitespace characters, and the method `detect` parameter as a string. The detect parameter configures the deadlock detector. The deadlock detector will reject the lock request with the lowest priority. If multiple lock requests have the lowest priority, then the detect parameter is used to select which of those lock requests to reject.

For example:

```
set_fk_detect DB_LOCK_OLDEST
```

Sets the deadlock detector such that the lock request for the locker ID with the oldest lock is rejected.

The `detect` parameter values are:

- DB_LOCK_DEFAULT
- DB_LOCK_EXPIRE
- DB_LOCK_MAXLOCKS
- DB_LOCK_MAXWRITE
- DB_LOCK_MINLOCKS
- DB_LOCK_MINWRITE
- DB_LOCK_OLDEST
- DB_LOCK_RANDOM
- DB_LOCK_YOUNGEST

For more information, see `DB_ENV->set_fk_detect()` (page 359).
set_lk_max_lockers

Sets the maximum number of locking entities supported by the Berkeley DB environment. This value is used by Berkeley DB to estimate how much space to allocate for various lock-table data structures. When using the DB, the default value is 1,000 lockers. When using the BDB SQL interface, the default value is 2,000 lockers.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string set_lk_max_lockers, one or more whitespace characters, and the number of lockers.

If the database environment already exists when this parameter is changed, it is ignored. To change this value after the environment has been created, re-create your environment.

For more information, see DB_ENV->set_lk_max_lockers() (page 361).
**set_lk_max_locks**

Sets the maximum number of locks supported by the Berkeley DB environment. This value is used to estimate how much space to allocate for various lock-table data structures. When using the DB, the default value is 1000 locks. When using the BDB SQL interface, the default value is 10,000 locks.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string `set_lk_max_locks`, one or more whitespace characters, and the number of locks.

If the database environment already exists when this parameter is changed, it is ignored. To change this value after the environment has been created, re-create your environment.

For more information, see `DB_ENV->set_lk_max_locks()` (page 363).
set_lk_max_objects

Sets the maximum number of locked objects supported by the Berkeley DB environment. This value is used to estimate how much space to allocate for various lock-table data structures. When using the DB, the default value is 1000 objects. When using the BDB SQL interface, the default value is 10,000 objects.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string set_lk_max_objects, one or more whitespace characters, and the number of objects.

If the database environment already exists when this parameter is changed, it is ignored. To change this value after the environment has been created, re-create your environment.

For more information, see DB_ENV->set_lk_max_objects() (page 365).
set_lk_partitions

Sets the number of lock table partitions in the Berkeley DB environment. The default value is 10 times the number of CPUs on the system if there is more than one CPU.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string set_lk_partitions, one or more whitespace characters, and the number of partitions.

If the database environment already exists when this parameter is changed, it is ignored. To change this value after the environment has been created, re-create your environment.

For more information, see DB_ENV->set_lk_partitions() (page 367).
set_slice_count

Sets the number of slices to use for a sliced database environment. The value provided here must be a positive integer. However, for any performance benefits to be realized through the use of slices, this value should be greater than 1. For best results, set this value equal to the number of available cores.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string set_slice_count, one or more whitespace characters, and the number of slices that you want to use.

If slice support is not configured for the database at compile time, then this parameter is ignored. In addition to this parameter, DB handles must be open with the DB_SLICED flag in order for the database to be sliced.

If the database environment already exists when this parameter is changed, it is ignored. To change this value after the environment has been created, re-create your environment.
slice

Sets a configuration parameter for a specific slice (identified by a positive integer) or for all slices by using the keyword all.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string slice, one or more whitespace characters, the slice number or all, one or more whitespace characters, and the parameter you want to set for the slice. Note that slice numbers start at 0. For example:

```
set_slice_count 4
slice 0 home_dir /export/dbenv/slices/slice0
slice 1 home_dir /export/dbenv/slices/slice1
slice 2 home_dir /export/dbenv/slices/slice2
slice 3 home_dir /export/dbenv/slices/slice3
slice all set_cachesize 2 524288000 1
```

If slice support has not been compiled into the database, then this parameter is ignored.
log_set_config

Configures the Berkeley DB logging subsystem.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string log_set_config, one or more whitespace characters, method flag parameter as a string, optionally one or more whitespace characters, and the string on or off. If the optional string is omitted, the default is on.

The method flag parameters are:

- DB_LOG_DIRECT
  Turns off system buffering of Berkeley DB log files to avoid double caching.

- DB_LOG_DSYNC
  Configures Berkeley DB to flush log writes to the backing disk before returning from the write system call, rather than flushing log writes explicitly in a separate system call, as necessary.

For more information, see DB_ENV->log_set_config() (page 410).
set_mp_max_openfd

Limits the number of file descriptors the library will open concurrently when flushing dirty pages from the cache.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string set_max_openfd, one or more whitespace characters, and the number of open file descriptors.

For more information, see DB_ENV->get_mp_max_openfd() (page 439).
set_mp_max_write

Limits the number of sequential write operations scheduled by the library when flushing dirty pages from the cache.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string set_mp_max_write, one or more whitespace characters, and the maximum number of sequential writes and the number of microseconds to sleep, also separated by whitespace characters.

For more information, see DB_ENV->set_mp_max_write() (page 462).
set_mp_mmmapsize

Sets the maximum file size, in bytes, for a file to be mapped into the process address space. If no value is specified, it defaults to 10MB.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string set_mp_mmmapsize, one or more whitespace characters, and the size in bytes.

For more information, see DB_ENV->set_mp_mmmapsize() (page 464).
set_open_flags

Initializes specific subsystems of the Berkeley DB environment.

The syntax of the entry in the DB_CONFIG is a single line with the string set_open_flags, one or more whitespace characters, the method flag parameter as a string, optionally one or more whitespace characters, and the string on or off. If the optional string is omitted, the default is on; for example, set_open_flags DB_INIT_REP or set_open_flags DB_INIT_REP on. Because the DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, it will silently overrule configuration done before that time.

The method flag parameters are as follows:

- **DB_INIT_REP**
  Enables/disables DB_INIT_REP in the DB_ENV->open method. For example:
  ```
  set_open_flags DB_INIT_REP on
  ```
  This enables initializing the replication subsystem. This subsystem should be used whenever an application plans on using replication. This setting overwrites the DB_INIT_REP flag passed from the application's DB_ENV->open method.

- **DB_PRIVATE**
  Enables/disables DB_PRIVATE in the DB_ENV->open method. For example:
  ```
  set_open_flags DB_PRIVATE on
  ```
  This enables region memory allocation from the heap instead of from memory backed by the filesystem or system shared memory. This flag implies the environment will only be accessed by a single process (although that process may be multithreaded). This flag has two effects on the Berkeley DB environment. First, all underlying data structures are allocated from per-process memory instead of from shared memory that is accessible to more than a single process. Second, mutexes are only configured to work between threads. This setting overwrites the DB_PRIVATE flag passed from the application's DB_ENV->open method.

- **DB_THREAD**
  Enables/disables DB_THREAD in the DB_ENV->open method. For example:
  ```
  set_open_flags DB_THREAD on
  ```
  This enables the DB_ENV handle returned by the DB_ENV->open method to be free-threaded; that is, concurrently usable by multiple threads in the address space. This setting overwrites the DB_THREAD flag passed from the application's DB_ENV->open method.
**set_region_dir**

Sets the path of the directory to be used as the location of disk-backed region files. Region files created by the Memory Pool subsystem will be created in this directory. If no region directory is specified, region files are created in the environment home directory.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string `set_region_dir`, one or more whitespace characters, and the directory name.

For more information, see `DB_ENV->set_region_dir()` (page 469).
set_shm_key

Configures the database environment's base segment ID. This base segment ID will be used when Berkeley DB shared memory regions are first created. It will be incremented a small integer value each time a new shared memory region is created; that is, if the base ID is 35, the first shared memory region created will have a segment ID of 35, and the next one will have a segment ID between 36 and 40 or so.

See Shared Memory Regions for more information.

The syntax of the entry in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string set_shm_key one or more whitespace characters, and the ID.

For more information, see DB_ENV->set_shm_key() (page 328).
set_thread_count

Declares an approximate number of threads in the database environment.

The syntax of the entry in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string set_thread_count, one or more whitespace characters, and the thread count. The DB_CONFIG file is read when the database environment is opened, and hence it silently overrules configuration done before that time.

For more information, see DB_ENV->set_thread_count() (page 330).
set_timeout

Sets timeout values, in microseconds, for locks or transactions in the database environment, the wait time for a process to exit the environment when DB_REGISTER recovery is needed, and how frequently to check for failed processes during mutex waits.

The syntax for setting timeout value for database environment's lock, before recovery is started, and transaction is as follows:

• DB_SET_LOCK_TIMEOUT

Configures the database environment's lock timeout value. The syntax of the entry in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string `set_lock_timeout`, one or more whitespace characters, and the lock timeout value.

• DB_SET_MUTEX_FAILCHK_TIMEOUT

If failchk broadcasting has been configured, then this sets the timeout value on how long a thread will wait for a mutex lock before checking whether `DB_ENV->failchk()` (page 232) has marked the mutex as failed. The default is to check once every second. The syntax of the entry in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string `set_mutex_failchk_timeout`, one or more whitespace characters, and the wait timeout value.

If failchk broadcasting has not been configured, then setting this timeout value results in an error.

• DB_SET_REG_TIMEOUT

Sets the timeout value on how long to wait for processes to exit the environment before recovery is started. The syntax of the entry in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string `set_reg_timeout`, one or more whitespace characters, and the wait timeout value.

• DB_SET_TXN_TIMEOUT

Sets the timeout value for transactions in this database environment. The syntax of the entry in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string `set_txn_timeout`, one or more whitespace characters, and the transaction timeout value.

For more information, see `DB_ENV->set_timeout()` (page 336).
set_tmp_dir

Specifies the path of a directory to be used as the location of temporary files. The files created to back in-memory access method databases will be created relative to this path. These temporary files can be quite large, depending on the size of the database.

The syntax of the entry in the DB_CONFIG file with the string set_tmp_dir, one or more whitespace characters, and the directory name.

For more information, see DB_ENV->set_tmp_dir() (page 339).
set_tx_max

Configures the Berkeley DB database environment to support at least the minimum number of simultaneously active transactions supported by Berkeley DB database environment. This value bounds the size of the memory allocated for transactions. Child transactions are counted as active until they either commit or abort.

The syntax of this parameter in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string set_tx_max, one or more whitespace characters, and the number of transactions.

For more information, see DB_ENV->set_tx_max() (page 643).
set verbose

Enables/disables specific additional informational and debugging messages in the Berkeley DB message output.

The syntax of the entry in the DB_CONFIG file is a single line with the string set_verbose, one or more whitespace characters, the method flag parameter as a string, optionally one or more whitespace characters and the string on or off. If the optional string is omitted, the default is on.

For example:

```
set_verbose DB_VERB_RECOVERY
```

or

```
set_verbose DB_VERB_RECOVERY on
```

Enables display of additional information when performing recovery.

The method flag parameters are as follows:

- DB_VERB_DEADLOCK
- DB_VERB_FILEOPS
- DB_VERB_FILEOPS_ALL
- DB_VERB_RECOVERY
- DB_VERB_REGISTER
- DB_VERB_REPLICATION
- DB_VERB_REP_ELECT
- DB_VERB_REP_LEASE
- DB_VERB_REP_MISC
- DB_VERB_REP_MSGS
- DB_VERB_REP_SYNC
- DB_VERB_REP_SYSTEM
- DB_VERB_REPMGR_CONNFAIL
- DB_VERB_REPMGR_MISC
- DB_VERB_WAITSFOR

For more information, see `DB_ENV->set_verbose()` (page 341).